

# HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP

## Software Technical Reference





# HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP

---

Software Technical Reference



## Copyright and license

©2006 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 10/2006

## Trademark credits

Adobe®, Adobe Photoshop®, Acrobat®, PostScript®, and the Acrobat logo® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Corel® is a trademark or registered trademark of Corel Corporation or Corel Corporation Limited.

**EnergyStar®** and the **Energy Star** logo® are US registered marks of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.



FireWire® FireWire is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Java™ is a US trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Linux is a U.S. registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows NT®, and Windows® XP are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Pentium® is a trademark or registered trademark of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.



# Table of contents

## 1 Purpose and scope

Introduction .....	1
Device features .....	4
Available product configurations .....	7
Software features by connection type .....	7
Multitasking capabilities .....	7
Differences between the network-connected and direct-connected configurations .....	8
Printing-system software .....	9
System requirements .....	10
Microsoft Windows .....	11
System requirements for a Recommended – Full installation .....	11
System requirements for a Recommended – Minimum installation .....	12
IA-64 .....	12
Linux .....	12
UNIX .....	12
Microsoft Windows Terminal Server and Citrix Metaframe .....	13
Operating-system support .....	13
Fully supported operating systems .....	13
Print driver support in other operating systems .....	14
Availability .....	14
Printing-system software on the Web .....	16
In-box printing-system software CDs .....	16
Microsoft Windows CD .....	17
CD versions .....	17
Readiris Pro V11.0 languages .....	21
HP LaserJet documentation .....	23

## 2 Software description

Introduction .....	27
HP Customer Participation Program .....	28
HP Solution Center .....	29
Header area .....	30
Product information area .....	30
Control area .....	30
Scan picture .....	30
Scan document .....	31
Transfer images .....	32
Utilities .....	33

Support .....	34
Settings .....	34
Scan settings .....	34
Print Settings .....	38
Image Transfer Settings .....	40
Network Settings .....	41
Status .....	42
Shopping area .....	43
Supplies .....	44
HP Products .....	45
Order HP Prints Online .....	46
Help and Support area .....	46
Try these first .....	47
Tools / Utilities .....	48
Documentation .....	50
Online Support .....	52
Create area .....	52
Software area .....	55
Idea window .....	56
HP ToolboxFX .....	57
Overview of the HP ToolboxFX .....	57
Starting the HP ToolboxFX .....	57
Structure .....	58
Opening screen .....	58
System requirements .....	59
Key features .....	59
Receive Alert messages for device events .....	60
HP Device pop-up alert messages .....	60
System-tray icon alert .....	60
Desktop alert .....	61
E-mail alert .....	61
The HP ToolboxFX folders .....	61
Status folder .....	61
Device Status .....	62
Supplies Status .....	62
Device Configuration .....	63
Network Configuration .....	65
Print Info Pages .....	66
Event Log .....	67
Alerts folder .....	68
Set up Status Alerts .....	68
Set up E-mail Alerts .....	71
Help folder .....	73
Troubleshooting .....	73
How do I...? .....	74
Animated Demonstrations .....	75
User Guide .....	76
System Settings folder .....	76
Device Information .....	77
Paper Handling .....	77

Print Quality .....	78
Print Density .....	79
Paper Types .....	81
System Setup .....	82
Service .....	83
Device Polling .....	84
Save/Restore Settings .....	84
Password .....	85
Print Settings folder .....	87
Printing .....	87
PCL5c .....	87
PostScript .....	88
Memory Card .....	89
Network Settings folder .....	90
IP Configuration .....	91
Advanced .....	92
SNMP .....	93
Network Summary .....	94
Other screens .....	96
About HP ToolboxFX dialog box .....	96
HP Instant Support .....	96
Product Support .....	97
Product Registration .....	97
Shop for Supplies .....	97
HP Embedded Web Server .....	98
Status tab .....	98
Device Status .....	98
Supplies Status page .....	99
Device Configuration page .....	100
Network Summary page .....	103
Print Info Pages .....	104
Event Log page .....	105
System tab .....	105
Device Information page .....	106
Paper Handling page .....	106
Print Quality page .....	107
Print Density page .....	107
Paper Types page .....	108
System Setup page .....	109
Password page .....	110
Print tab .....	110
Printing page .....	110
PCL5c page .....	111
PostScript page .....	111
Memory Card page .....	112
Networking tab .....	112
IP Configuration page .....	113
Advanced page .....	113
Bonjour (Rendezvous) page .....	114
SNMP page .....	114

Network Summary page .....	115
Optional software .....	117
HP PhotoSmart Premier .....	117
HP Marketing Assistant .....	123
Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS .....	124
Text-recognition software .....	124
About text-recognition reliability .....	124

### 3 Install Microsoft Windows printing-system components

Introduction .....	125
Installation overview .....	126
Recommended and Custom installations .....	126
Installation options .....	128
Microsoft Windows installation for direct connections .....	128
Install additional drivers with the Microsoft Add-Printer Wizard .....	129
Microsoft Windows Installation for computers on a network .....	129
Network setup .....	130
Microsoft Windows installation instructions for networked computers .....	130
Setting up Microsoft Windows-sharing (peer-to-peer networking) .....	131
Setting up the host computer running Microsoft Windows 2000 .....	131
Setting up the host computer running Microsoft Windows XP or Microsoft Windows Server 2003 .....	131
Setting up the client computers .....	132
Install the print driver only .....	133
Printing-system software installation .....	134
Animated Getting Started Guide .....	134
Printing-system software installation for Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP .....	135
USB installation dialog box options for Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP .....	135
Network installation dialog box options for Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP (HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP only) .....	147
Printing-system software installation for Microsoft Windows Server 2003 .....	161
Installing optional software .....	166
HP PhotoSmart Premier .....	168
HP Document Viewer .....	172
Uninstall .....	176
Uninstall component list .....	176
Uninstall methods .....	177
Dialog box options for the Uninstaller .....	177

### 4 HP scanning system

Scanning methods .....	184
HP LaserJet Scan software .....	185
Introduction .....	185
Create a scan .....	185
User interface .....	185
Scan Picture or Scan Document .....	185
What are you scanning? .....	187
Where do you want to send the scanned image? .....	188

Save Options .....	188
Additional options .....	189
Document preview image .....	190
OK, Help, and Cancel .....	191
E-mail .....	191
Scan settings .....	192
Scan drivers .....	194
TWAIN driver .....	194
TWAIN compatibility .....	194
TWAIN scanning does not work with some programs .....	194
Additional information about TWAIN .....	194
TWAIN driver user interface .....	195
WIA driver .....	196

## 5 HP PCL 6 and PS emulation unidrivers for Microsoft Windows

Introduction .....	199
Access to drivers .....	200
Printing Preferences driver tabs .....	200
Properties driver tabs .....	201
Help system .....	202
“What's this?” Help .....	202
Context-sensitive Help .....	202
Constraint messages .....	202
HP Postscript level 3 emulation support .....	204
Advanced tab features .....	205
Paper/Output settings .....	207
Copy Count setting .....	207
Graphic settings (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver only) .....	208
Image Color Management settings .....	208
TrueType Font settings (PS Emulation Unidriver only) .....	209
Document Options .....	209
Advanced Printing Features .....	209
Print Optimizations (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver only) .....	209
PostScript Options (PS Emulation Unidriver only) .....	209
PostScript Output option .....	210
TrueType Font Download option .....	210
PostScript Language Level .....	210
Send PostScript Error Handler .....	210
Printer Features .....	210
Print All Text as Black .....	211
Send TrueType as Bitmap (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver only) .....	211
Raster Compression (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only) .....	211
Layout Options .....	211
Page Order .....	211
Paper/Quality tab features .....	212
Print Task Quick Sets .....	214
Default Print Settings .....	215
User Guide Print Settings .....	215

Type new Quick Set name here .....	215
Paper Options group box .....	215
Size is: drop-down menu .....	216
Use Different Paper/Covers check box .....	217
Source Is: drop-down menu .....	217
Type is: drop-down menu .....	217
Use Different Paper/Covers options .....	218
Front Cover and Back Cover options .....	219
Using the First Page option for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP .....	220
Other Pages and Last Page options .....	221
Document preview image .....	222
Print Quality group box (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver only) .....	222
Print Quality drop-down menu .....	222
HP Digital Imaging (PCL 6 unidriver only) .....	222
Effects tab features .....	225
Print Task Quick Sets .....	226
Resizing Options group box .....	226
Actual Size setting .....	226
Print Document On setting .....	226
Scale to Fit option .....	226
% of Normal Size option .....	227
Document preview image .....	227
Watermarks group box .....	228
Current watermarks .....	229
Watermark message .....	229
Message angle .....	230
Font attributes .....	230
Name drop-down menu .....	230
Color drop-down menu .....	230
Shading drop-down menu .....	231
Size spin box .....	232
Style drop-down menu .....	232
Default settings .....	232
Finishing tab features .....	233
Print Task Quick Sets .....	234
Document Options .....	234
Print on Both Sides and Print on Both Sides (Manually) check box .....	235
Manually printing on both sides .....	235
Flip Pages Up option .....	236
Booklet layout drop-down menu .....	237
Book and booklet printing .....	237
Printing a booklet .....	237
Printing a book .....	238
Pages per Sheet drop-down menu .....	238
Print Page Borders check box .....	238
Page Order drop-down menu .....	238
Document preview image .....	239
Orientation group box .....	239
Portrait option button .....	239

Landscape option button .....	239
Rotate by 180 degrees check box .....	240
Mirror Image check box (PS Emulation Unidriver only) .....	240
Color tab features (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver only) .....	241
Print Task Quick Sets .....	242
Color options .....	242
Automatic color settings .....	242
Manual color settings .....	242
Text, Graphics, and Photographs settings .....	243
Neutral Grays setting .....	243
General .....	243
Edge Control .....	244
RGB Color .....	244
Halftone .....	245
Print in Grayscale .....	245
Services tab features .....	246
Device Settings tab features .....	248
Form to Tray Assignment .....	249
Font Substitution Table .....	250
External Fonts (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver only) .....	250
Installing external fonts .....	251
Removing external fonts .....	252
Installable Options .....	252
Tray 3 .....	252
Allow Manual Duplexing .....	252
Printer Memory .....	252
Mopier Mode .....	253
Mopier Mode and Collation .....	253
Additional Device Settings options (PS Emulation Unidriver only) .....	253
Available PostScript Memory .....	254
Output Protocol .....	254
Send CTRL-D Before Each Job .....	254
Send CTRL-D After Each Job .....	254
Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray .....	254
Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray .....	254
Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts .....	255
Job Timeout .....	255
Wait Timeout .....	255
Minimum font size to download as outline .....	255
Maximum font size to download as bitmap .....	255
About tab features .....	256

## 6 Macintosh

Introduction .....	257
Macintosh printing-system software .....	258
Software components for Macintosh .....	258
HP EWS Device Configuration utility .....	259
HP LaserJet Director .....	259
HP Photosmart Studio for Macintosh .....	260

Accessing Memory Cards through the Macintosh (HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP only) .....	261
System requirements .....	262
Operating-system support .....	262
Availability .....	262
Software component localization .....	263
Ordering software for Macintosh .....	263
Macintosh install instructions .....	264
Installation overview .....	264
Installation options .....	264
Installation instructions for all Macintosh OSs — Animated Getting Started Guide .....	264
Macintosh installation instructions for direct and network connections .....	266
Installation dialog-box options for Macintosh .....	267
Macintosh uninstall instructions .....	273

## 7 Engineering Details

Introduction .....	275
Troubleshooting .....	276
Port communication .....	276
Overview .....	276
USB port connections .....	276
Device conflicts in Windows .....	276
Opening the Windows Device Manager .....	277
Check for device conflicts .....	277
Guidelines for troubleshooting and resolving device conflicts .....	277
Installed Devices .....	278
E-mail .....	279
HP LaserJet Scan .....	279
Troubleshooting tools .....	279
File to E-mail utility .....	280
AccessDeniedUtility.exe .....	280
FixErr1714 utility .....	281
Known Issues for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP .....	281
Software .....	281
Device Communication .....	282
Hardware/Firmware .....	284
Miscellaneous .....	285
IP discovery and rediscovery .....	286
Print and HP ToolboxFX .....	286
Scan driver .....	286
ScanTo application .....	287
PCL font ID list .....	288
Media attributes .....	291
Media types and sizes .....	291
Custom paper sizes .....	293
HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Install Notes .....	294
I. Introduction .....	294
PURPOSE OF THIS DOCUMENT .....	294
WHO NEEDS THIS SOFTWARE? .....	295



OVERVIEW OF THE PRINTING-SYSTEM COMPONENTS .....	295
End-user software components in a Recommended install .....	295
End-user software components available for a Custom install .....	296
HP ToolboxFX .....	297
Adobe Acrobat Reader .....	297
Device documentation .....	297
Uninstall .....	297
II. LATE-BREAKING INFORMATION .....	297
KNOWN ISSUES AND WORKAROUNDS .....	297
General .....	298
HP ToolboxFX .....	298
Scanning .....	299
Upgrading Windows .....	299
Other Applications .....	299
ISSUES FIXED .....	299
III. INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS .....	299
INSTALLING SOFTWARE ON WINDOWS 2000, XP, AND SERVER	
2003 .....	300
UNINSTALLER .....	300
IV. TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE .....	300
V. LEGAL STATEMENTS .....	300
TRADEMARK NOTICES .....	301
WARRANTY AND COPYRIGHT .....	301
Warranty .....	301
Copyright .....	301

Index .....	303
-------------	-----



# List of tables

Table 1-1	Software technical reference overview .....	1
Table 1-2	Features of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP .....	4
Table 1-3	Software features by connection type .....	7
Table 1-4	Multitasking capabilities .....	8
Table 1-5	Software components for Microsoft Windows .....	9
Table 1-6	Software component availability for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP .....	14
Table 1-7	CD part numbers for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software for Microsoft Windows .....	18
Table 1-8	Microsoft Windows software component localization by language, A-K .....	18
Table 1-9	Microsoft Windows software component localization by language L-Z .....	20
Table 1-10	User documentation availability and localization .....	23
Table 2-1	Event alerts for HP ToolboxFX .....	69
Table 2-2	Standard print modes .....	81
Table 2-3	Advanced Network Settings options and settings .....	92
Table 3-1	Installed software components by installation type .....	126
Table 4-1	Examples of supported e-mail programs .....	192
Table 4-2	Available scan settings .....	192
Table 5-1	Standard paper types and engine speeds .....	218
Table 5-2	Watermark color values .....	230
Table 5-3	Page orientation .....	236
Table 6-1	Software components for Macintosh .....	258
Table 6-2	CD part numbers for the HP LaserJet software .....	263
Table 7-1	Devices installed by the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software in Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP .....	279
Table 7-2	PCL font ID list .....	288
Table 7-3	Supported media attributes .....	291
Table 7-4	Tray specifications .....	293



# List of figures

Figure 2-1	HP Solution Center screen .....	29
Figure 2-2	Header area – HP Solution Center .....	30
Figure 2-3	Product Information area – HP Solution Center .....	30
Figure 2-4	Control area – HP Solution Center .....	30
Figure 2-5	Scan picture – HP Solution Center .....	31
Figure 2-6	HP Solution Center – Scan document .....	32
Figure 2-7	Transfer and Print Images screen .....	33
Figure 2-8	HP ToolboxFX Status screen .....	34
Figure 2-9	Scan Preferences dialog box – HP Solution Center .....	35
Figure 2-10	Set up the <Scan to> list for the all-in-one – HP Solution Center .....	36
Figure 2-11	Scan Picture button tab – Button Settings dialog box – HP Solution Center .....	37
Figure 2-12	Scan Document button tab – Button Settings dialog box – HP Solution Center .....	38
Figure 2-13	Paper Handling screen .....	39
Figure 2-14	Device Status screen .....	40
Figure 2-15	Transfer Settings screen .....	41
Figure 2-16	Network Settings screen .....	42
Figure 2-17	Device Status screen .....	43
Figure 2-18	Shopping area – HP Solution Center .....	43
Figure 2-19	Shopping Center – HP Solution Center .....	44
Figure 2-20	Choose country/region dialog box – HP Solution Center .....	44
Figure 2-21	Check ink / toner levels – HP Solution Center .....	45
Figure 2-22	HP Online Shopping screen — HP Solution Center .....	45
Figure 2-23	Order HP prints online – HP Solution Center .....	46
Figure 2-24	Help and support area – HP Solution Center .....	46
Figure 2-25	Help and Support screen – HP Solution Center .....	47
Figure 2-26	HP Software Update – HP Solution Center .....	48
Figure 2-27	Device Status page – HP ToolboxFX .....	48
Figure 2-28	Troubleshooting page – HP ToolboxFX .....	49
Figure 2-29	HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide – HP Solution Center .....	50
Figure 2-30	How Do I? – HP Solution Center .....	51
Figure 2-31	HP Photosmart Software Help – HP Solution Center .....	51
Figure 2-32	Create area – HP Solution Center .....	52
Figure 2-33	Creative Projects screen – HP Solution Center .....	52
Figure 2-34	HP Photosmart Premier .....	53
Figure 2-35	HP Photosmart Premier Software Help Contents .....	54
Figure 2-36	Snapfish.com – HP Solution Center .....	55
Figure 2-37	Software area – HP Solution Center .....	55
Figure 2-38	Idea window – HP Solution Center .....	56
Figure 2-39	Known Printers – Single device – HP ToolboxFX .....	58
Figure 2-40	Known Printers – Multiple devices – HP ToolboxFX .....	59

Figure 2-41	HP Device Alert – Load Tray 2 pop-up message .....	60
Figure 2-42	HP Device Alert – CLOSE DOOR System Tray and Desktop pop-up message .....	61
Figure 2-43	Device Status screen .....	62
Figure 2-44	Supplies Status screen .....	63
Figure 2-45	Device Configuration screen – 1 of 2 .....	64
Figure 2-46	Device Configuration screen – 2 of 2 .....	65
Figure 2-47	Network Configuration screen .....	66
Figure 2-48	Print Information Pages screen .....	67
Figure 2-49	Event Log screen .....	68
Figure 2-50	Set up Status Alerts screen .....	69
Figure 2-51	Set up E-mail Alerts screen .....	72
Figure 2-52	Troubleshooting sub-folder .....	73
Figure 2-53	How do I...? sub-folder .....	74
Figure 2-54	Animated Demonstrations screen .....	75
Figure 2-55	HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide .....	76
Figure 2-56	Device Information screen .....	77
Figure 2-57	Paper Handling screen .....	78
Figure 2-58	Print Quality screen .....	79
Figure 2-59	Print Density page .....	80
Figure 2-60	Paper Types screen .....	81
Figure 2-61	System Setup screen .....	82
Figure 2-62	Service screen .....	83
Figure 2-63	Device Polling screen .....	84
Figure 2-64	Save / Restore Settings screen .....	85
Figure 2-65	Password screen .....	86
Figure 2-66	Printing screen .....	87
Figure 2-67	PCL5c screen .....	88
Figure 2-68	PostScript screen .....	89
Figure 2-69	Memory Card page .....	90
Figure 2-70	IP Configuration screen .....	91
Figure 2-71	Advanced Network Settings screen .....	92
Figure 2-72	SNMP screen .....	93
Figure 2-73	Network Summary screen .....	95
Figure 2-74	HP ToolboxFX dialog box .....	96
Figure 2-75	Product Registration screen .....	97
Figure 2-76	HP EWS – Device Status page .....	99
Figure 2-77	HP EWS – Supplies Status page .....	100
Figure 2-78	HP EWS – Device Configuration page – 1 of 3 .....	101
Figure 2-79	HP EWS – Device Configuration page – 2 of 3 .....	102
Figure 2-80	HP EWS – Device Configuration page – 3 of 3 .....	103
Figure 2-81	HP EWS – Network Configuration page – 1 of 2 .....	103
Figure 2-82	HP EWS – Network Configuration page – 2 of 2 .....	104
Figure 2-83	HP EWS – Print Info Pages page .....	105
Figure 2-84	HP EWS – Event Log page .....	105
Figure 2-85	HP EWS – Device Information page .....	106
Figure 2-86	HP EWS – Paper Handling page .....	106
Figure 2-87	HP EWS – Print Quality page .....	107
Figure 2-88	HP EWS – Print Density page .....	108
Figure 2-89	HP EWS – Paper Types page .....	109
Figure 2-90	HP EWS – System Setup page .....	109

Figure 2-91	HP EWS – Password page .....	110
Figure 2-92	HP EWS – Printing page .....	111
Figure 2-93	HP EWS – PCL5c page .....	111
Figure 2-94	HP EWS – PostScript page .....	112
Figure 2-95	HP EWS – Memory Card page .....	112
Figure 2-96	HP EWS – IP Configuration page .....	113
Figure 2-97	HP EWS – Advanced page .....	114
Figure 2-98	HP EWS – Bonjour (Rendezvous) page .....	114
Figure 2-99	HP EWS – SNMP page .....	115
Figure 2-100	HP EWS – Network Summary page – 1 of 2 .....	116
Figure 2-101	HP EWS – Network Summary page – 2 of 2 .....	116
Figure 2-102	View tab .....	118
Figure 2-103	Edit tab .....	119
Figure 2-104	Print tab .....	120
Figure 2-105	Create tab .....	121
Figure 2-106	Share tab .....	122
Figure 2-107	Backup tab .....	123
Figure 3-1	Animated Getting Started Guide – Begin Setup screen .....	134
Figure 3-2	Install Software screen .....	135
Figure 3-3	USB install – Welcome to the Install Wizard dialog box .....	136
Figure 3-4	USB install – Sample screen showing current progress .....	136
Figure 3-5	USB install – Do Not Block HP Install Wizard Processes dialog box .....	137
Figure 3-6	USB install – Automatically check for updates dialog box .....	137
Figure 3-7	USB install – Installation options dialog box .....	138
Figure 3-8	USB install – Custom Installation dialog box .....	139
Figure 3-9	USB install – License Agreement dialog box .....	139
Figure 3-10	USB install – Destination Folder dialog box .....	140
Figure 3-11	USB install – Ready to Install dialog box .....	140
Figure 3-12	USB install – Connection Type dialog box .....	141
Figure 3-13	USB install – Connect Your Device Now dialog box .....	141
Figure 3-14	USB install – Device has been detected dialog box .....	142
Figure 3-15	USB install – Device has been detected – Product connected successfully! dialog box .....	142
Figure 3-16	USB install – Auto Firmware Downloader dialog box .....	143
Figure 3-17	USB install – Restart dialog box .....	144
Figure 3-18	USB install – Congratulations! Software installation complete dialog box .....	144
Figure 3-19	USB install – Test Page dialog box .....	145
Figure 3-20	Sign Up Now screen .....	145
Figure 3-21	HP Registration screen .....	146
Figure 3-22	USB install – Other options dialog box .....	147
Figure 3-23	Network install – Welcome dialog box .....	148
Figure 3-24	Network install – Sample screen showing current progress .....	148
Figure 3-25	Network install – Do Not Block HP Install Wizard Processes dialog box .....	149
Figure 3-26	Network install – Automatically check for updates dialog box .....	149
Figure 3-27	Network install – Installation options dialog box .....	150
Figure 3-28	Network install – Custom Installation dialog box .....	151
Figure 3-29	Network install – License Agreement dialog box .....	151
Figure 3-30	Network install – Destination Folder dialog box .....	152
Figure 3-31	Network install – Ready to Install dialog box .....	152
Figure 3-32	Network install – Connection Type dialog box .....	153
Figure 3-33	Network install – Auto Firmware Downloader dialog box .....	153

Figure 3-34	Network install – Identify Printer dialog box .....	154
Figure 3-35	Network install – Firewall Detected dialog box .....	155
Figure 3-36	Network install – Searching dialog box .....	155
Figure 3-37	Network install – Specify Printer dialog box .....	156
Figure 3-38	Network install – Printer Found dialog box .....	156
Figure 3-39	Network install – Confirm Settings dialog box .....	157
Figure 3-40	Network install – Confirm Changing Setting dialog box .....	157
Figure 3-41	Network Install – Change TCP/IP Settings dialog box .....	158
Figure 3-42	Network install – Congratulations! Software installation complete dialog box .....	158
Figure 3-43	Network install – Test Page dialog box .....	159
Figure 3-44	Sign Up Now screen .....	159
Figure 3-45	HP Registration screen .....	160
Figure 3-46	Network install – Other options dialog box .....	161
Figure 3-47	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install –Current Progress dialog box .....	162
Figure 3-48	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – Connection Type dialog box .....	162
Figure 3-49	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – Connect Your Device Now dialog box .....	163
Figure 3-50	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – Device has been detected dialog box .....	163
Figure 3-51	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – Device has been detected – Product connected successfully! dialog box .....	164
Figure 3-52	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – Test Page dialog box .....	164
Figure 3-53	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – Congratulations! Software installation complete dialog box .....	165
Figure 3-54	CD Browser .....	166
Figure 3-55	Welcome Back dialog box .....	167
Figure 3-56	Welcome dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier .....	168
Figure 3-57	Firewall warning dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier .....	168
Figure 3-58	Check for recommended installation updates (optional) dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier .....	169
Figure 3-59	License Agreement dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier .....	169
Figure 3-60	Thank you dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier .....	170
Figure 3-61	Ready to Install dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier .....	170
Figure 3-62	Installing dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier .....	171
Figure 3-63	Finish dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier .....	171
Figure 3-64	Welcome dialog box for HP Document Viewer .....	172
Figure 3-65	Do Not Block HP Install Wizard Processes dialog box for HP Document Viewer .....	172
Figure 3-66	Automatically check for updates dialog box for HP Document Viewer .....	173
Figure 3-67	Current progress dialog box for HP Document Viewer .....	173
Figure 3-68	License Agreement dialog box for HP Document Viewer .....	174
Figure 3-69	Thank you for buying another HP product dialog box for HP Document Viewer .....	174
Figure 3-70	Ready to Install dialog box for HP Document Viewer .....	175
Figure 3-71	Finish dialog box for HP Document Viewer .....	175
Figure 3-72	Uninstall – Remove programs installed with your HP device dialog box .....	178
Figure 3-73	Uninstall – Remove programs installed with your HP device dialog box .....	179
Figure 3-74	Uninstall – Review uninstall instructions and information dialog box .....	180
Figure 3-75	Cleanup Progress dialog box .....	181
Figure 3-76	Restart dialog box .....	181
Figure 4-1	Scanning from the Scan Picture button (Solution Center) dialog box .....	186
Figure 4-2	Scanning from the Scan Document button (Solution Center) .....	187
Figure 4-3	Save Options for the Scan Picture button dialog box – HP LaserJet Scan software .....	189
Figure 4-4	Scan Picture settings – HP LaserJet Scan software .....	190



Figure 4-5	Scan Document settings – HP LaserJet Scan software .....	191
Figure 4-6	TWAIN driver user interface .....	195
Figure 4-7	Scan Preferences .....	196
Figure 5-1	A typical constraint message .....	202
Figure 5-2	Advanced tab – HP PCL 6 Unidriver .....	205
Figure 5-3	Advanced tab – HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver .....	206
Figure 5-4	Advanced tab – PS Emulation Unidriver .....	207
Figure 5-5	Paper/Quality tab – HP PCL 6 Unidriver .....	212
Figure 5-6	Paper/Quality tab – HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver .....	213
Figure 5-7	Paper/Quality tab – PS Emulation Unidriver .....	214
Figure 5-8	Paper Options group box .....	216
Figure 5-9	Front Cover setting .....	220
Figure 5-10	First Page, Other Pages, and Last Page options .....	221
Figure 5-11	HP Digital Imaging Options dialog box .....	223
Figure 5-12	Effects tab .....	225
Figure 5-13	Preview images - Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right) .....	227
Figure 5-14	Watermark Details dialog box .....	228
Figure 5-15	Finishing tab - HP PCL 6 Unidriver .....	233
Figure 5-16	Finishing tab – PS Emulation Unidriver .....	234
Figure 5-17	Print on Both Sides Instructions .....	236
Figure 5-18	Page-order preview images .....	239
Figure 5-19	Color tab .....	241
Figure 5-20	Color Settings dialog box .....	243
Figure 5-21	Services tab - HP PCL 6 Unidriver .....	246
Figure 5-22	Device Settings tab - HP PCL 6 Unidriver .....	248
Figure 5-23	Device Settings tab - PS Emulation Unidriver .....	249
Figure 5-24	Font Substitution Table – PS Emulation Unidriver .....	250
Figure 5-25	Font Installer dialog box .....	251
Figure 5-26	About tab .....	256
Figure 6-1	HP LaserJet Director – Macintosh .....	259
Figure 6-2	HP Photosmart Studio – Macintosh .....	260
Figure 6-3	System Authentication screen – Mac Memory Card Access .....	261
Figure 6-4	Authenticate Again – Mac Memory Card Access .....	262
Figure 6-5	HP LaserJet MFP Installer icon .....	265
Figure 6-6	Start Here icon .....	265
Figure 6-7	Macintosh install – Animated Getting Started Guide .....	265
Figure 6-8	Install Software screen .....	266
Figure 6-9	Authenticate dialog box .....	267
Figure 6-10	License dialog box – HP Software License Agreement .....	267
Figure 6-11	Installing dialog box – progress indicator .....	268
Figure 6-12	If you are using a USB cable... dialog box .....	268
Figure 6-13	Restart alert .....	269
Figure 6-14	HP Setup Assistant – Introduction .....	269
Figure 6-15	HP Setup Assistant – Select Device .....	270
Figure 6-16	HP Setup Assistant – Firmware Upgrade Utility .....	271
Figure 6-17	HP Setup Assistant – Name the MFP .....	271
Figure 6-18	HP Setup Assistant – Finish .....	272
Figure 6-19	HP Setup Assistant – Congratulations .....	272
Figure 7-1	Sample Device Manager window .....	278



# 1 Purpose and scope

## Introduction

This Software Technical Reference (STR) provides information about and troubleshooting tips for the printing-system software for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

This document is prepared in an electronic format to serve as a quick-reference tool for Customer Care Center (CCC) agents, support engineers, system administrators, Management Information Systems (MIS) personnel, and end users, as appropriate.



**NOTE** This STR describes software that is shipped on the software CD that comes with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. This STR does *not* describe drivers that will become available on the Web.

The following information is included in this technical reference:

- Overview of software and platforms
- Procedures for installing and uninstalling software components
- Descriptions of problems that can arise while using the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, and known solutions to those problems

The following table describes the structure of this STR.

**Table 1-1** Software technical reference overview

Chapter	Content
Chapter 1, Purpose and scope	<p>This chapter contains basic information about the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP and its software:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Overview of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP</li> <li>• Printing-system software overview, including the following topics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System requirements</li> <li>• Operating-system support</li> <li>• Availability</li> </ul> </li> <li>• HP LaserJet software documentation</li> </ul>
Chapter 2, Software description	<p>This chapter provides an overview of the printing-system software installer and print drivers.</p> <p>This chapter also contains general information about other software features, including the following topics:</p>

**Table 1-1** Software technical reference overview (continued)

Chapter	Content
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Driver configuration for Microsoft Windows®</li> <li>• Optional software, including HP Photosmart Premier, HP Document Viewer, HP Marketing Assistant, and Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS.</li> <li>• HP Solution Center</li> <li>• HP ToolboxFX</li> <li>• HP Embedded Web Server</li> </ul>
Chapter 3, Install Microsoft Windows printing-system components	This chapter provides instructions for installing the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP in Microsoft Windows operating systems by using various installation methods.
Chapter 4, HP scanning system	<p>This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP scanning system that is provided with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. Topics include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scanning methods</li> <li>• HP scanning software</li> <li>• HP scan drivers</li> </ul>
Chapter 5, HP PCL 6 and PS emulation unidrivers for Microsoft Windows	This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP PCL 6 Unidriver, HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver, and postscript emulation print unidrivers for Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows XP x64, and Microsoft Windows Server 2003.
Chapter 6, Macintosh	This chapter provides instructions for installing and uninstalling the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP in Macintosh operating systems and for using Macintosh features.
Chapter 7, Engineering details	<p>This chapter contains information about the following special topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uninstall</li> <li>• Media attributes</li> <li>• Remote firmware update</li> <li>• HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Readme</li> </ul>

For additional information about the location of information within these chapters, see the table of contents. An index is provided in the back of this STR.

Additional detailed information about the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software is published in an addendum to this STR. The following information is available only in the addendum:

- Lists of installed files
- System-modification information, such as changes to the registry and registry keys
- Descriptions of known software issues and solutions

Topics:

- [Device features](#)

- [Available product configurations](#)
- [Printing-system software](#)
- [HP LaserJet documentation](#)

## Device features

The following table contains descriptions of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP that is described in this STR.

**Table 1-2** Features of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP

Feature	HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP
HP product number	HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP (CB394A) HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP (CB395A)
Memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>96 megabytes (MB) of synchronous random access memory (SDRAM)</li> <li>To allow for memory expansion, the MFP has one DIMM slot that accepts 256 MB RAM (the MFP can support up to 352 MB of memory)</li> <li>The HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP includes a mass storage driver<sup>123</sup> for Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows XP x64, and Microsoft Windows Server 2003. This driver provides access to memory card slots on the product. The HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP can read the following memory-card types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CompactFlash</li> <li>Memory Stick and Memory Stick PRO</li> <li>MultiMedia</li> <li>Secure Digital (SD)</li> <li>xD</li> <li>Ultra CF</li> <li>SmartMedia</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Prints 8 pages per minute (ppm) in color or monochrome (black and white)</li> </ul>
Ease of use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP features a tilt-screen two-line display. The HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP features a tilt-screen graphical display.</li> <li>The few supplies are easy to install.</li> <li>Convenient access to MFP information and settings using the HP Solution Center and the HP ToolboxFX.</li> <li>Convenient access to all supplies and to the paper path through the front door.</li> <li>HP Photosmart Premier</li> <li>Adjust paper trays with one hand.</li> </ul>
Connectivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A high-speed universal serial bus (USB) port</li> <li>Built-in internal print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-T network (HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP only)</li> </ul>

**Table 1-2** Features of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP (continued)

Feature	HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP
HP product number	HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP (CB394A) HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP (CB395A)
Paper handling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Single-sheet priority-feed slot (tray 1)</li> <li>• 250-sheet universal tray (tray 2)</li> <li>• Optional 250-sheet universal tray (optional tray 3)</li> <li>• Trays 1 and 2 for letterhead, envelopes, labels, transparencies, custom-sized media, postcards, HP LaserJet glossy paper, HP LaserJet Tough paper, heavy paper, and HP Laser Photo paper.</li> <li>• A 125-sheet top output bin</li> <li>• Print on both sides (manually)</li> </ul>
Print	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Full color laser printing that uses the four process colors: cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (CMYK).</li> <li>• ImageRET 2400 provides 2400 dots per inch (dpi) equivalent-color quality through a multilevel printing process</li> <li>• True 600x600 dpi text and graphics</li> <li>• Adjustable settings to optimize print quality</li> <li>• HP print cartridges with ColorSphere toner achieve high gloss for a range of bright colors.</li> <li>• Printer command language (PCL) Level 6 printer driver</li> <li>• PCL 6 Black and White printer driver</li> <li>• HP postscript® level 3 emulation printer driver</li> <li>• 35 built-in HP postscript level 3 language fonts</li> <li>• N-up printing (printing more than one page on a sheet) and Printing on Both Sides features save paper.</li> <li>• When printing pages that are to be stored long-term, the Archive printing option reduces toner smearing and dusting.</li> </ul>
Copy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provides full-color copying from letter/A4-sized scanner glass.</li> <li>• Control panel buttons available for color and monochromatic copying.</li> </ul>
Scan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provides 1200 pixels per inch (ppi), 24-bit full-color scanning from letter/A4-sized scanner glass.</li> <li>• Scan-to-E-mail</li> <li>• Scan-to-Folder</li> <li>• TWAIN driver</li> <li>• WIA driver ( Microsoft Windows XP and Microsoft Windows Server 2003 only)</li> </ul>

**Table 1-2** Features of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP (continued)

Feature	HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP
HP product number	HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP (CB394A) HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP (CB395A)
Energy savings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP automatically conserves electricity by substantially reducing power consumption when it is not in use.</li> <li>Meets ENERGY STAR® guidelines for energy efficiency.</li> </ul>
Supplies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A Supplies Status page is available from the HP ToolboxFX that shows print cartridge gauges estimating remaining supply levels. Not available for non-HP supplies.</li> <li>No-shake cartridge design</li> <li>Authentication for original HP print cartridges</li> <li>Easy ordering for replacement supplies</li> </ul>
Accessibility	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Online user guide compatible with text screen-readers.</li> <li>All doors and covers can be opened by using one hand.</li> </ul>

<sup>1</sup> The HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP memory card reader recognizes only files in the .JPEG file format when printing from the MFP control panel. To print other file types, use the HP Photosmart Premier software provided on the CD-ROMs that came with the MFP.

<sup>2</sup> Insert one memory card in the MFP at a time. If two or more memory cards are inserted, the control panel displays an error message.

<sup>3</sup> The memory card might have unlimited memory, but the MFP only recognizes up to 9,999 photos per card.



# Available product configurations

This section contains information about the following topics:

- [Software features by connection type](#)
- [Multitasking capabilities](#)
- [Differences between the network-connected and direct-connected configurations](#)

## Software features by connection type

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP products can function in one of three installations:

- As a standalone copier not connected to a computer.
- Directly connected to a computer. If the product is connected to a computer running Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows XP x64, or Microsoft Windows Server 2003 the product can be shared with other network users for printing.
- Connected to a network.

The product works in any of these situations, but some features are not available. The following table shows which features are available depending on how the product is connected.

**Table 1-3** Software features by connection type

Feature or Function	Connected directly to computer (local user) <sup>1</sup>	Connected directly to computer, but shared with other users <sup>2</sup>	Connected to network
Printing from the computer to the product	X	X	X
Scan to e-mail	X		X
OCR software for converting scanned images to text documents that can be edited	X		X
Access through the software to the product setup options	X		X
Access to the TWAIN driver	X		X
Access to the WIA driver <sup>3</sup>	X		X
Access to the memory cards <sup>4</sup>	X		X

<sup>1</sup> Available to the user of the computer that is directly connected to the product.

<sup>2</sup> Available to the other users on the network when Microsoft Windows sharing is enabled from the computer that is directly connected to the product. When the computer that is directly connected to the product is on a local area network (LAN), the product can be shared with other computers on the network. Users of the shared computers can only print from their computers to the product.

<sup>3</sup> Available for Microsoft Windows XP and Microsoft Windows Server 2003 only.

<sup>4</sup> Available for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP only.

## Multitasking capabilities

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP are designed to carry out multiple tasks simultaneously. Initiate tasks when they are needed, without waiting.

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP perform multiple tasks such as printing, scanning, and copying. Depending on which functions are in use, the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP can perform many functions at the same time. This high level of multitasking is made possible by a scan location that is separate from the paper path. These products also feature at least 96 MB of memory that can efficiently manage multiple tasks, and a scan-ahead feature that quickly clears the scan paper path for subsequent jobs.

The following table shows which tasks the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP can perform while another function is already in use.



**NOTE** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP can perform multiple tasks when directly connected to a computer or when connected to a network. The scan functions are not available through a Windows sharing (peer-to-peer) connection.

**Table 1-4** Multitasking capabilities

If the product is:	You can:		
	Send a print job	Scan to the PC	Copy
Printing a file	Yes. Prints when the first print job ends.	No	No
Copying	Yes. Prints when copying ends.	Yes, if the scanner is not in use.	Yes. Second copy begins when the first copy job ends.
Scanning	No	No. The scanner is in use.	No. The scanner is in use.

## Differences between the network-connected and direct-connected configurations

On a network, you can perform nearly all of the product functions just as if the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP was directly connected to a computer. The following are a few exceptions:

- One-touch scanning with the **Start Scan** button on the control panel of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP is not supported on networked MFPs. The **Start Scan** button on the control panel of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP starts the HP LaserJet Scan software on the computer in direct connections.
- The **Scan to e-mail or folder** functionality is turned off by default for network connections. Turn on this function in the HP Solution Center for networked computers.
- The **Scan to e-mail or folder** entries will be prefixed with a host name abbreviation for networked computers in order to differentiate among computers on the network.

## Printing-system software

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP includes the following software components and programs for Microsoft Windows operating systems.

**Table 1-5** Software components for Microsoft Windows

Components	Description
HP installer	Installs the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software based on the hardware it detects from the host computer.
Uninstaller	Removes files and folders that were installed when the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software was originally installed on the computer.
HP ToolboxFX	<p>Provides a software interface to manage the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. Use the HP ToolboxFX to perform the following tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Monitor the status of the product.</li> <li>• Change the print settings for the product.</li> <li>• Find troubleshooting information and instructions for performing basic tasks.</li> <li>• Receive Status Alerts when certain events occur or conditions exist on the product.</li> </ul>
Driver software	<p>This software includes the following drivers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The HP PCL 6 Unidriver. The HP PCL 6 Unidriver (color) is installed by default in Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows XP x64, and Microsoft Windows Server 2003. The HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver is available for installation through Add Printer wizard from the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system CD.</li> <li>• The PS print driver and Postscript printer description (PPD) file for printing with HP postscript level 3 emulation. This driver is <i>not</i> installed by default. To install the PS Emulation Unidriver, use the Add Printer wizard.</li> <li>• Scan drivers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TWAIN driver.</b> TWAIN is an industry-standard scanning protocol. Scanning from the HP LaserJet MFP can be initiated from any TWAIN-compliant software program.■</li> <li>• <b>Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver.</b> WIA scanning (Microsoft Windows XP and Microsoft Windows Server 2003 only) can be started from a WIA-compliant program or from the computer. WIA has its own user interface that is relatively simple and does not contain the wide range of image quality options that are available in the TWAIN driver user interface.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• The Mass storage driver (HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP only) provides access to memory card slots for CompactFlash, Memory Stick, Memory Stick PRO, SD, SmartMedia, Ultra CF, and xD memory cards.</li> </ul>

**Table 1-5** Software components for Microsoft Windows (continued)

Components	Description
Online Help	<p>Provides help for using the software for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP product.</p> <p>The user documentation for these products is included on the installation CD as both .CHM (online help) files and Adobe Acrobat® .PDF files. A Web browser must be installed on the computer in order to view the contents from any .CHM file. Adobe Acrobat Reader must be installed on the computer to read any .PDF file. Download Adobe Acrobat Reader from the following web site.</p> <p><a href="http://www.adobe.com">www.adobe.com</a></p>
Additional software	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>HP Software Update.</b> The HP Software Update utility checks the HP Web site for the latest software updates for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.</li> <li>• <b>HP Product Assistant.</b> The HP Product Assistant utility detects problems that occur with the HP product and can offer solutions. Use the HP Product Assistant to view and search events that have been reported by HP products in order to check for available solutions.</li> <li>• <b>HP Software Tour.</b> The HP Software Tour is an interactive Macromedia Flash presentation about the capabilities of the HP Solution Center software.</li> <li>• <b>HP Solution Center.</b> The HP Solution Center provides access to the software programs, default settings, status, and onscreen Help installed specifically for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. Use the HP Solution Center to transfer images from a camera or photo memory card, view and print images or video clips, go to the HP Shopping Web site, and update the HP software. For more information, see the <a href="#">HP Solution Center</a> section of this document.</li> <li>• <b>HP Document Viewer.</b> Use this software to easily view and manage scanned documents. Quickly view documents as thumbnails or full-size pages, and zoom in to magnify key parts of any page. Add annotations to a document and even select groups of documents for collectively printing, e-mailing, faxing and more. Converting scanned documents to text is also easy.</li> <li>• <b>HP Photosmart Premier.</b> Incredibly easy photo software provides everything needed to have more fun with photos—all in one place. Bring photos to life with lots of ways to view them from thumbnails to full-size and as slideshows with music. Choose very simple one-click editing or more advanced edit tools. It's easier to share memories with HP Photosmart Share since there are no attachments, and hundreds of creative templates. Getting prints couldn't be simpler, resulting in amazing prints to frame, share and save. For more information, see <a href="#">HP PhotoSmart Premier</a>.</li> <li>• <b>HP Marketing Assistant.</b> Use the HP Marketing Assistant software to prepare flyers, brochures, and other creative pieces that use the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. For more information, see <a href="#">HP Marketing Assistant</a>.</li> <li>• <b>Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS.</b> Use Readiris Pro V11.0 to convert scanned images into text that can be edited in word-processing programs. For more information, see <a href="#">Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS</a>.</li> </ul>

## Topics:

- [System requirements](#)
- [Operating-system support](#)
- [Availability](#)

## System requirements

The following operating systems support the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software:

- [Microsoft Windows](#)
- [IA-64](#)
- [Linux](#)
- [UNIX](#)
- [Microsoft Windows Terminal Server and Citrix Metaframe](#)

## Microsoft Windows



**NOTE** For information about the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software for Macintosh operating systems, see [Macintosh](#).

In Microsoft Windows systems, the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software installer presents the user with the option of installing a **Recommended** installation or a **Custom** installation. If the user selects **Recommended**, the installer automatically checks the computer to see if it meets minimum system requirements. If the computer meets minimum system requirements, the installer performs a Recommended – Full installation. If the computer does not meet minimum system requirements, the installer performs a Recommended – Minimum installation. If the user selects **Custom**, the installer checks the computer and presents installation options based on whether the computer meets the minimum system requirements. Checking for system requirements is an automated process and is transparent to users. To see more information about **Recommended** and **Custom** installations, see [Recommended and Custom installations](#).

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software has the following minimum system requirements.

### System requirements for a Recommended – Full installation

- Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows XP x64, or Microsoft Windows Server 2003 operating system
- 480 MB of available hard disk space
- 233 MHz processor speed
- Pentium II, K6, or Transmeta 5400 processor or greater
- 180 MB of RAM
- 
- 800x600 16-color display setting
- Microsoft Internet Explorer version 5.50.4134.0100 or later
- A 2x or faster CD-ROM drive (required for installation)
- For both direct and network connections, the installer requires that a working USB port be installed on the computer to install the printing-system software.

### System requirements for a Recommended – Minimum installation

- Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows XP x64, or Microsoft Windows Server 2003 operating system
- 50 MB of available hard disk space
- 233 MHz processor speed
- Pentium II, K6, or Transmeta 5400 processor or greater, with 54 MB of RAM (180 MB recommended)
- 180 MB RAM
- 800x600 16-color display setting
- Microsoft Internet Explorer version 5.50.4134.0100 or later
- A 2x or faster CD-ROM drive (required for installation)
- For both direct and network connections, the installer requires that a working USB port be installed on the computer to install the printing-system software.

### IA-64

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP provides print-only support for systems running the Itanium Architecture – 64-bit (IA-64) operating system.

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP print driver for IA-64 systems is available only from the following Web site:

[www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)

### Linux

Print to the HP LaserJet product from any operating system that complies with the PCL command language, such as OS/2, UNIX, or Linux systems.

Linux users should check for the availability of drivers at the following Web site:

[www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting](http://www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting)



**NOTE** The Linux drivers are supported through the Linux community.

### UNIX

UNIX systems require a Model Script to set up the UNIX environment for printing. The HP LaserJet III model script, or any generic HP LaserJet printer Model Script, should work. These files are written and provided by the individual UNIX vendor. Users of HP-UX can check for availability of the Model Script and the support model at the following Web site:

[www.hp.com/go/UNIX](http://www.hp.com/go/UNIX)

Click the **Support & Drivers** link.

## Microsoft Windows Terminal Server and Citrix Metaframe

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP print drivers have been tested and have print-only support with Microsoft Windows Terminal Server or Citrix Metaframe.

## Operating-system support



**NOTE** For information about the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software for Macintosh operating systems, see [Macintosh](#).

**NOTE** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP does not support the following operating systems:

- Windows NT 4.0
- Windows 95
- Windows 98 (first and second editions)
- Windows Me

Throughout this document, Microsoft Windows XP is used to denote Microsoft Windows XP Home Edition, Microsoft Windows XP Professional, Microsoft Windows XP Media Center, and Microsoft Windows XP x64 unless noted otherwise.

For more information about the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, go to the following Web site:

[www.hp.com/support](http://www.hp.com/support)

Topics:

- [Fully supported operating systems](#)
- [Print driver support in other operating systems](#)

## Fully supported operating systems

The following Microsoft Windows operating systems fully support the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP through the software installer, and drivers for these operating systems are available on the printing-system software CD that comes with the product.

- Microsoft Windows 2000
- Microsoft Windows XP (32-bit)
- Microsoft Windows XP x64
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003



**NOTE** Administrator privileges are required in all of these operating systems to install the product software.

## Print driver support in other operating systems

The following operating systems support add–printer–wizard installations.

- IA-64 (driver available only on the Web)
- Citrix Metaframe
- Microsoft Windows Terminal Server

Use the Add Printer Wizard to install the print driver for these operating systems. The print driver for these operating systems is available at the following HP support Web site:

[www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)



**NOTE** For information and printer drivers for Linux®, go to the following Web site:

[www.hp.com/go/linux](http://www.hp.com/go/linux)

**NOTE** For information and printer drivers for Unix®, go to the following Web site:

[www.hp.com/go/UNIX](http://www.hp.com/go/UNIX)

## Availability

The following table lists the availability of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software components by operating system.

**Table 1-6** Software component availability for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP

Component	Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP – 32-bit	Microsoft Windows Server 2003	Microsoft Windows XP x64	IA-64 <sup>1</sup>	UNIX	Linux	Citrix
<b>Drivers</b>							
HP PCL 6 Unidriver (color) <sup>2</sup>	X	X <sup>2</sup>	X	X			X
HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver <sup>3</sup>	X	X	X	X			X
PS Emulation Unidriver <sup>3</sup>	X	X	X	X			X
UNIX Model Script <sup>4</sup>					X		
Linux print drivers and model script <sup>5</sup>						X	
Scan drivers (including TWAIN and WIA) <sup>2</sup>	X	X	X				
Mass storage driver <sup>2</sup>	X	X	X	X			
Generic composite class driver (EWS) <sup>2</sup>	X	X	X				
<b>Installers</b>							
Common Windows Installer	X		X				



**Table 1-6** Software component availability for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP (continued)

Component	Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP – 32-bit	Microsoft Windows Server 2003	Microsoft Windows XP x64	IA-64 <sup>1</sup>	UNIX	Linux	Citrix
CD Browser	X		X				
.INF File (print) <sup>3</sup>	X	X	X	X			X
.INF File (scan) <sup>3</sup>	X	X	X				
Enterprise install	X	X	X				
Screen fonts	X		X				
Network configuration <sup>2</sup>	X		X				
Web registration <sup>2</sup>	X		X				
<b>Remote management and status</b>							
Applet for HP WebJet Admin <sup>6</sup>	X		X			X	X
PJL Support files	X		X	X	X	X	X
HP ToolboxFX <sup>7</sup>	X		X				
HP ToolboxFX Tour <sup>7</sup>	X		X				
HP Solution Center Configuration <sup>7</sup>	X		X				
<b>Online Documentation</b>							
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Animated Getting Started Guide<sup>2</sup></i>	X		X				
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide (.chm)<sup>2</sup></i>	X		X				
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide (.pdf)<sup>7</sup></i>	X		X				
<i>Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Install Notes</i>	X		X				
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Software Technical Reference<sup>1</sup></i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Help systems <sup>2</sup>	X		X				
<b>Other software</b>							
HP Solution Center <sup>7</sup>	X		X				
HP PhotoSmart Premier (optional)	X		X				
HP Marketing Assistant (optional)	X		X				
HP Document Viewer (optional)	X		X				

**Table 1-6** Software component availability for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP (continued)

Component	Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP – 32-bit	Microsoft Windows Server 2003	Microsoft Windows XP x64	IA-64 <sup>1</sup>	UNIX	Linux	Citrix
Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS (optional)	X		X				
Scan to E-mail <sup>7</sup>	X		X				
Software update <sup>2</sup>	X		X				
Firmware download update <sup>1</sup>	X		X				

<sup>1</sup> This component is available only at the following Web site: [www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)

<sup>2</sup> This component is installed in both Recommended and Minimum installations.

<sup>3</sup> This driver is installed through the Add Printer Wizard only.

<sup>4</sup> This component is available at the following Web site: [www.hp.com/go/UNIX](http://www.hp.com/go/UNIX)

<sup>5</sup> This component is available at the following Web site: [www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting](http://www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting)

<sup>6</sup> This component is available at the following Web site: [www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin](http://www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin)

<sup>7</sup> This component is installed in a Recommended installation only.

## Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CD is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The HP Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases.

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software is available for download at the following Web site:

[www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)

To order the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software if the CD is damaged or missing, contact HP Support at the following Web site. To request the software CD by phone, see the following Web site for the correct contact number for the country/region:

[www.hp.com/support](http://www.hp.com/support)



**NOTE** To order a replacement CD or newer version of the software than what was shipped with the product, go to the following Web site:

[www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)

Click **CD-ROM Order Page** to order, or click **Download drivers and software** to get the software update.

## In-box printing-system software CDs

The software CDs for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP contain a variety of files for installing the printing-system software on the computer.

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software comes on two separate CDs, one for Microsoft Windows and one for Macintosh. For information about the Macintosh CD, see [Macintosh](#).

Each CD includes documentation files and files that are required to install and uninstall the printing-system components.

Topics:

- [Microsoft Windows CD](#)
- [CD versions](#)
- [Readiris Pro V11.0 languages](#)

### Microsoft Windows CD

The root directory on the Microsoft Windows software CD contains the AUTORUN.EXE file, the SETUP.EXE file, and the following directories and support files:

- Drivers
- images
- LangFls
- Resting
- setup
- util

The printing-system files for each language also reside on the root directory of the CD and include a Manuals folder that contains the available documentation for that language.



**NOTE** File layouts differ by language for each regional version of the software CD.

To view the files, insert the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software CD, right-click **Start**, click **Explore**, and then select the CD-ROM drive.

### CD versions

The following table presents the part numbers and language groups on the software CDs for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

**Table 1-7** CD part numbers for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software for Microsoft Windows

Part number	Languages included on CD
CB394-60113	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Danish</li> <li>• Dutch</li> <li>• English</li> <li>• Finnish</li> <li>• French</li> <li>• German</li> <li>• Italian</li> <li>• Norwegian</li> <li>• Portuguese</li> <li>• Spanish</li> <li>• Swedish</li> </ul>
CB394-60114	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Czech</li> <li>• English</li> <li>• Hungarian</li> <li>• Polish</li> <li>• Russian</li> <li>• Turkish</li> </ul>
CB394-60115	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• English</li> <li>• Korean</li> <li>• Simplified Chinese</li> <li>• Traditional Chinese</li> <li>• Thai</li> </ul>

The following table provides localization information about the software components for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.



**NOTE** A language key follows each table.

**Table 1-8** Microsoft Windows software component localization by language, A-K

Component <sup>1</sup>	A R	B G	C A	CS	D A	DE	EL	EN	ES	ET	FI	FR	HE	HR	HU	ID	IT	KK	K O
HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver				X	X	X		X	X		X	X			X		X		X

**Table 1-8** Microsoft Windows software component localization by language, A-K (continued)

Component <sup>1</sup>	A R	B G	C A	CS	D A	DE	EL	EN	ES	ET	FI	FR	HE	HR	HU	ID	IT	KK	K O
HP ToolboxFX				X	X	X		X	X		X	X			X		X		X
HP Marketing Assistant				X	X	X		X	X		X	X			X		X		X
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP Start Guide</i>  <i>and HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP Start Guide</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Animated Getting Started Guide</i>	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X		X	X	X		X
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide (.chm and .pdf)</i>			X	X	X	X		X	X		X	X			X	X	X		X
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 MFP Install Notes</i>				X	X	X		X	X		X	X			X		X		X

<sup>1</sup> Components that are not available in a specific language are supported in English.

Language key for [Table 1-8 Microsoft Windows software component localization by language, A-K](#):

- AR = Arabic
- CA = Catalan
- CS = Czech
- DA = Danish
- DE = German
- EL = Greek
- EN = English
- ES = Spanish
- ET = Estonian
- FI = Finnish
- FR = French
- HE = Hebrew
- HR = Croatian
- HU = Hungarian

- ID = Indonesian
- IT = Italian
- KK = Kazakh
- KO = Korean

**Table 1-9** Microsoft Windows software component localization by language L-Z

Component <sup>1</sup>	LT	LV	NL	NO	PL	PT	RO	RU	SK	SL	SR	SV	TH	TR	VI	ZH CN	ZH TW
HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver			X	X	X	X		X				X	X	X		X	X
HP ToolboxFX			X	X	X	X		X				X		X		X	X
HP Marketing Assistant			X	X	X	X		X				X	X	X		X	X
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP Start Guide</i>  <i>and HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP Start Guide</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/ CM1017 MFP Animated Getting Started Guide</i>			X	X	X	X		X				X	X	X		X	X
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/ CM1017 MFP User Guide (.chm and .pdf)</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				X		X		X	X
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 MFP Install Notes</i>			X	X	X	X		X				X		X		X	X

<sup>1</sup> Components that are not available in a specific language are supported in English.

Language key for [Table 1-9 Microsoft Windows software component localization by language L-Z](#):

- LT = Lithuanian
- LV = Latvian
- NL = Dutch
- NO = Norwegian
- PL = Polish
- PT = Portuguese
- RO = Romanian
- RU = Russian

- SK = Slovak
- SL = Slovenian
- SR = Serbian
- SV = Swedish
- TH = Thai
- TR = Turkish
- VI = Vietnamese
- ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
- ZHTW = Traditional Chinese

### Readiris Pro V11.0 languages

The user interface for Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS is available in the following languages.

Arabic	German
Brazilian Portuguese	Greek
Bulgarian	Hebrew
Catalan	Italian
Chinese (Simplified)	Japanese
Chinese (Traditional)	Korean
Czech	Norwegian
Dutch	Polish
English	Russian
Finnish	Spanish
French	Turkish

The Readiris Pro V11.0 software recognizes the following languages.

American English	Bulgarian	Faroese	Icelandic	Luxembourgish	Occitan	Slovak	Waray	Simplified Chinese <sup>2</sup>
British English	Byelorussian	Fijian	Ido	Macedonian	Pidgin English	Slovenian	Wolof	Traditional Chinese <sup>2</sup>
Afrikaans	Catalan	Finnish	Ilocano	Madurese	Polish	Somali	Xhosa	Japanese <sup>2</sup>
Albanian	Cebuano	French	Indonesian	Malagasy	Portuguese	Sotho	Zapotec	Korean <sup>2</sup>
Aymara	Chamorro	Frisian	Interlingua	Malay	Quechua	Spanish	Zulu	Moldovan
Balinese	Corsican	Friulian	Irish (Gaelic)	Maltese	Rhaeto-Roman	Sundanese	Bulgarian-English	Bosnian (Cyrillic and Latin)

Basque	Croatian	Galician	Italian	Manx (Gaelic)	Romanian	Swahili	Byelorussian-English	Tetum
Bemba	Czech	Ganda	Javanese	Maori	Rundi	Swedish	Greek-English	Swiss-German
Bikol	Danish	German	Kapampangan	Mayan	Russian	Tagalog	Macedonian-English	Kazak
Bislama	Dutch	Greek	Kicongo	Minangkabau	Samoan	Tahitian	Russian-English	
Brazilian	Esperanto	Greenlandic	Kinyarwanda	Nahuatl	Sardinian	Tok Pisin	Serbian-English	
Breton	Estonian	Haitian (Creole)	Kurdish	Norwegian	Scottish (Gaelic)	Tonga	Ukrainian-English	
English	English	Hani	Latin	Numeric	Serbian	Tswana	Arabic <sup>1</sup>	
Finnish	Finnish	Hiligaynon	Latvian	Nyanja	Serbian (Latin)	Turkish	Farsi <sup>1</sup>	
French	French	Hungarian	Lithuanian	Nynorsk	Shona	Ukrainian	Hebrew <sup>1</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> Readiris Pro V11.0 Middle-East only.

<sup>2</sup> Readiris Pro V11.0 Asian only.



# HP LaserJet documentation

The documentation in the following table is available for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

**Table 1-10** User documentation availability and localization

Document name	Languages	Part number	Location
HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide	English	CB394–90907	The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide is available in electronic format on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software CD.
	Catalan	CB394–90908	
	Chinese (Simplified)	CB394–90928	
	Chinese (Traditional)	CB394–90929	
	Czech	CB394–90909	
	Danish	CB394–90910	
	Dutch	CB394–90919	
	Finnish	CB394–90913	
	French	CB394–90914	
	German	CB394–90911	
	Hungarian	CB394–90915	
	Indonesian (Bahasa)	CB394–90916	
	Italian	CB394–90917	
	Korean	CB394–90918	
	Norwegian	CB394–90920	
	Portuguese (Brazilian)	CB394–90922	
	Polish	CB394–90921	
	Romanian	CB394–90923	
	Russian	CB394–90924	
	Spanish	CB394–90912	
	Swedish	CB394–90925	
	Thai	CB394–90926	
	Turkish	CB394–90927	
HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP Start Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Catalan</li> <li>• Dutch</li> <li>• English</li> <li>• French</li> <li>• German</li> <li>• Italian</li> </ul>	CB394–90901	The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP Start Guide is available in hard copy and comes in the box with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP.

**Table 1-10** User documentation availability and localization (continued)

Document name	Languages	Part number	Location
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Portuguese (Brazilian)</li> <li>Spanish</li> </ul>		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Danish</li> <li>English</li> <li>Finnish</li> <li>Hebrew</li> <li>Greek</li> <li>Norwegian</li> <li>Swedish</li> </ul>	CB394–90902	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Arabic</li> <li>English</li> <li>Estonian</li> <li>Kazakh</li> <li>Latvian</li> <li>Lithuanian</li> <li>Russian</li> <li>Turkish</li> </ul>	CB394–90903	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bulgarian</li> <li>Croatian</li> <li>Czech</li> <li>English</li> <li>Hungarian</li> <li>Polish</li> <li>Romanian</li> <li>Slovak</li> <li>Slovenian</li> </ul>	CB394–90904	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bahasa Indonesian</li> <li>English</li> <li>Korean</li> <li>Simplified Chinese</li> <li>Traditional Chinese</li> <li>Thai</li> <li>Vietnamese</li> </ul>	CB394–90906	

**Table 1-10** User documentation availability and localization (continued)

Document name	Languages	Part number	Location
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP Start Guide</i>	• Catalan	CB395–90901	The <i>HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP Start Guide</i> is available in hard copy and comes in the box with the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.
	• Dutch		
	• English		
	• French		
	• German		
	• Italian		
	• Portuguese		
	• Spanish		
	• English	CB395–90902	
	• Danish		
	• Finnish		
	• Greek		
	• Hebrew		
	• Norwegian		
	• Swedish		
• Arabic	CB395–90903		
• English			
• Estonian			
• Kazakh			
• Latvian			
• Lithuanian			
• Russian			
• Turkish			

**Table 1-10** User documentation availability and localization (continued)

Document name	Languages	Part number	Location
	• Bulgarian	CB395–90904	
	• Croatian		
	• Czech		
	• English		
	• Hungarian		
	• Polish		
	• Romanian		
	• Slovak		
	• Slovenian		
	• Bahasa Indonesian	CB395–90906	
	• English		
	• Korean		
	• Simplified Chinese		
	• Thai		
	• Traditional Chinese		
	• Vietnamese		

## 2 Software description

### Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP comes with additional software tools to enhance the use of the product.

Topics:

- [HP Customer Participation Program](#)
- [HP Solution Center](#)
- [HP ToolboxFX](#)
- [HP Embedded Web Server](#)
- [Optional software](#)

# HP Customer Participation Program

HP Customer Participation Program is HP's voluntary program for communication between the computer and HP to help HP monitor toner usage. HP Customer Participation Program is installed automatically with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software.

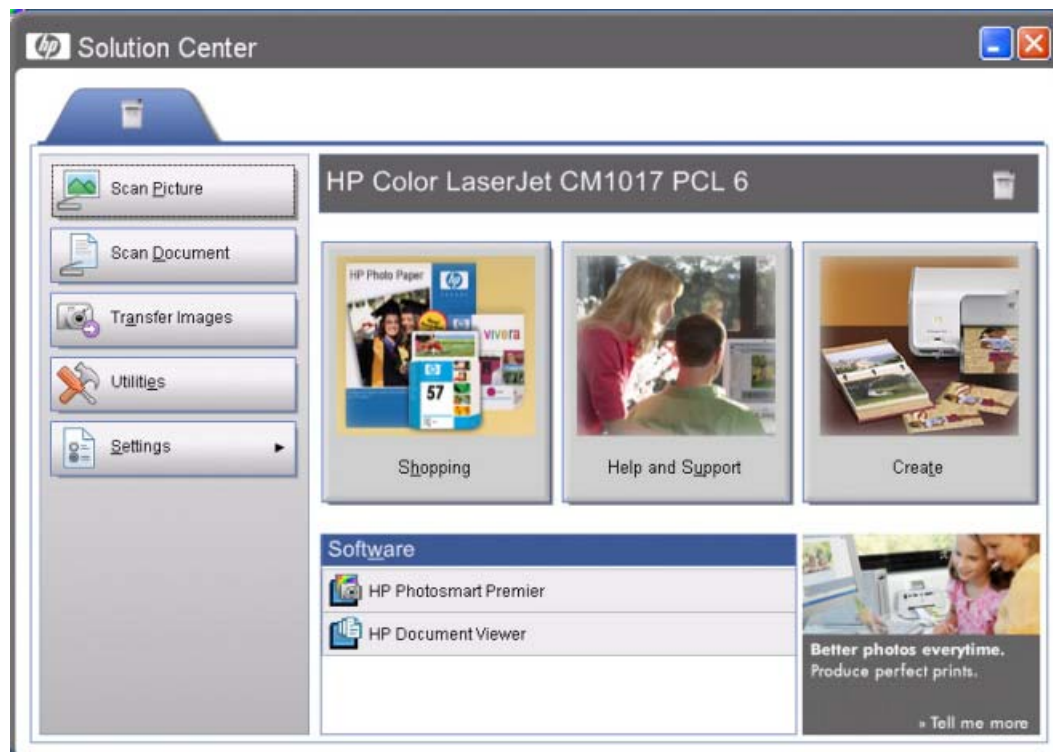
About two weeks after installation, an option appears on the computer screen allowing users to discontinue participation in the program. The message contains full disclosure of the information that is communicated. Participation is entirely voluntary, and the impact on processing and connecting speed is negligible. Personal information is never sent without permission. TCP/IP addresses are used only to enable the connection and for security purposes.

# HP Solution Center

The HP Solution Center is installed automatically with a full installation of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software.

Use the HP Solution Center to access the product-specific software, default settings, status, and onscreen Help. Use the HP Solution Center to view and print images or video clips, go to the HP Shopping Web site, and update HP software. The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP can also transfer images from a camera or photo memory card.

To start the HP Solution Center, click **Start, Programs, HP, and HP Solution Center**. Or, double-click the **HP Solution Center** icon on the desktop shortcut. The following screen appears.



**Figure 2-1** HP Solution Center screen

- [Header area](#)
- [Product information area](#)
- [Control area](#)
- [Shopping area](#)
- [Help and Support area](#)
- [Create area](#)
- [Software area](#)
- [Idea window](#)

## Header area



**Figure 2-2** Header area – HP Solution Center

The header area contains the HP logo and a tab for each HP product that has been connected to the computer at least once.

## Product information area



**Figure 2-3** Product Information area – HP Solution Center

The product information area contains the product name, model number, and a small photo of the product.

## Control area



**Figure 2-4** Control area – HP Solution Center

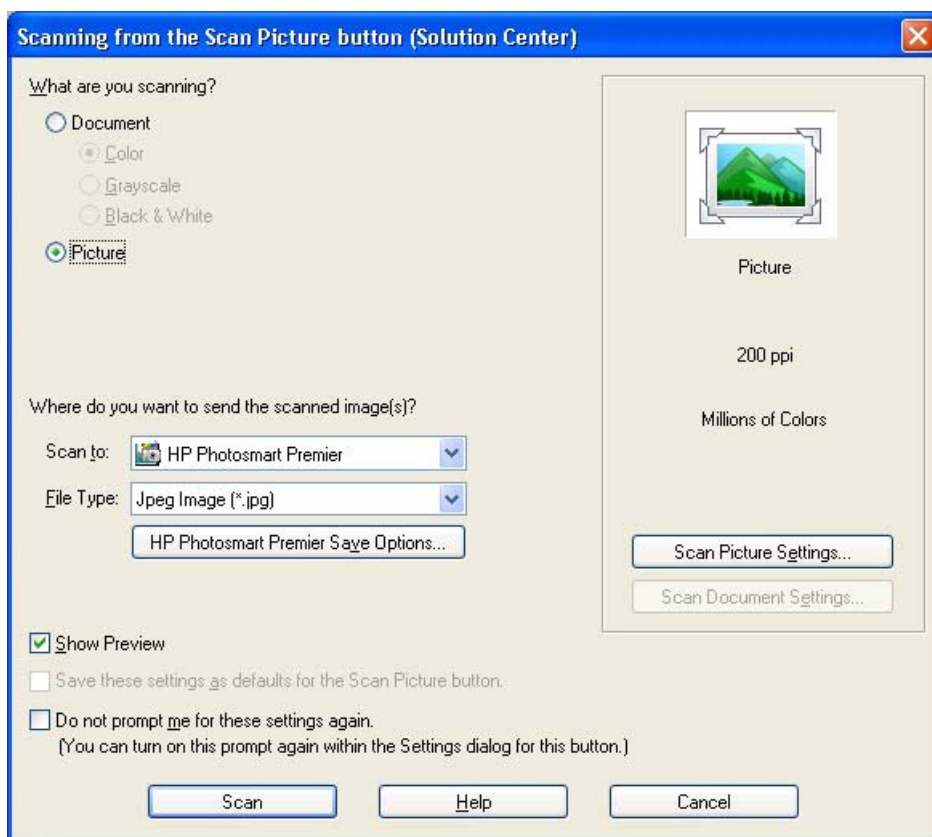
The control area contains the following options for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP:

- [Scan picture](#)
- [Scan document](#)
- [Transfer images](#)
- [Utilities](#)
- [Support](#)
- [Settings](#)

## Scan picture

Click **Scan picture** to launch the HP LaserJet Scan software and begin scanning a photo, picture, or drawing.



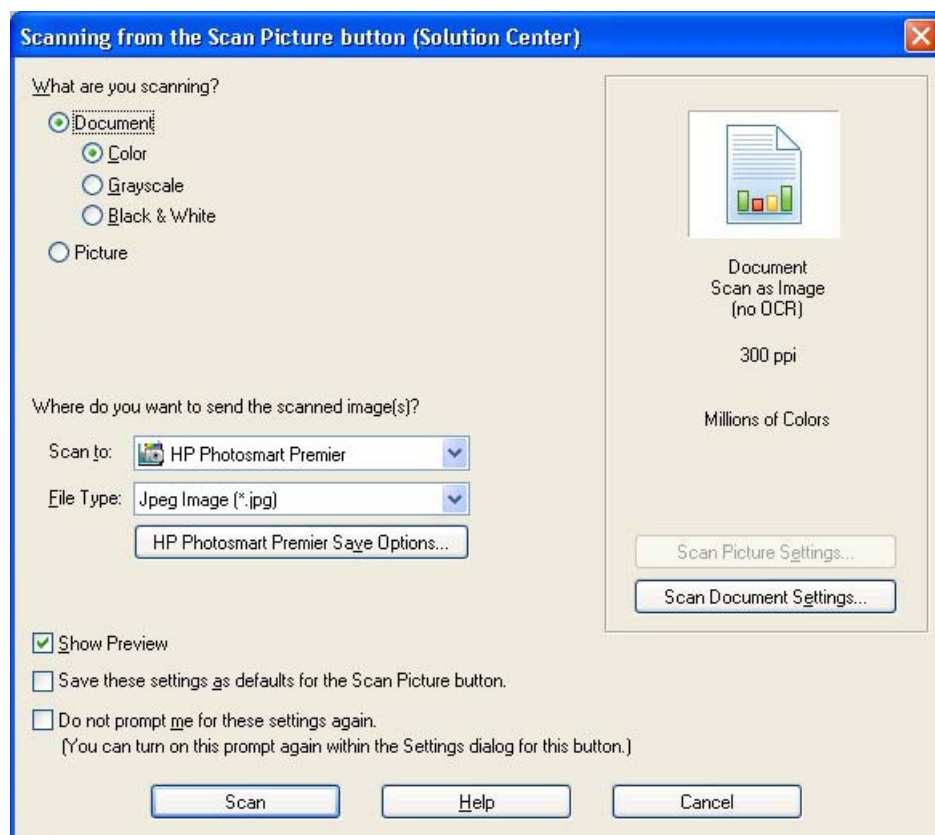


**Figure 2-5 Scan picture – HP Solution Center**

For more information about scanning, see [HP LaserJet Scan software](#).

## Scan document

Click **Scan document** to scan and edit a text document with or without graphics.



**Figure 2-6** HP Solution Center – Scan document

For more information about scanning, see [HP LaserJet Scan software](#).

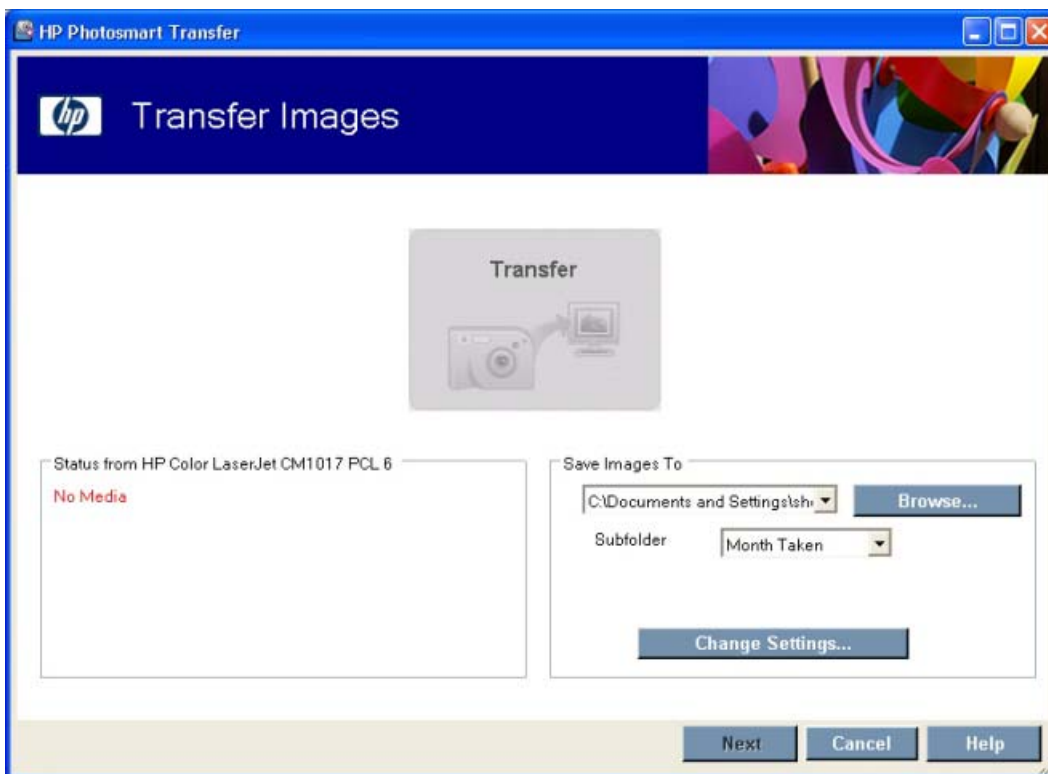
## Transfer images



**NOTE** This is the recommended method for transferring photos.

Digital images can be created and stored on digital imaging devices such as digital cameras and memory cards, and then transferred to a computer for printing or sharing with the HP Photosmart Premier software.

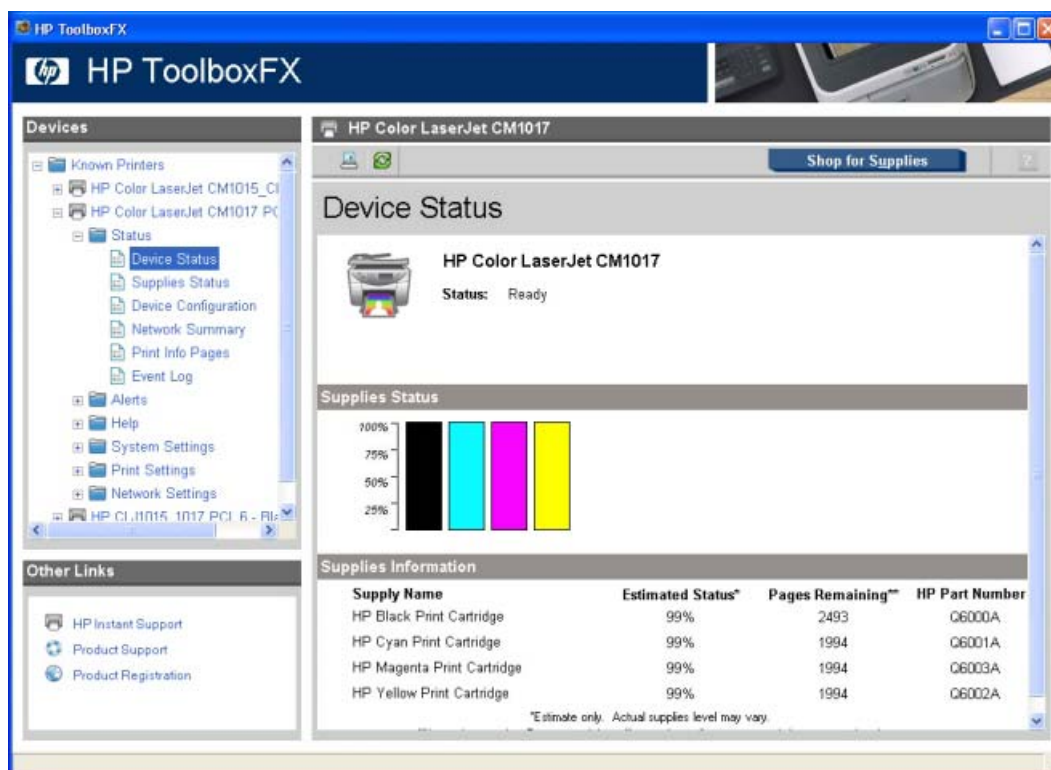
Clicking **Transfer Images**, opens the following screen.



**Figure 2-7** Transfer and Print Images screen

## Utilities

Click **Utilities** to open the HP ToolboxFX for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. Use the HP ToolboxFX to monitor the status of the MFP, order supplies, and change configuration settings for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.



**Figure 2-8** HP ToolboxFX Status screen

## Support

If Web access is available, click **Support** to open the HP support Web page for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

Or open the web page directly by going to the following Web site:

[www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)

## Settings

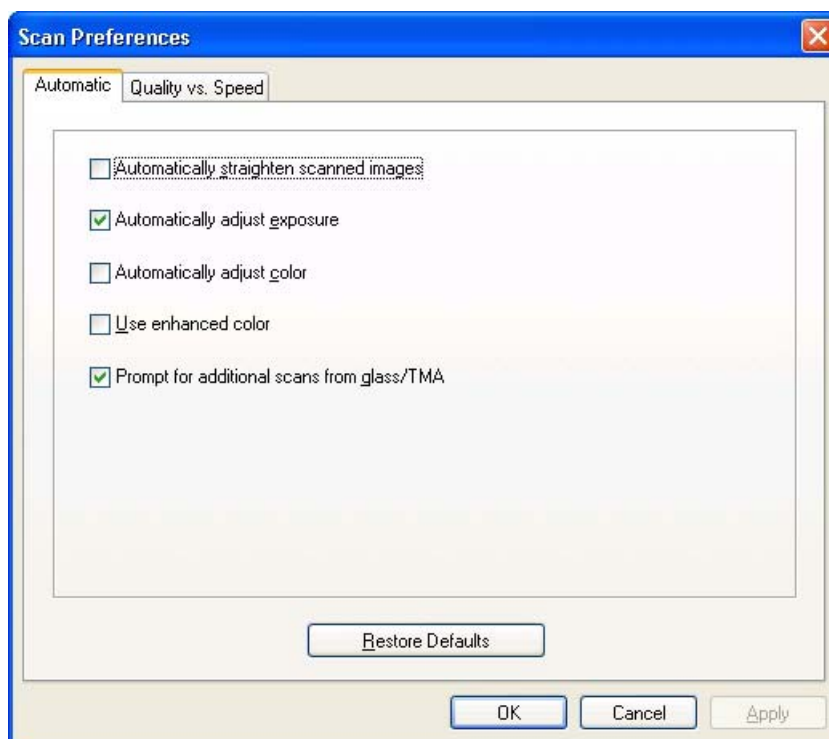
Clicking **Settings**, causes the following options to become available:

- [Scan settings](#)
- [Print Settings](#)
- [Image Transfer Settings](#)
- [Network Settings](#)
- [Status](#)

### Scan settings

Use the settings in this section to specify default settings for scanning. The following options are available from this menu:

- **Scan Preferences.** Clicking this option opens the **Scan Preferences** dialog box.

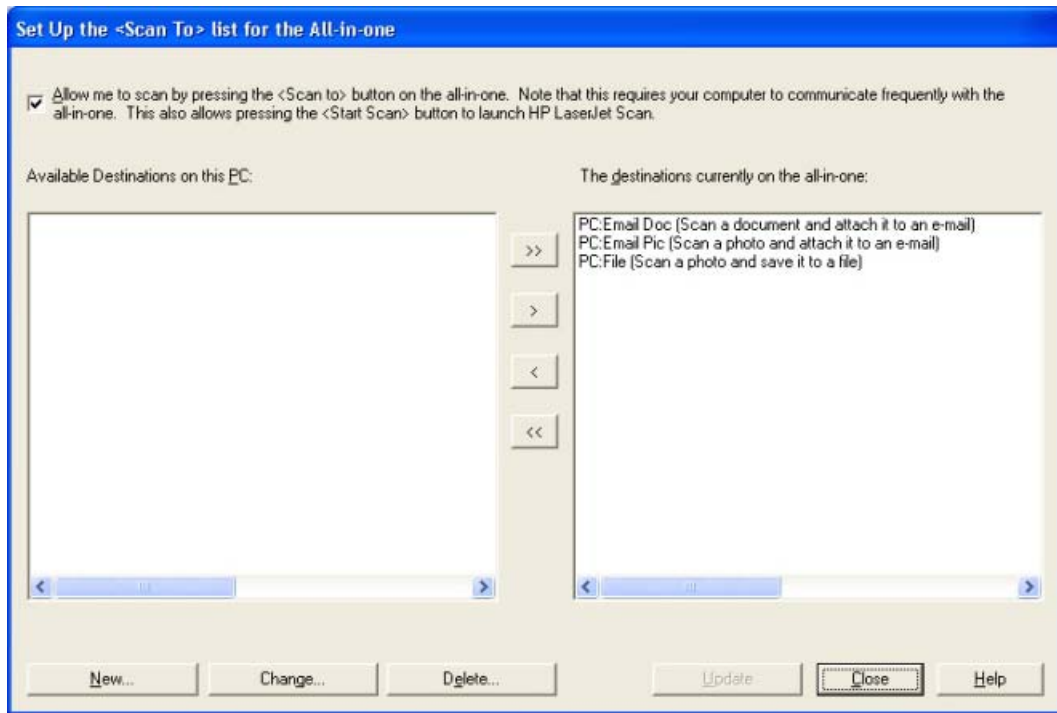


**Figure 2-9** Scan Preferences dialog box – HP Solution Center

The **Scan Preferences** dialog box includes two tabs: **Automatic** and **Quality vs. Speed**. However, the HP LaserJet Scan software supports only the options on the **Automatic** tab. The following options are available.

- **Automatically straighten scanned images**
- **Automatically adjust exposure**
- **Automatically adjust color**
- **Use enhanced color**
- **Prompt for additional scans from glass/TMA.**
- **Restore Defaults**

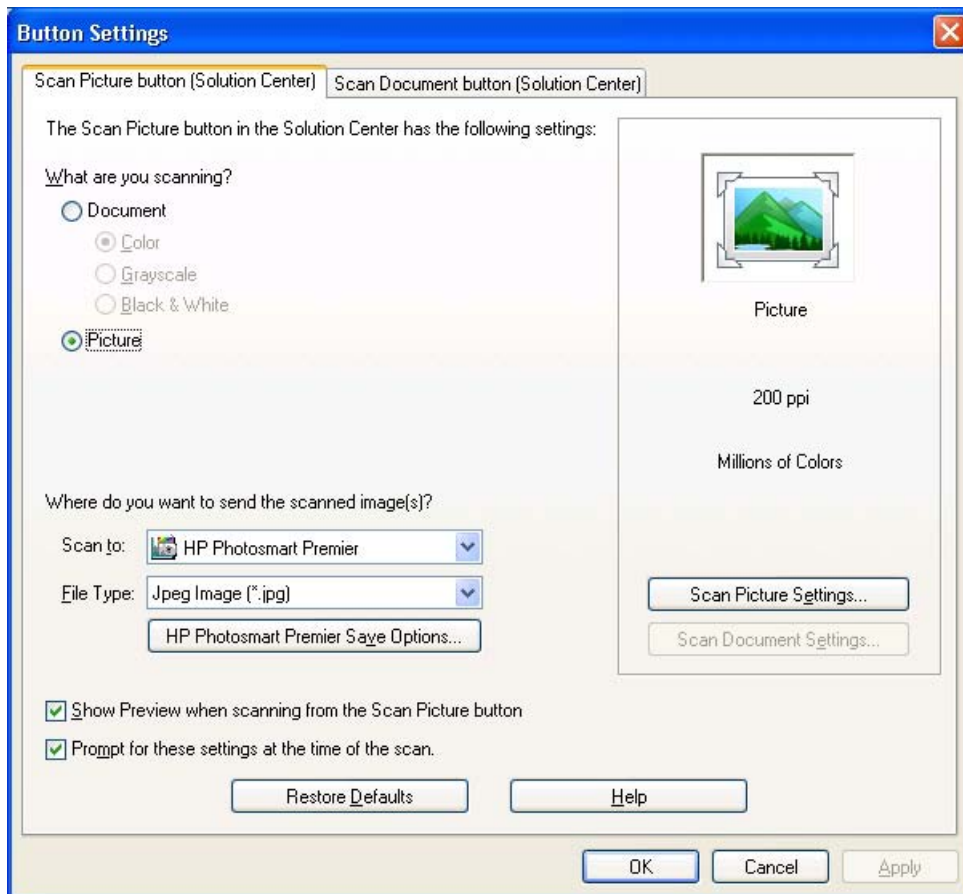
- **Front Panel Scan Button Settings.** Clicking this option opens the **Set up the <Scan to> list for the all-in-one.**



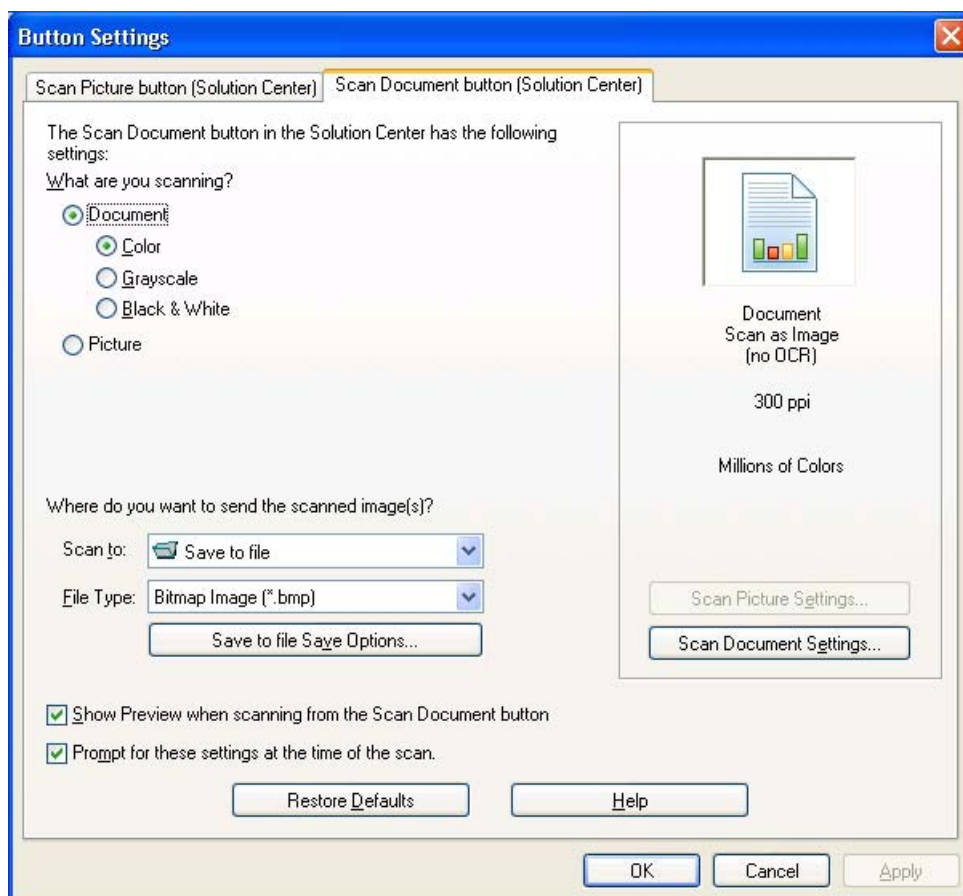
**Figure 2-10** Set up the <Scan to> list for the all-in-one – HP Solution Center

Use the controls on this dialog box to configure the available locations for the **Scan to** button on the MFP control panel.

- **Solution Center Scan Button Settings.** Clicking this option opens the **Button Settings** dialog box.



**Figure 2-11** Scan Picture button tab – Button Settings dialog box – HP Solution Center



**Figure 2-12** Scan Document button tab – Button Settings dialog box – HP Solution Center

Use the options on these tabs to configure the default settings for the **Scan Picture** button and the **Scan Document** button in the HP Solution Center.

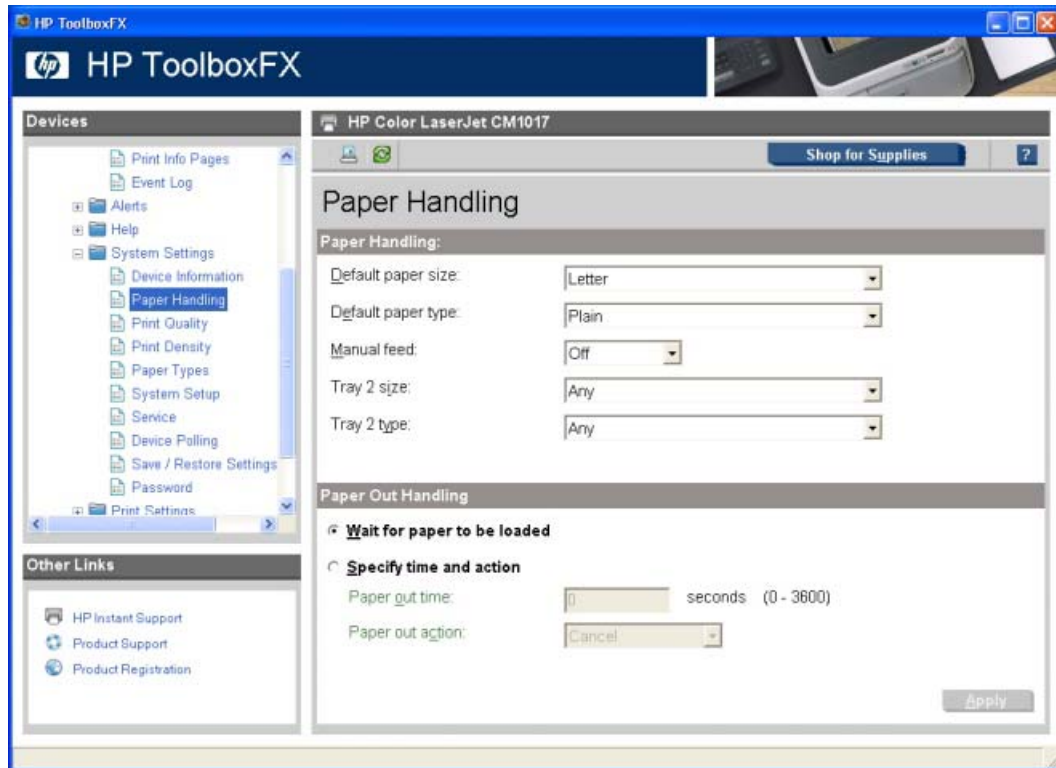
### Print Settings

Click this setting to specify default settings for print jobs, maintain the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/ CM1017 MFP, or set up a remote print driver, for example, through the HP ToolboxFX.



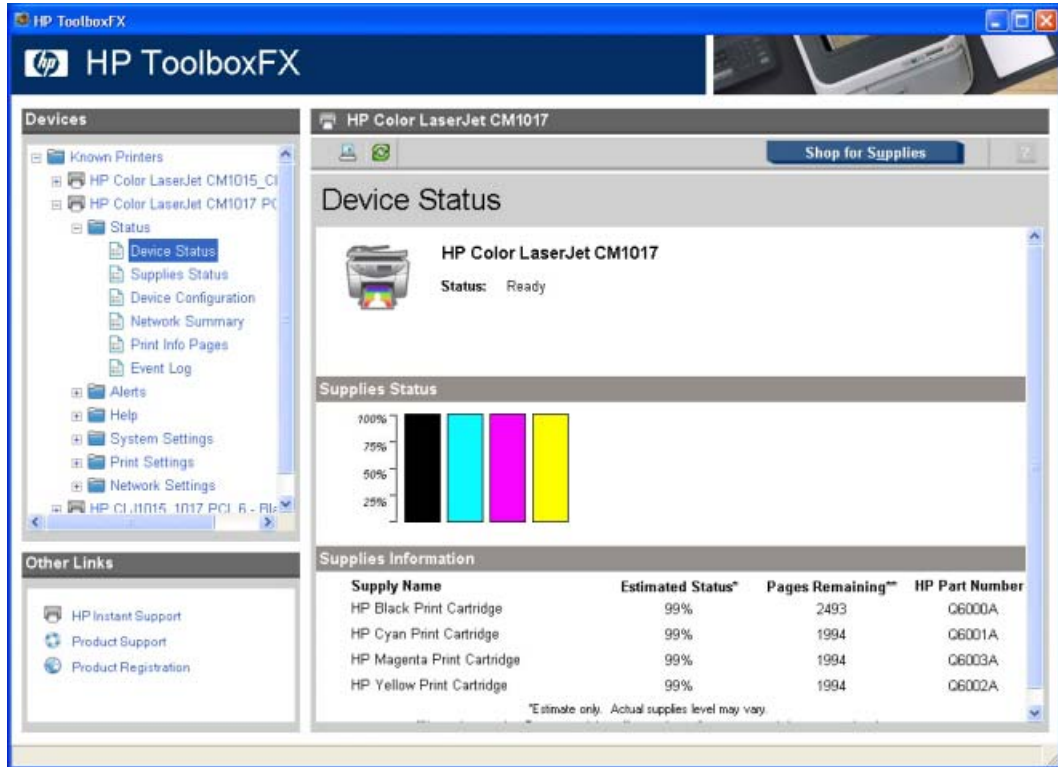
The following options are available from this menu:

- **Printer settings.** Clicking **Print Settings** opens the following screen in the HP ToolboxFX.



**Figure 2-13** Paper Handling screen

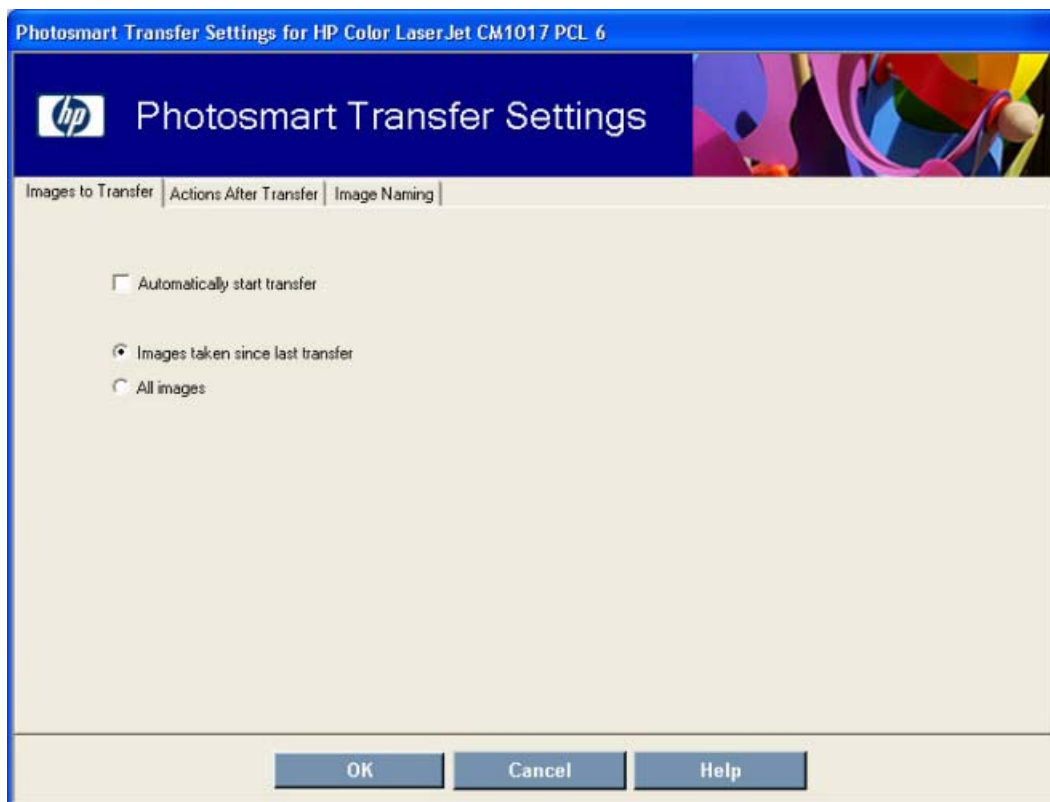
- **Printer Toolbox.** Clicking **Printer Toolbox.** opens the following screen in the HP ToolboxFX.



**Figure 2-14** Device Status screen

### Image Transfer Settings

Click this setting to specify default settings that affect all transfer sessions. The following screen appears in the HP Photosmart Premier software program.



**Figure 2-15** Transfer Settings screen

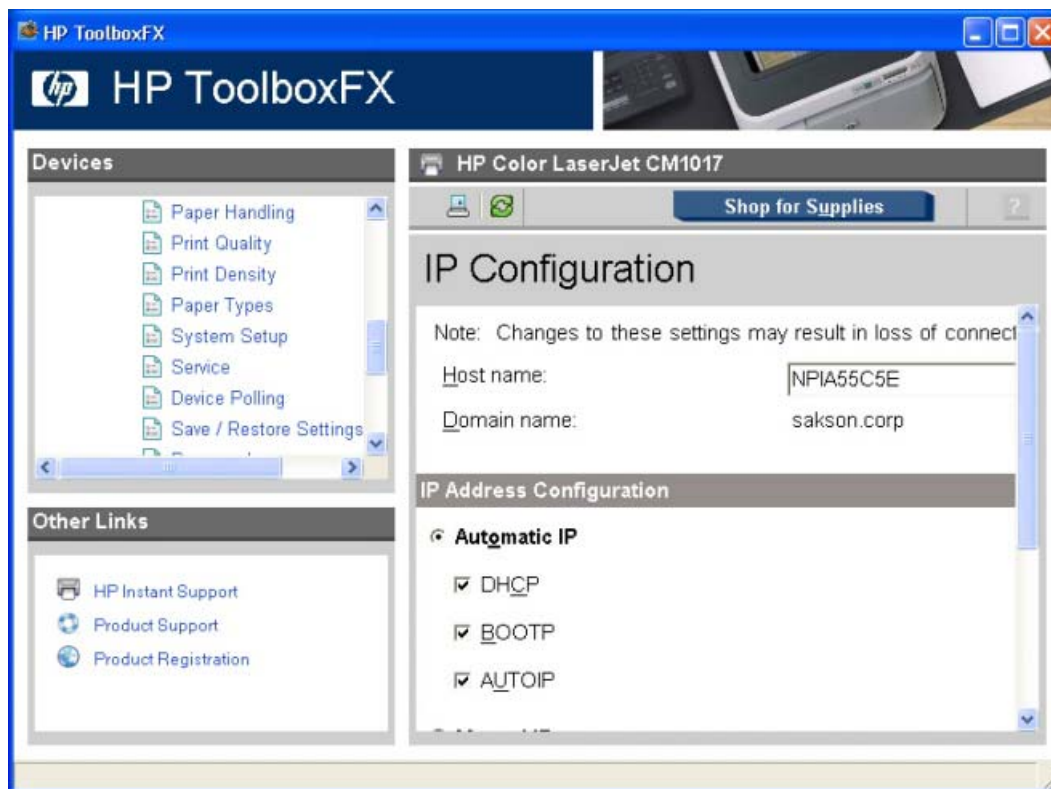
### Network Settings

Click this setting to modify current network settings for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. If the device is not set up for networking, a message appears explaining that this feature is not available.



**CAUTION** If you are not familiar with changing network settings, do not modify the settings in the window that appears.

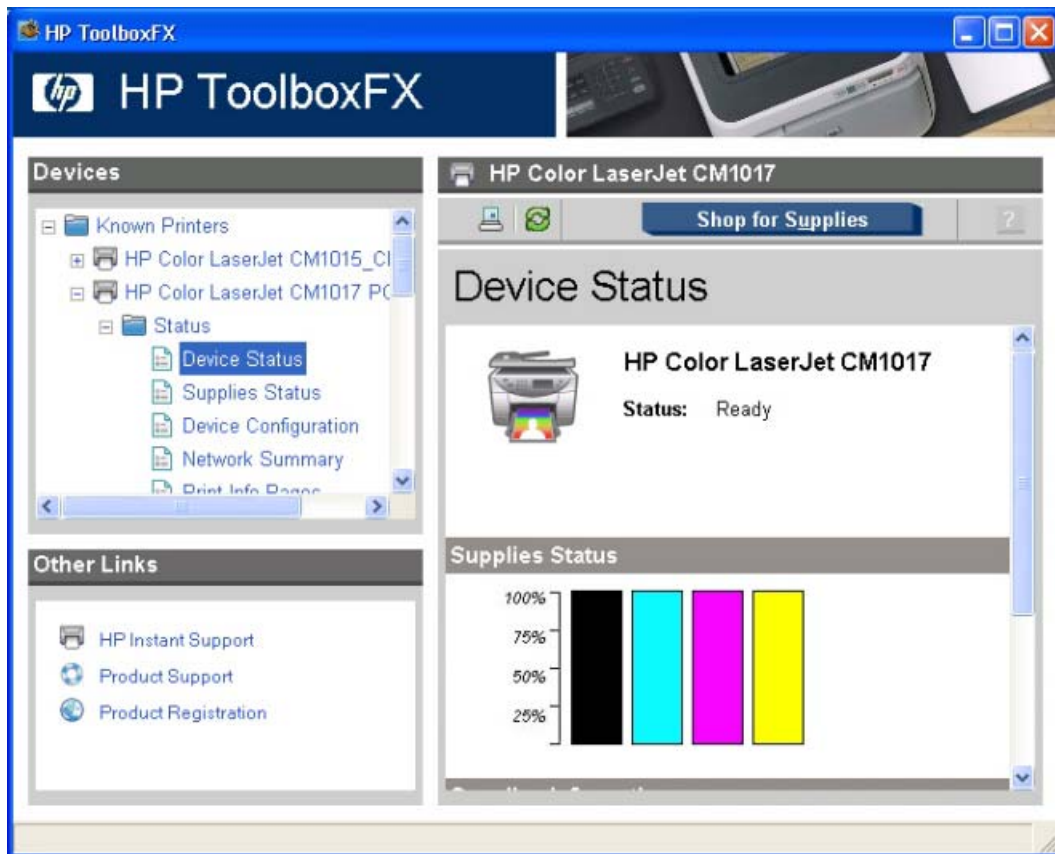
Clicking **Network Settings** opens the following screen.



**Figure 2-16** Network Settings screen

### Status

Click **Status** to open the **Device Status** screen from the HP ToolboxFX.



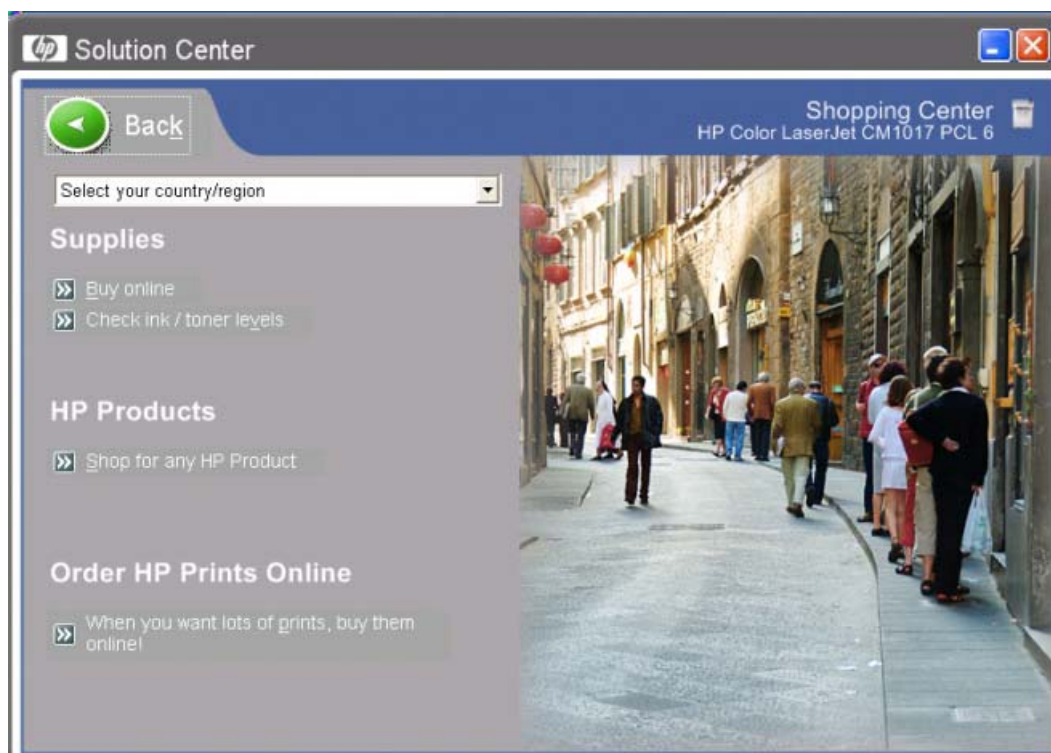
**Figure 2-17** Device Status screen

## Shopping area



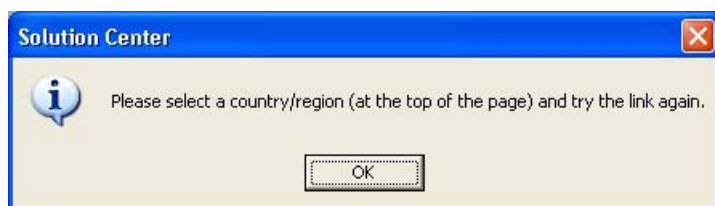
**Figure 2-18** Shopping area – HP Solution Center

Clicking **Shopping** opens the Shopping Center.



**Figure 2-19** Shopping Center – HP Solution Center

The **Shopping Center** provides links to buy supplies, other HP products, and even prints of photographs online. The links change dynamically according to the location, which is selected in the drop-down menu at the top of the page. Clicking a link without first choosing a country/region, causes the following dialog box to appear.



**Figure 2-20** Choose country/region dialog box – HP Solution Center

The following options are available on the **Shopping Center** page.

- [Supplies](#)
- [HP Products](#)
- [Order HP Prints Online](#)

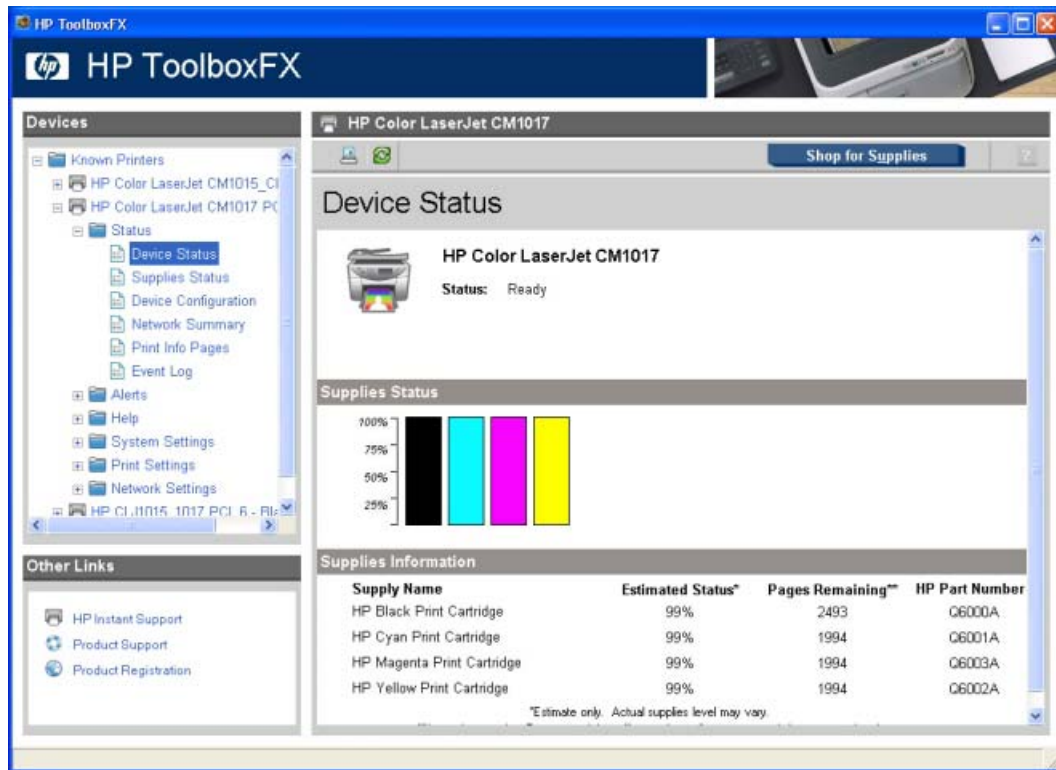
## Supplies

The **Supplies** section contains the following options.

- **Buy online.** Click **Buy online** to go to the HP web site that sells supplies for the country/region.



- **Check ink / toner levels.** Click **Check ink / toner levels** to open the **Device Status** page of the HP ToolboxFX.



**Figure 2-21** Check ink / toner levels – HP Solution Center

## HP Products

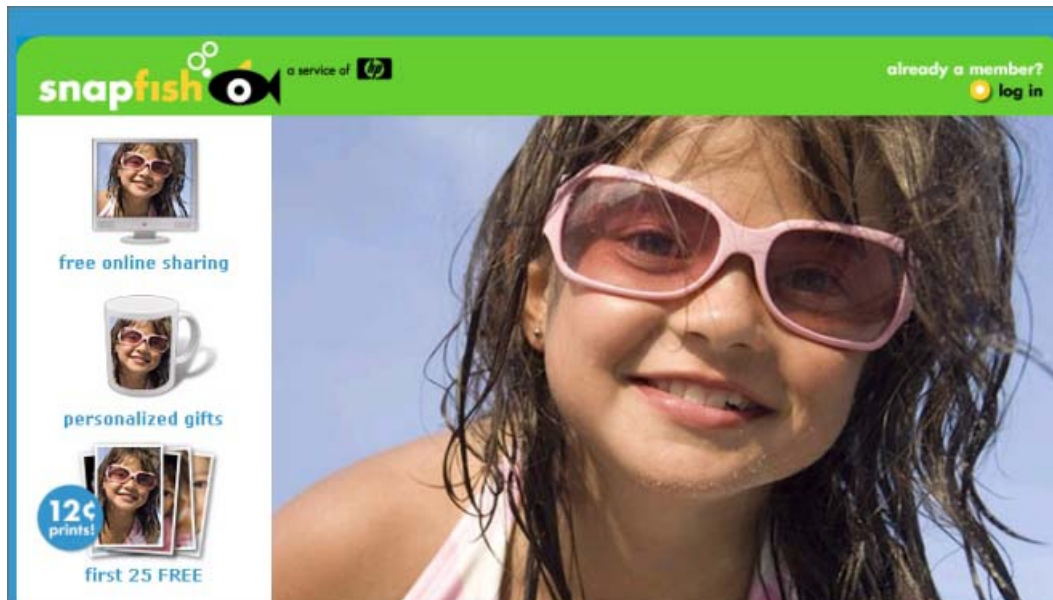
**Shop for any HP product** is the only option in this section. Clicking this link opens the Web browser and to the HP Online Store for the country/region.



**Figure 2-22** HP Online Shopping screen — HP Solution Center

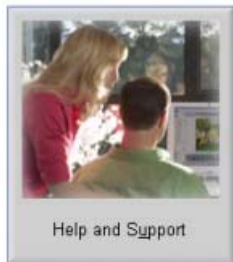
## Order HP Prints Online

**When you want lots of prints, buy them online!** link is the only option in this section. Clicking this link opens the Web browser to the Snapfish.com Web site, a service of HP, where sharing photos, ordering prints, or buying personalized photo gifts becomes available.



**Figure 2-23** Order HP prints online – HP Solution Center

## Help and Support area



**Figure 2-24** Help and support area – HP Solution Center

Clicking **Help and Support** opens the **Help and Support** screen.





**Figure 2-25** Help and Support screen – HP Solution Center

The Help and Support screen offers the following options:

- [Try these first](#)
- [Tools / Utilities](#)
- [Documentation](#)
- [Online Support](#)

### **Try these first**

**Check for software updates** is the only option in this section. Clicking this option launches the HP Software Update utility, which searches the HP web site for software updates for the product.



Figure 2-26 HP Software Update – HP Solution Center

## Tools / Utilities

The **Tools / Utilities** section contains the following options.

- **Printer Toolbox and Status.** Clicking either of these links opens the **Device Status** page in the HP ToolboxFX.

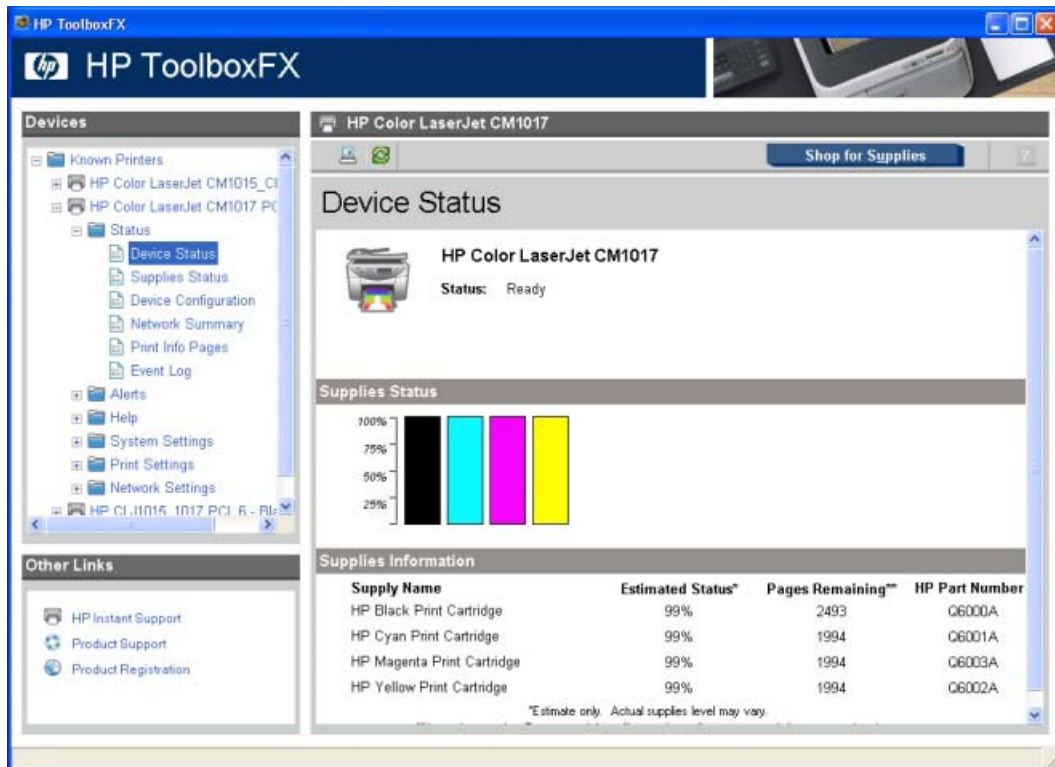
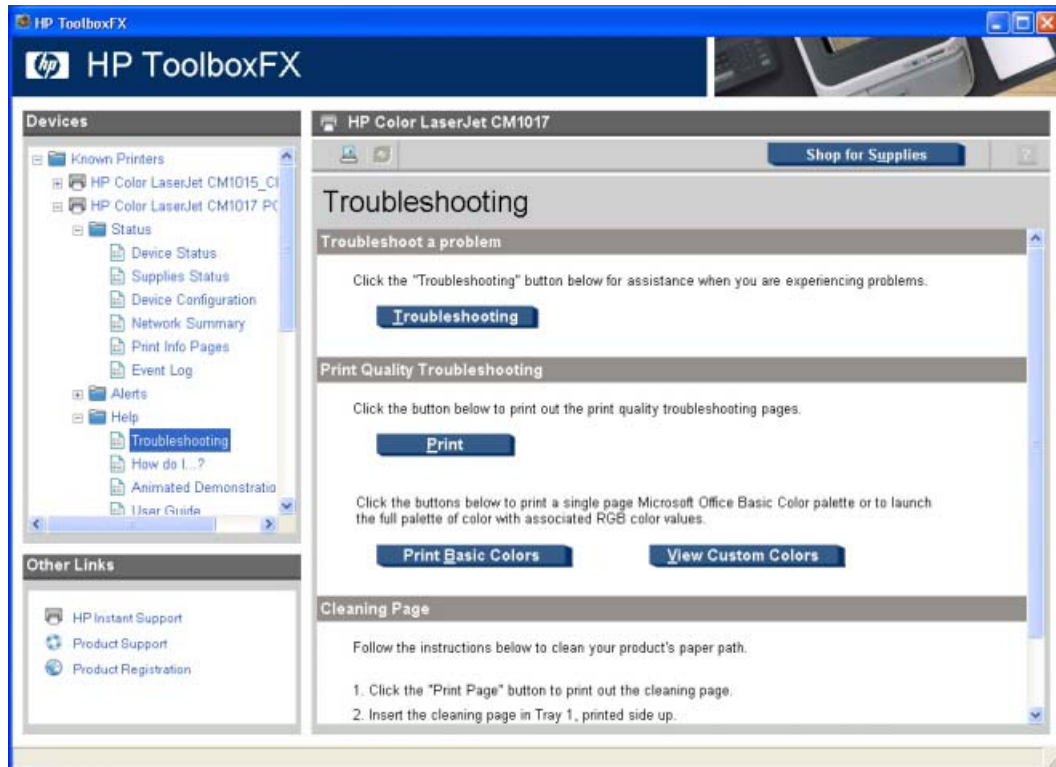


Figure 2-27 Device Status page – HP ToolboxFX

- **Technical Information.** Clicking this link opens the **Troubleshooting** page in the HP ToolboxFX.

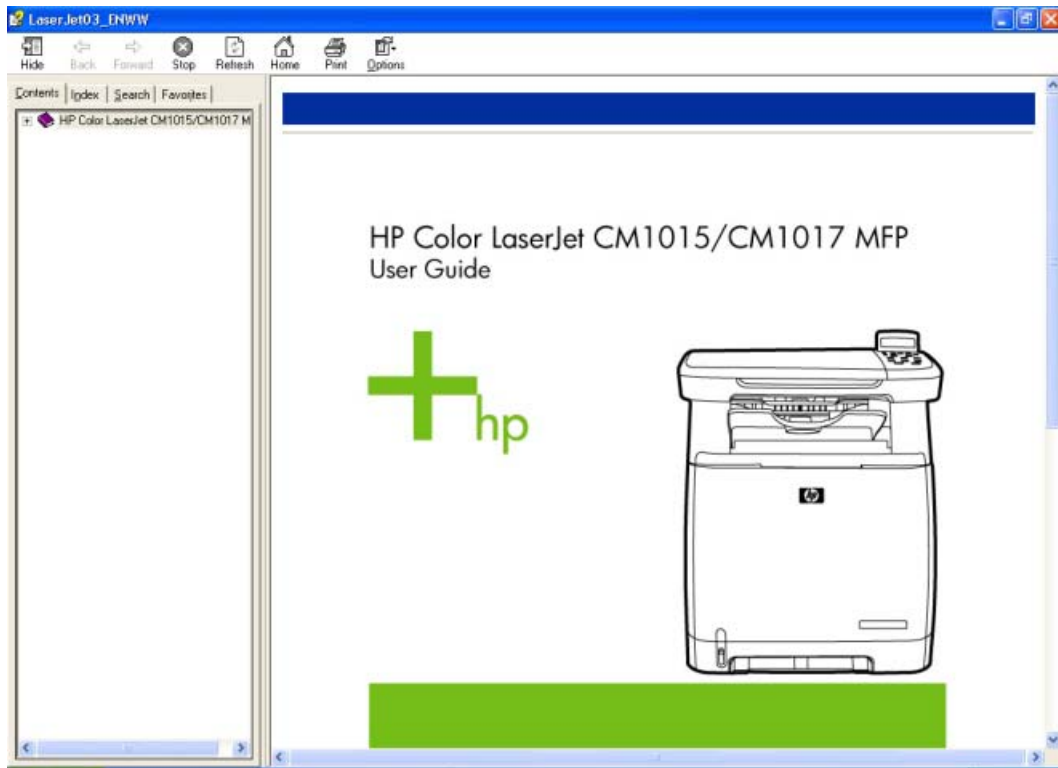


**Figure 2-28** Troubleshooting page – HP ToolboxFX

## Documentation

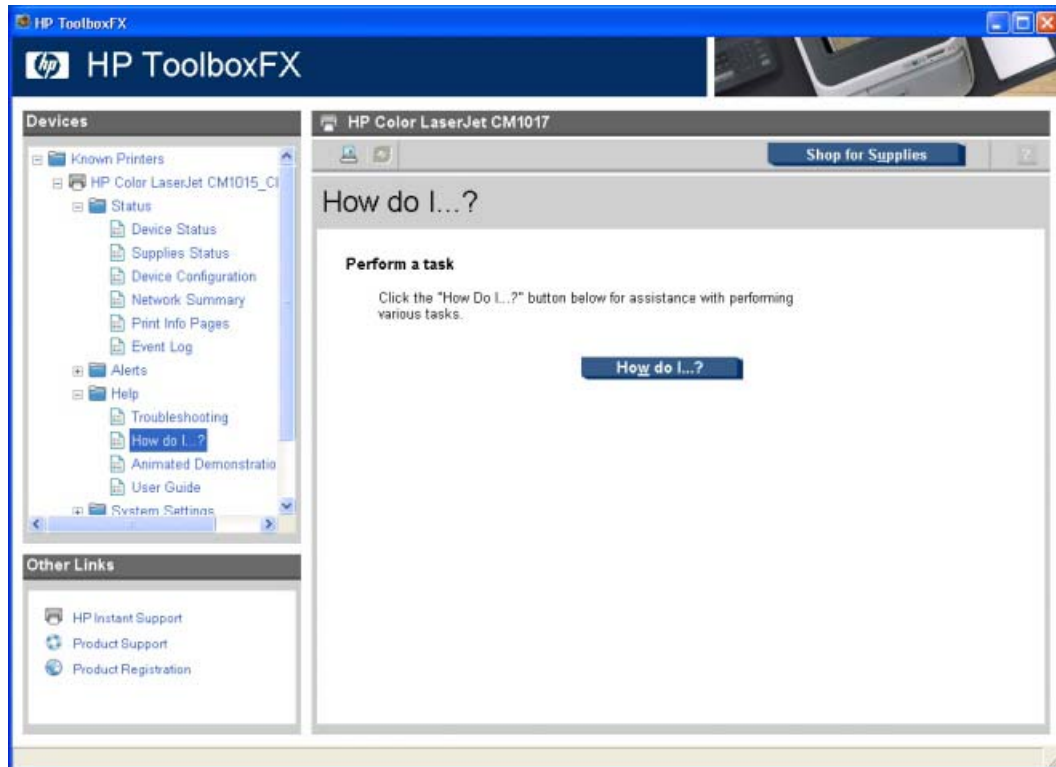
The **Documentation** section includes the following options.

- **Product Help.** Click this link to open the online version of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide.



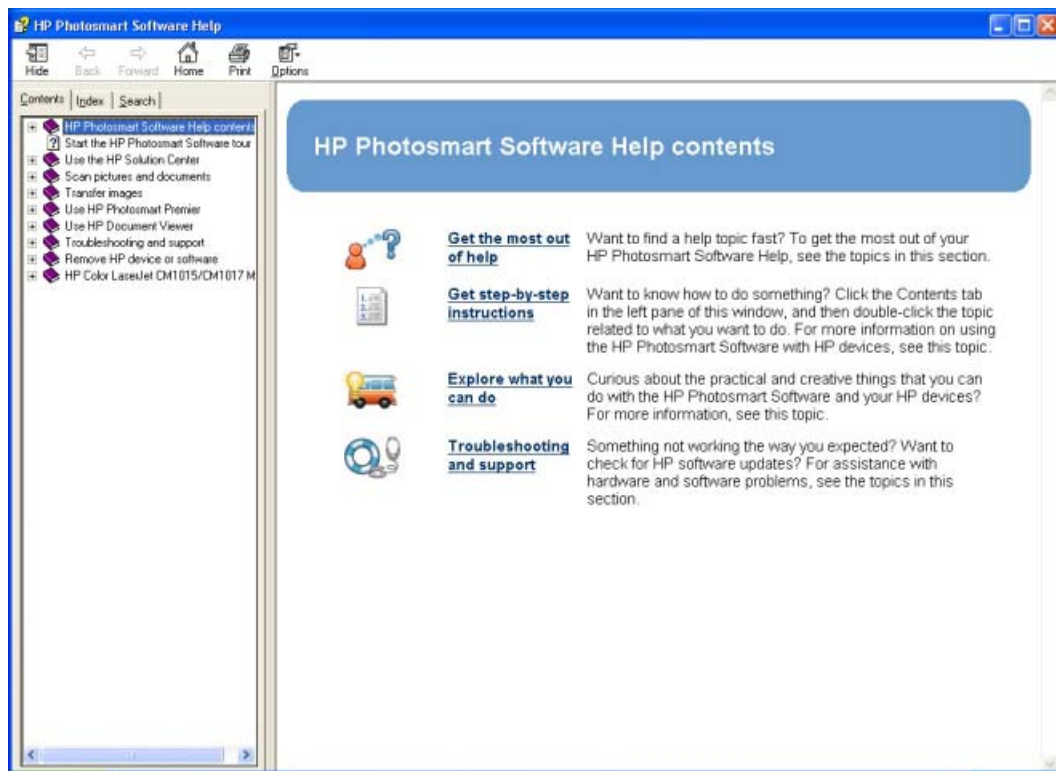
**Figure 2-29** HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide – HP Solution Center

- **How Do I?** Click this link to open the **How Do I?** screen in the HP ToolboxFX.



**Figure 2-30** How Do I? – HP Solution Center

- **Onscreen Guide.** Click this link to open the online help for HP Photosmart Premier.



**Figure 2-31** HP Photosmart Software Help – HP Solution Center

## Online Support

The **Online Support** section contains the following links.

- **Product webpage.** Click this link to go to the product support Web site:  
[www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)
- **Contact HP.** Click this link to go to the HP support Web site:  
[www.hp.com/support](http://www.hp.com/support)

## Create area



**Figure 2-32 Create area** – HP Solution Center

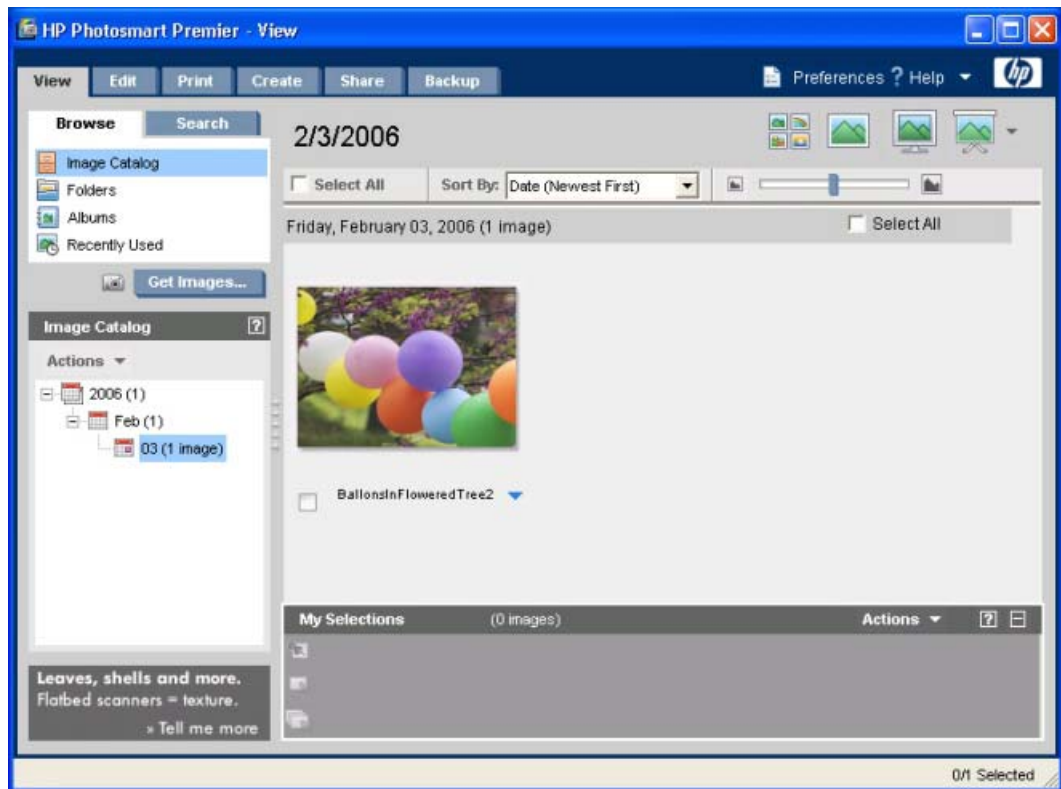
Click **Create** to open the **Creative Projects** screen.



**Figure 2-33 Creative Projects screen** – HP Solution Center

The **Creative Projects** screen contains the following options.

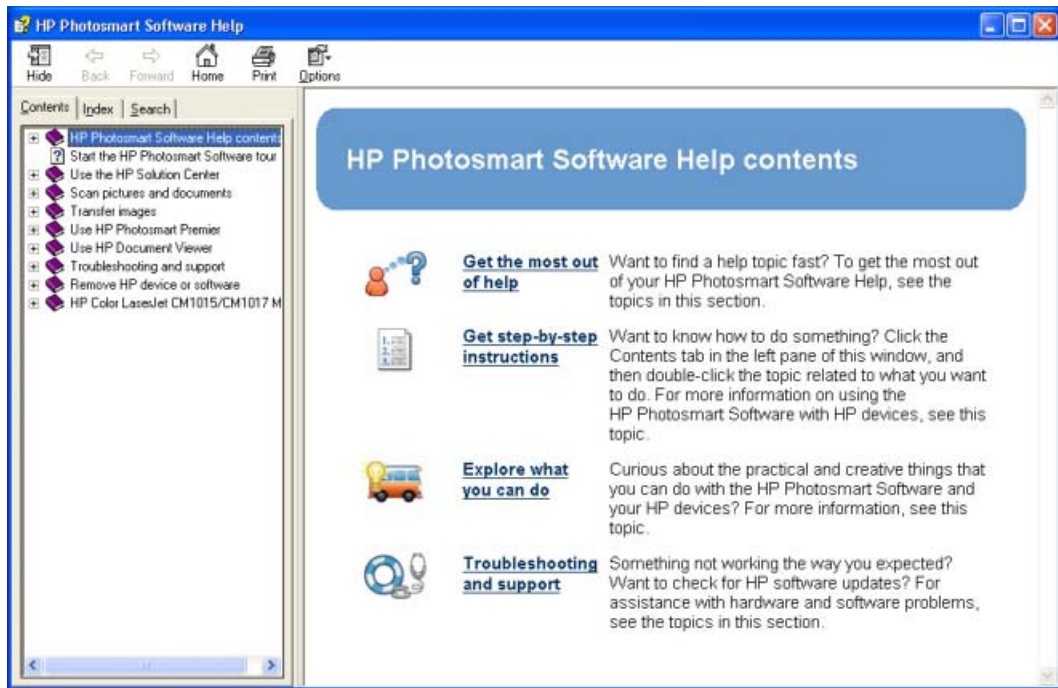
- **HP Photosmart Premier.** Click this link to open the HP Photosmart Premier software.



**Figure 2-34** HP Photosmart Premier



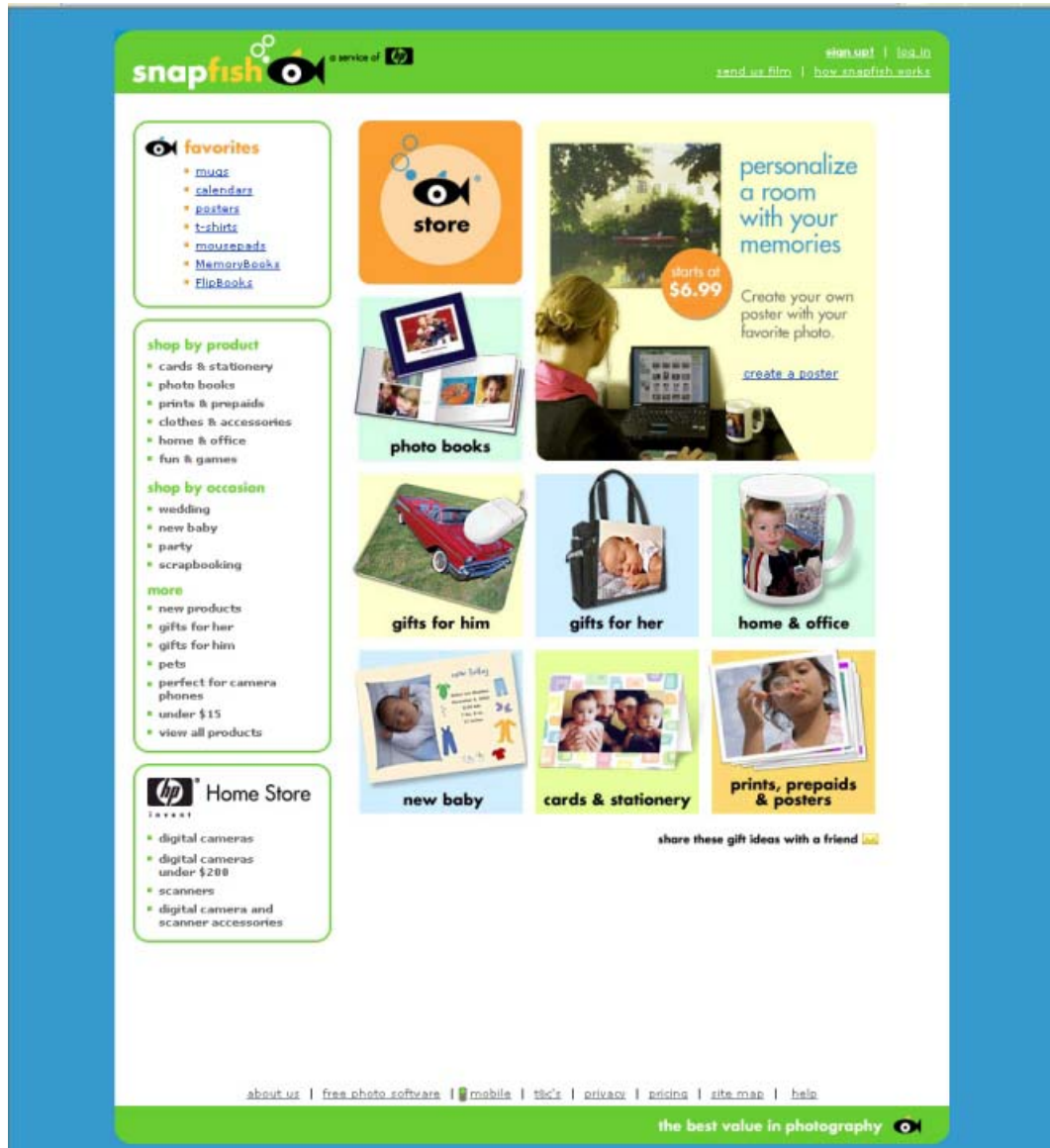
- **Creative Ideas.** Click this link to open the **HP Photosmart Premier Software Help Contents** page.



**Figure 2-35** HP Photosmart Premier Software Help Contents



- **Order Photo Gifts!** Click this link to go to the Snapfish.com Web site, a service of HP.



**Figure 2-36** Snapfish.com – HP Solution Center

## Software area



**Figure 2-37** Software area – HP Solution Center

Clicking the links in this area opens a new software program. The following options are available.

- HP Photosmart Premier
- HP Document Viewer

## Idea window



**Figure 2-38** Idea window – HP Solution Center

This area displays information about how to perform a task or where to get additional training. When an active Internet connection is available, this area is an active link to specific content on the HP Web site. When an active Internet connection is not available, static content is provided through the HP Solution Center software, HP Software Update downloads, or from HP devices connected to the computer.

# HP ToolboxFX

This section provides information about the following topics:

- [Overview of the HP ToolboxFX](#)
- [System requirements](#)
- [Key features](#)
- [The HP ToolboxFX folders](#)
- [Other screens](#)

## Overview of the HP ToolboxFX



**NOTE** The HP ToolboxFX is available for Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP, and Microsoft Windows XP x64 operating systems only.

The HP ToolboxFX is an application that allows end users to easily communicate and manage their HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. The HP ToolboxFX provides the following capabilities:

- Provides a view of the current status of the product
- Provides a view of the current status of the product consumables
- Provides Device Alert functionality, notifying the end user when particular events or conditions occur at the device.
- Provides access to troubleshooting information
- Provides access to some of the product settings, as an alternative to the product control panel

## Starting the HP ToolboxFX

Start the HP ToolboxFX by using any of the following methods.

- Double-click the **HP ToolboxFX** icon in the Windows system tray.
- Click **Start, Programs, HP, HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP**, and then click **HP ToolboxFX**.
- Click any of the following links in the HP Solution Center.
  - **Utilities**
  - **Printer Settings**
  - **Printer Toolbox**
  - **Network Settings**
  - **Status**
  - **Check ink/toner levels**

## Structure

The HP ToolboxFX consists of a single framework divided into several sections.

- **Heading banner.** Each page that is displayed in the HP ToolboxFX has a heading banner at the top that includes the HP logo.
- **Devices pane.** The Devices Pane is always visible on the left-hand side of the HP ToolboxFX window. The Devices pane displays the HP products that are available to the host computer system and folders for the types of information available about each product.
- **Main content area.** Clicking any of the devices or folders listed in the Devices pane causes information about that product to appear in the main content area of the HP ToolboxFX window.
- **Toolbar.** A Toolbar appears at the top of the Main content area. The toolbar contains controls for printing, refreshing the page, ordering supplies, and getting help.
- **Other Links pane.** The Other Links pane is always visible in the lower-left corner of the HP ToolboxFX window. The Other Links pane contains links to the HP Instant Support, Product Support, and Product Registration pages on the HP Web site.

## Opening screen

The opening screen that appears in the HP ToolboxFX section depends on the installed configuration of the HP ToolboxFX. If the HP ToolboxFX was installed for a single HP LaserJet product, the Device Status page for that HP LaserJet product appears when the program opens.

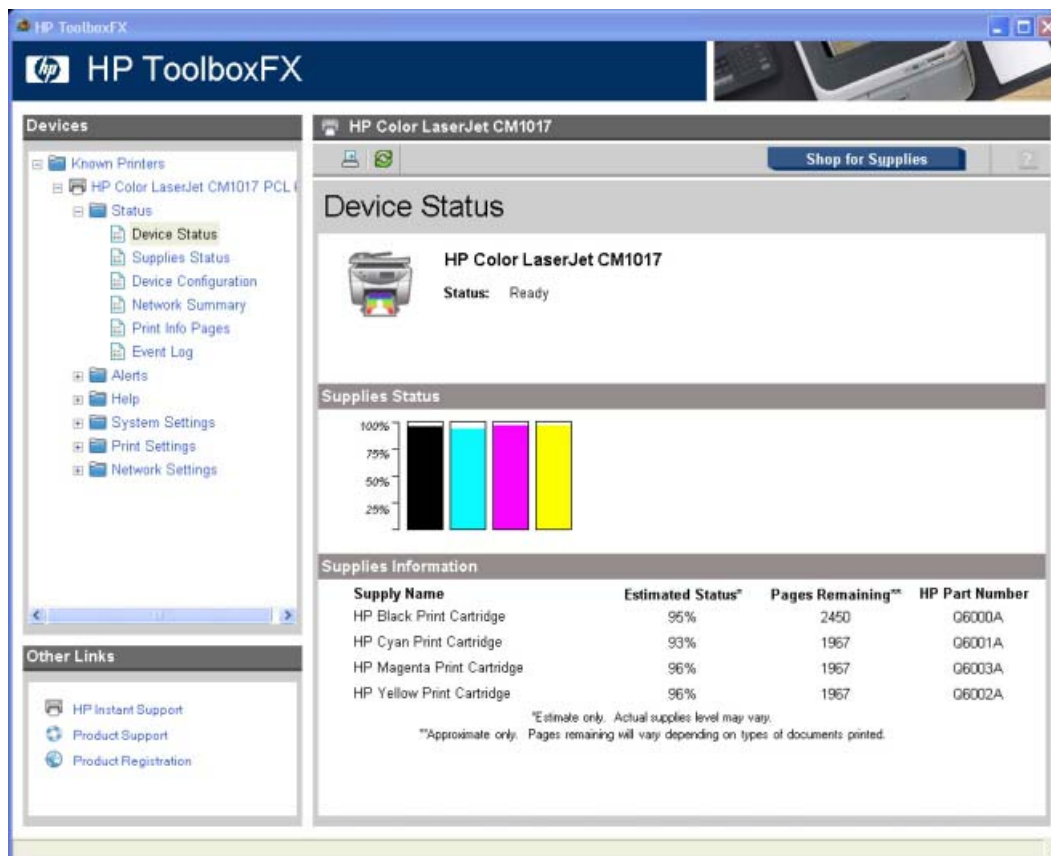
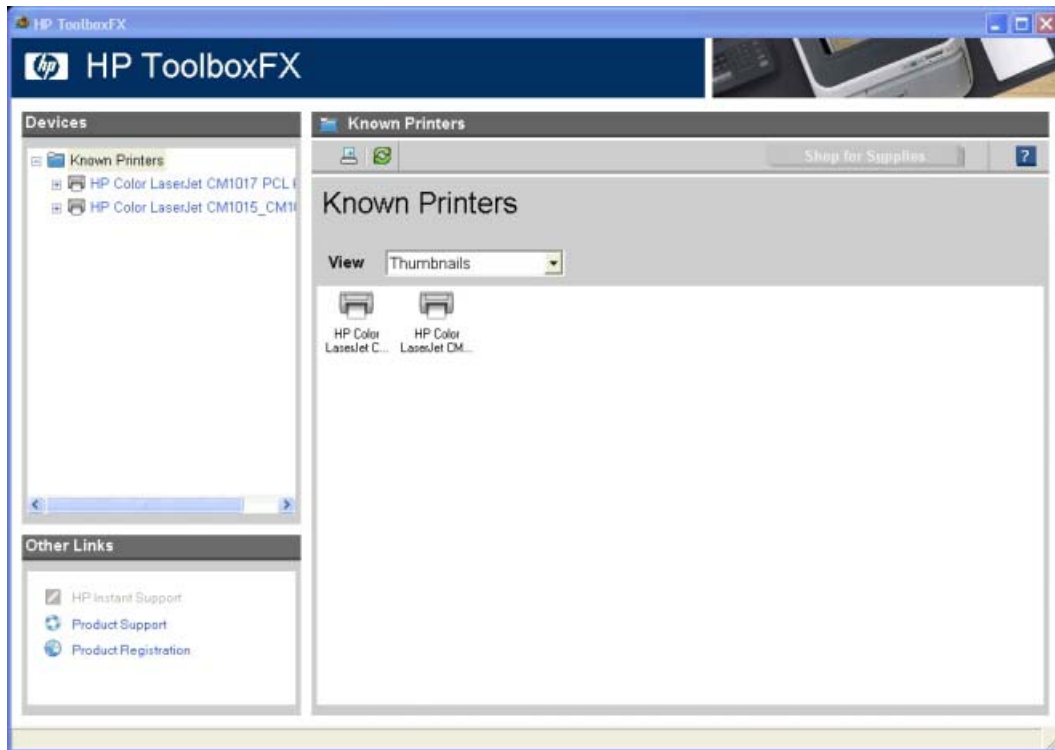


Figure 2-39 Known Printers – Single device – HP ToolboxFX

If the HP ToolboxFX was installed for multiple products, a product summary page appears when the program opens. The product summary page displays a brief summary of each product available to the HP ToolboxFX. Double-click any of the products listed to go to the Device Status page for that product.



**Figure 2-40 Known Printers** – Multiple devices – HP ToolboxFX

## System requirements

HP ToolboxFX is currently supported on the following operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows 2000
- Microsoft Windows XP Professional
- Microsoft Windows XP Home
- Microsoft Windows XP Media Center
- Microsoft Windows XP x64

HP ToolboxFX also requires the Microsoft .NET Framework 1.1 to be installed on the client machine, which happens automatically during installation of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software.

## Key features

This section provides information about the following topics:

- [Receive Alert messages for device events](#)

## Receive Alert messages for device events

Use HP ToolboxFX to be alerted when certain events occur at the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/ CM1017 MFP. Receive pop-up dialogs (Status Alerts) or automatically generated e-mail messages (E-mail Alerts) for certain events. Alerts can also appear as a taskbar icon or as a desktop message. To see a list of the events that generate alerts in HP ToolboxFX, see the [Set up Status Alerts](#) section.

For status alerts, a group of errors or a group of print-cartridge warnings can be selected, but not specific items within those groups. To configure alerts, use the **Set up Status Alerts** screen in the **Alerts** folder in the HP ToolboxFX.

The following alert messages are available:

- [HP Device pop-up alert messages](#)
- [System-tray icon alert](#)
- [Desktop alert](#)
- [E-mail alert](#)

### HP Device pop-up alert messages

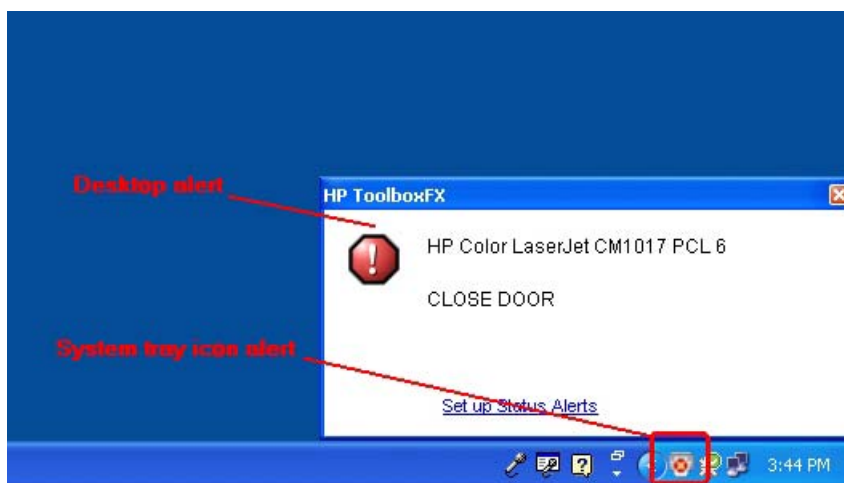
Pop-up alert messages appear when an error or print-cartridge warning occurs in the device. An error, such as a paper jam, halts device operation and requires correction before the device continues operation. The alert condition can be corrected at any time. Alerts are sent only to the specific computer that is used to print to the device. This feature is provided through HP ToolboxFX and is turned on by default.



**Figure 2-41** HP Device Alert – Load Tray 2 pop-up message

### System-tray icon alert

The system-tray icon feature shows information about all of the current alert conditions for the device. An **HP Device Alert** icon appears in the Windows system tray when an alert condition occurs. This feature is turned on by default.



**Figure 2-42** HP Device Alert – CLOSE DOOR System Tray and Desktop pop-up message

### Desktop alert

Desktop alert messages appear immediately when an error or print-cartridge warning occurs in the device. Desktop alerts only appear for a few seconds, and then automatically disappear. This feature is turned off by default.

### E-mail alert

E-mail alert messages notify up to two users when a specific alert condition occurs in the device. The alert condition can be a specific error alert or print-cartridge warning. This feature can be used to alert administrators or service providers that the device requires attention. For instance, when the toner low alert occurs, the person in charge of ordering print cartridges can be notified by e-mail.

This feature is turned off by default. To use this feature, set up the e-mail address, select the events for notification, configure the SMTP e-mail server, and enable the feature in HP ToolboxFX.

## The HP ToolboxFX folders

The HP ToolboxFX folders section describes the following folders:

- [Status folder](#)
- [Alerts folder](#)
- [Help folder](#)
- [System Settings folder](#)
- [Print Settings folder](#)
- [Network Settings folder](#)

### Status folder

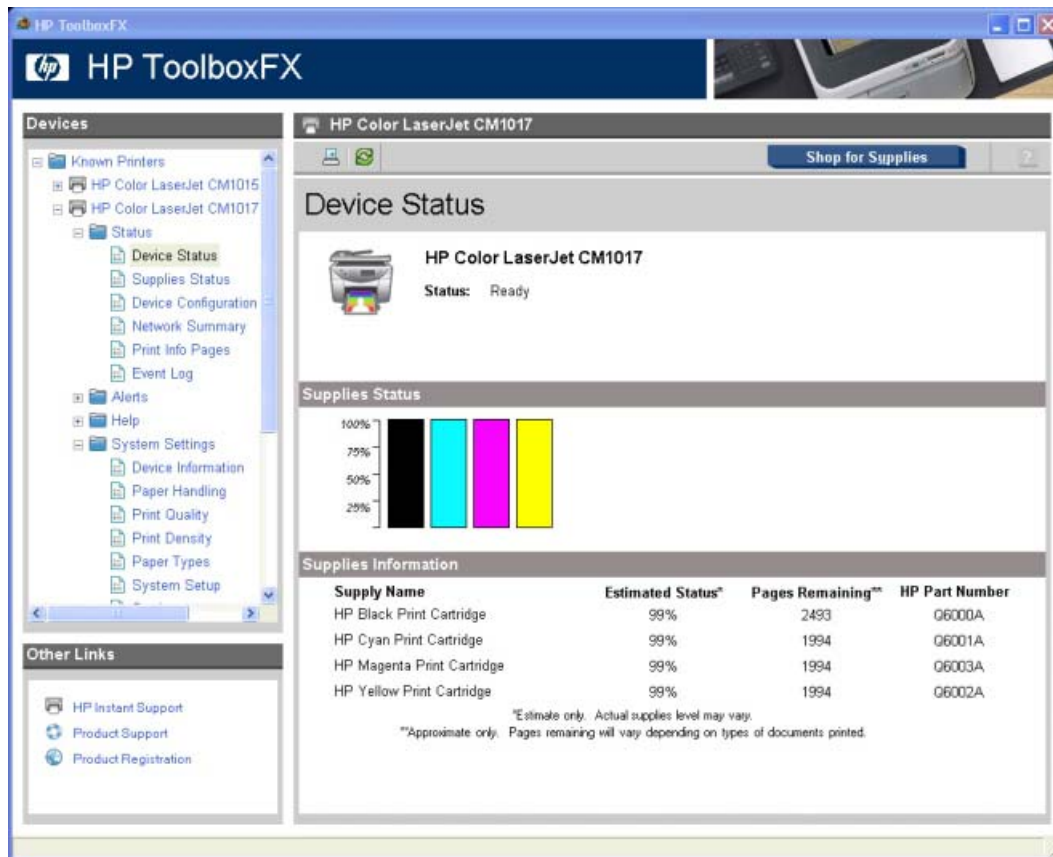
The **Status** folder contains the following sub-folders:

- [Device Status](#)
- [Supplies Status](#)

- [Device Configuration](#)
- [Network Configuration](#)
- [Print Info Pages](#)
- [Event Log](#)

## Device Status

The **Device Status** screen shows device status messages from the product.



**Figure 2-43** Device Status screen

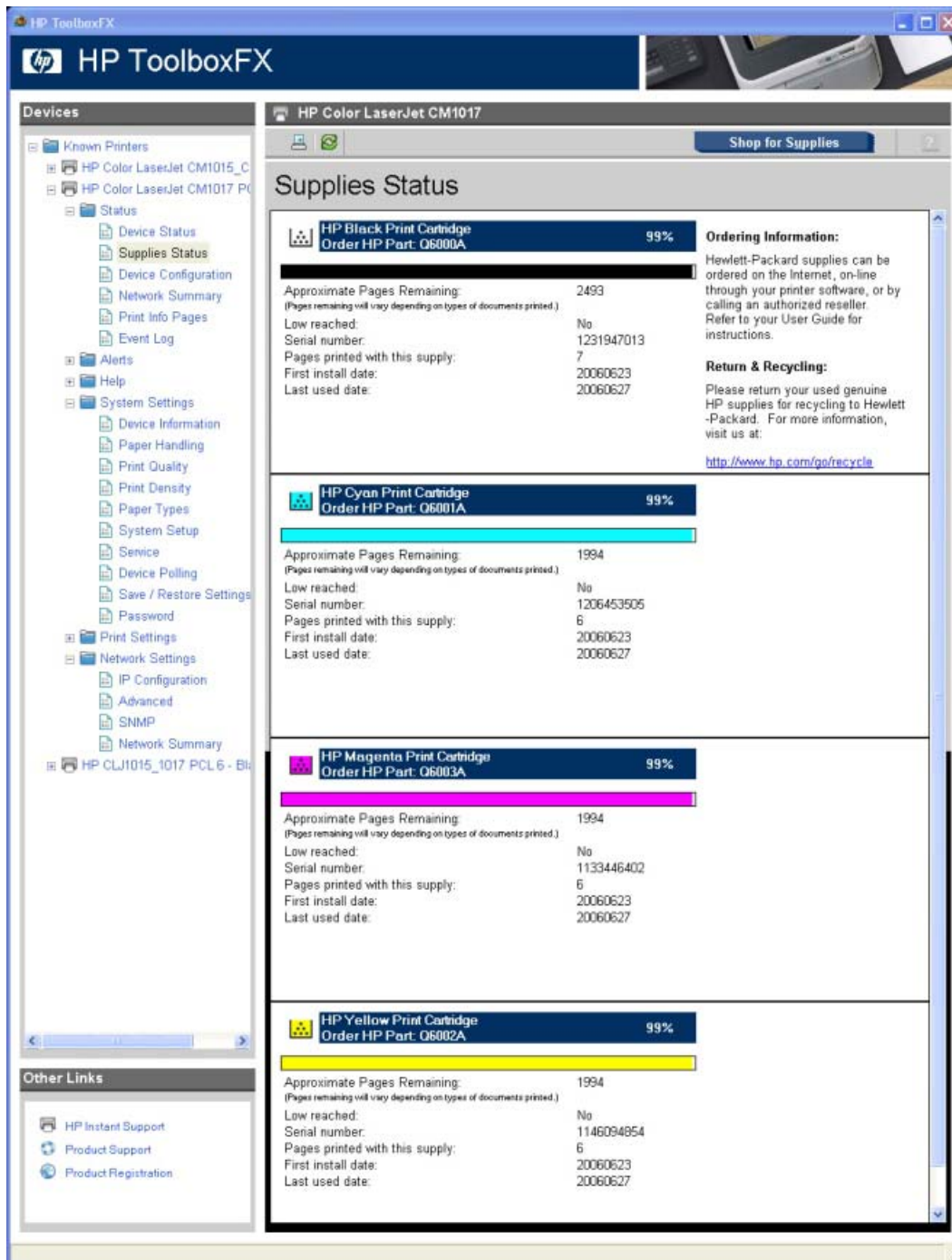


**NOTE** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP include a Supplies Status section and a Supplies Information section on the **Device Status** screen which provide information about the estimated toner level, the approximate pages remaining based on the estimated toner level, and the HP part number for easy reference when ordering new consumables..

## Supplies Status

The **Supplies Status** screen provides detailed information about the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black print cartridges. This information is not available if a non-HP cartridge is installed in the product.

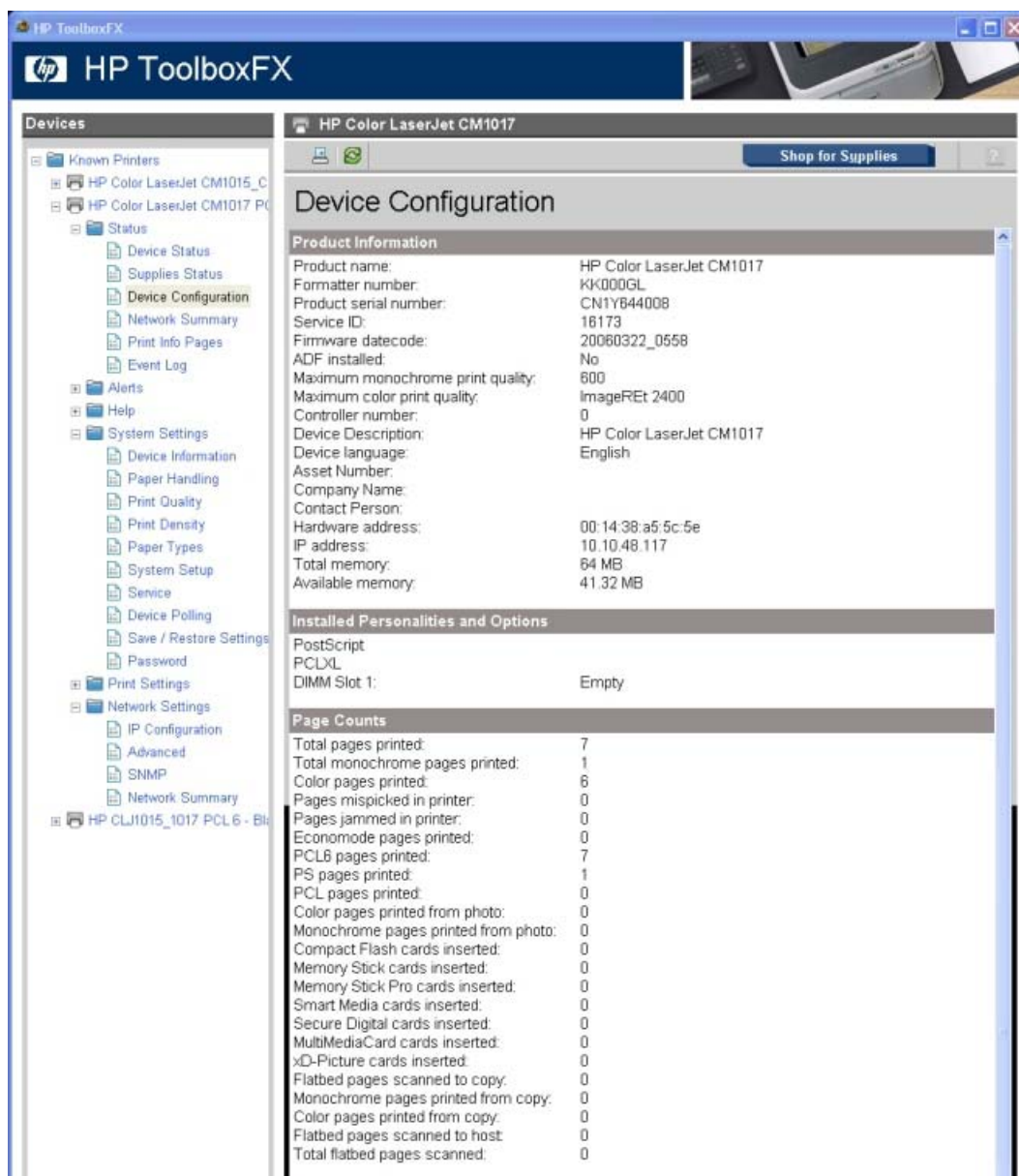




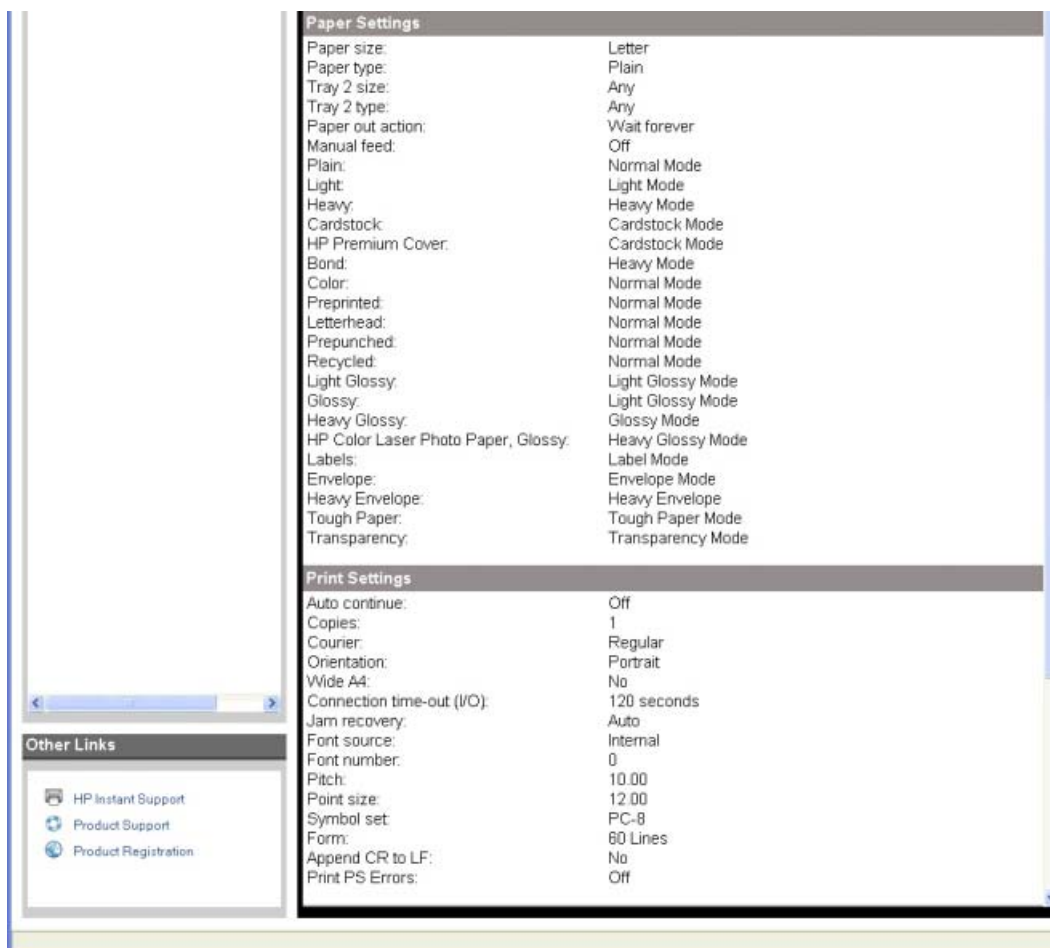
**Figure 2-44** Supplies Status screen

## Device Configuration

The **Device Configuration** screen shows the values for all of the settings available for the product and other configuration items, such as installed DIMMs, personalities, and page counts. The contents of this screen should be consistent with the configuration page that the product generates.



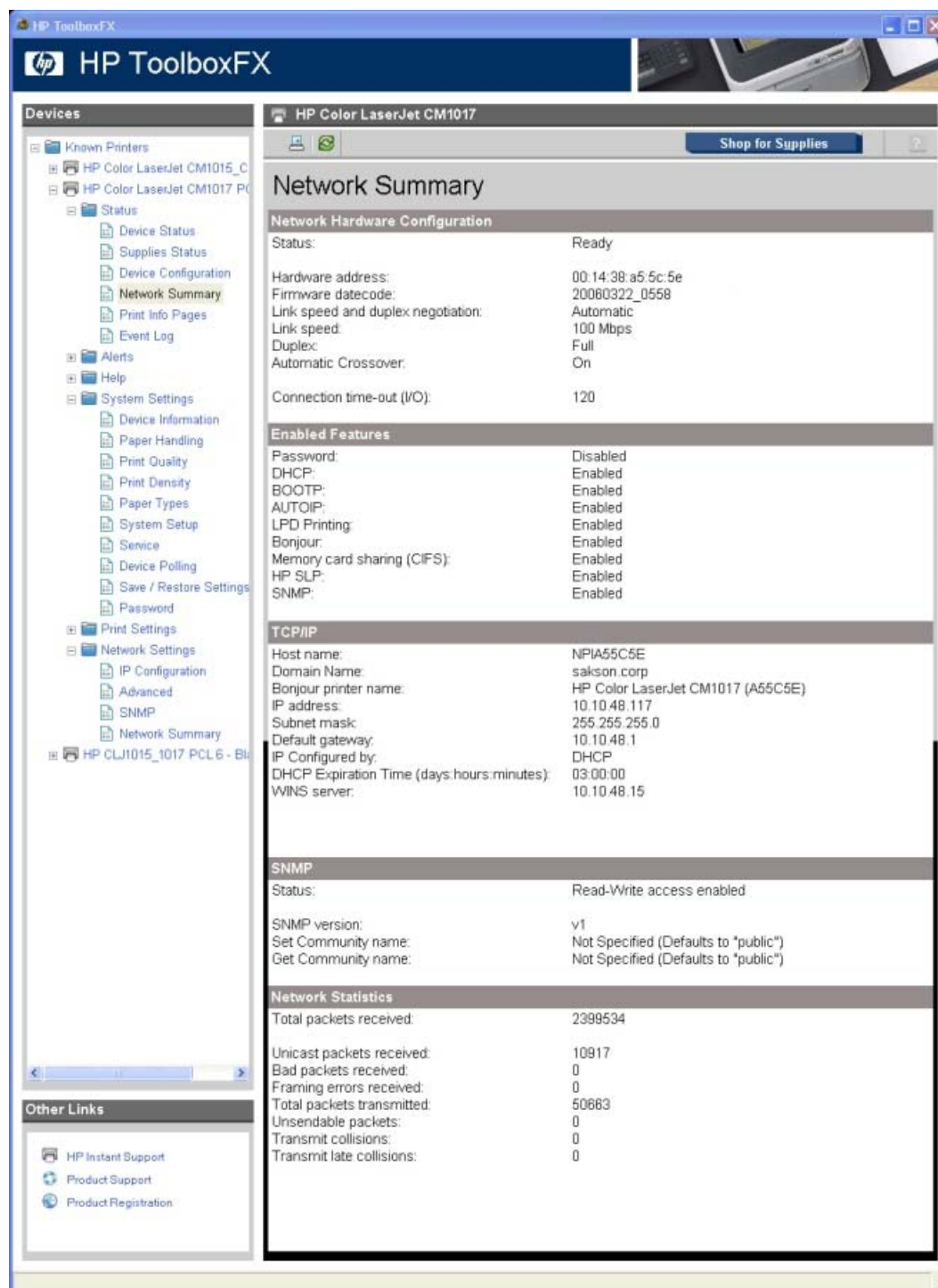
**Figure 2-45** Device Configuration screen – 1 of 2



**Figure 2-46** Device Configuration screen – 2 of 2

### Network Configuration

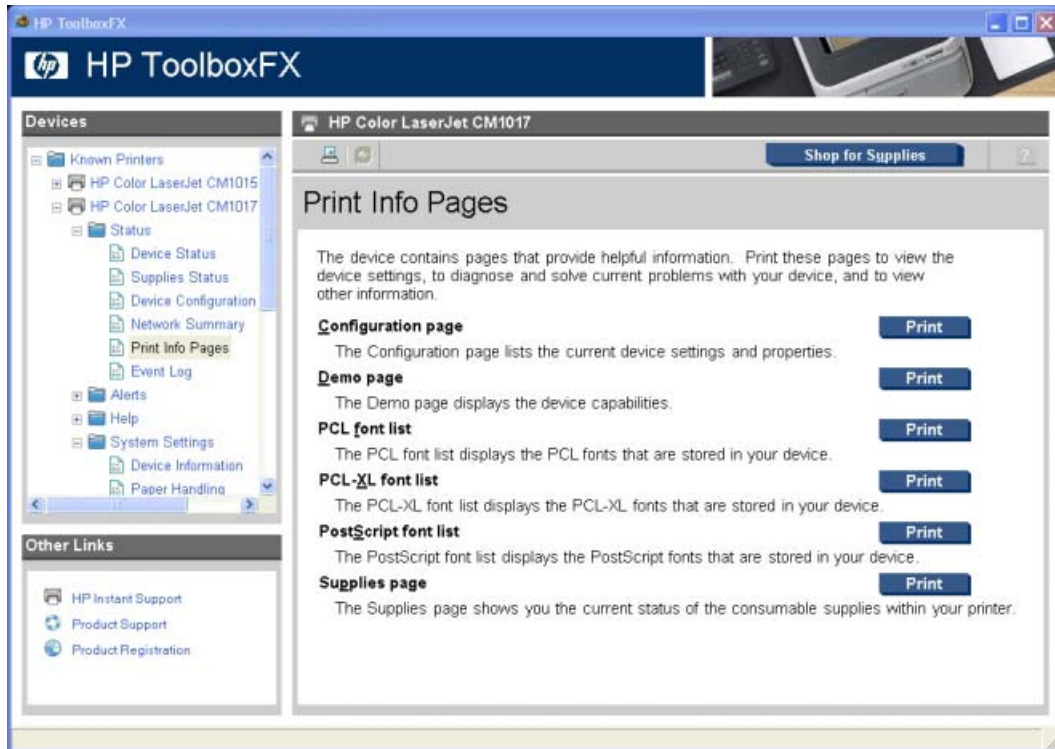
The **Network Configuration** screen shows the values for all of the network settings that are available for the product. The contents of this screen should be consistent with the configuration page that the product generates.



**Figure 2-47 Network Configuration screen**

### Print Info Pages

Use the **Print Info Pages** screen to print out the internal special pages that the product generates. Click **Print** next to the name of the page to print.

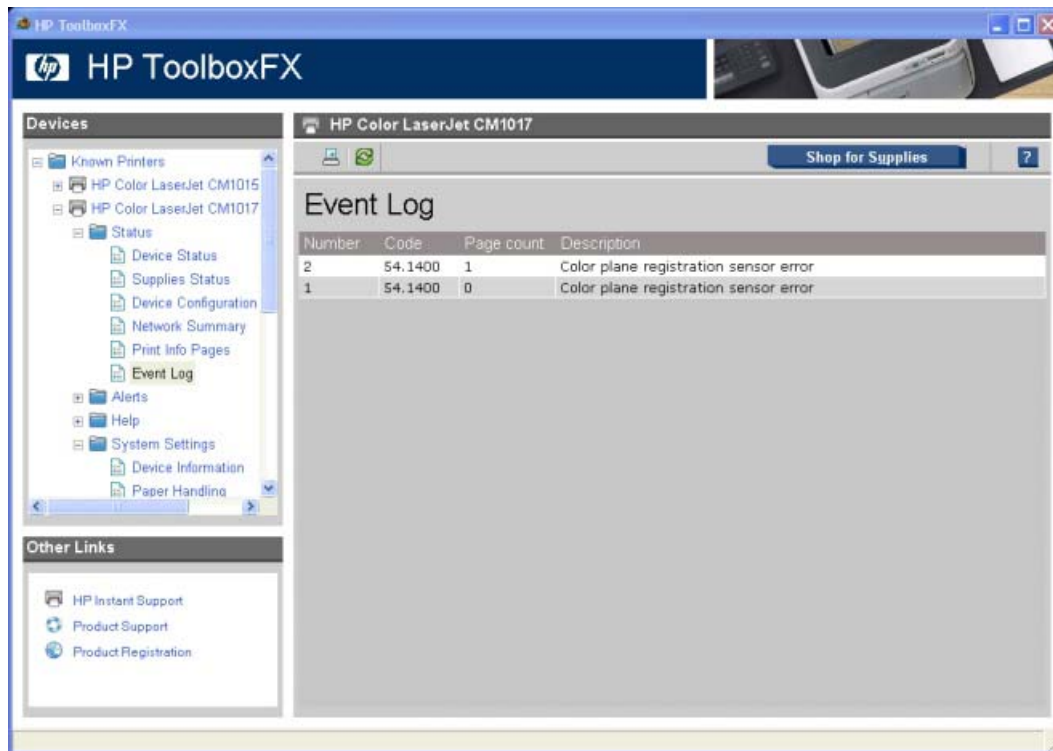


**Figure 2-48** Print Information Pages screen

The contents of these reports are generated by the product firmware, and *not* by the HP ToolboxFX.

### Event Log

Use the **Event Log** screen to monitor events for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. Up to ten events can appear on this screen. If this screen is empty, no events have occurred on the MFP.



**Figure 2-49** Event Log screen

## Alerts folder

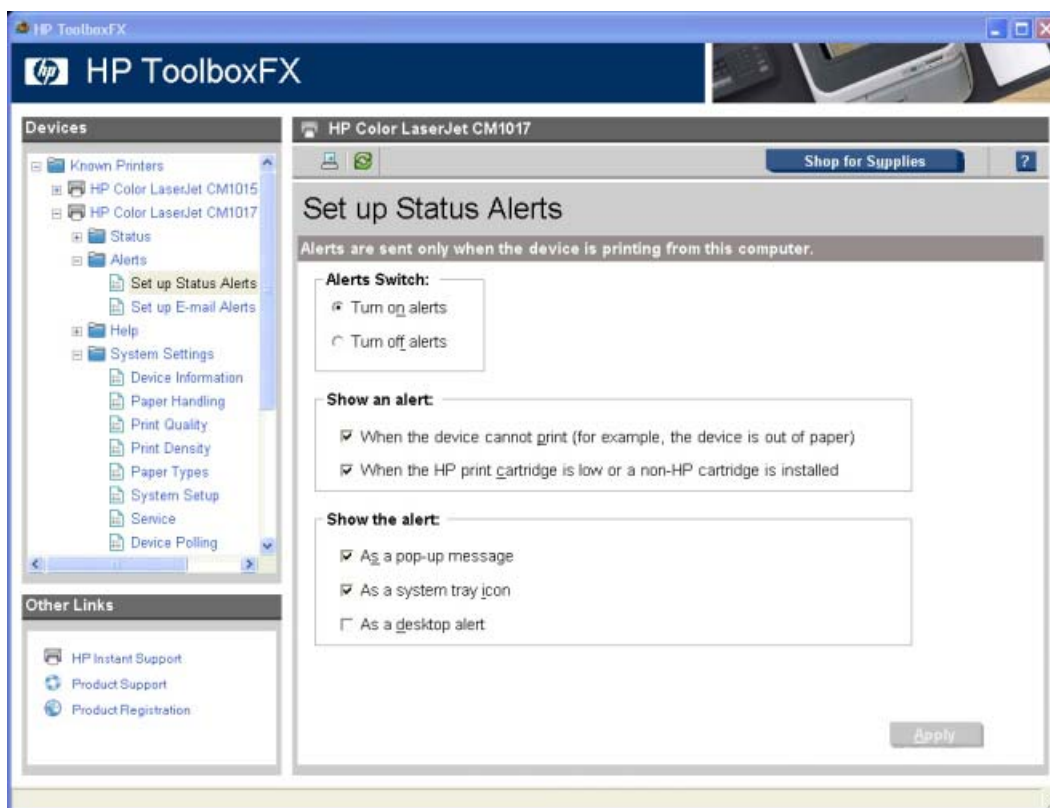
The **Alerts** folder contains the following sub-folders:

- [Set up Status Alerts](#)
- [Set up E-mail Alerts](#)

### Set up Status Alerts

Use the **Set up Status Alerts** screen to set up status alerts on the for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. Select the **Turn on alerts** option and then click **Apply** to turn on alerts.





**Figure 2-50** Set up Status Alerts screen

Select from the options under **Show an alert** to receive the alerts like those listed in the following table.

**Table 2-1** Event alerts for HP ToolboxFX

Pop-up alerts, system-tray icon alerts, Event and desktop alerts	
Supplies warnings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Order Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black Cartridge</li> <li>Order Imaging Drum</li> <li>Order Supplies</li> </ul>
Supplies errors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black Incorrect</li> <li>Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black Missing</li> <li>Drum Missing</li> <li>Supplies Missing</li> <li>Non-HP Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black Cartridge</li> <li>Non-HP Image Drum</li> <li>Unauthorized Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black Cartridge</li> <li>Replace Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black</li> <li>Replace Imaging Drum</li> <li>Replace Supplies</li> </ul>

**Table 2-1** Event alerts for HP ToolboxFX (continued)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace Supply Printing in Mono</li> <li>• Replace Supplies Printing in Mono</li> <li>• Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black E-label Error</li> <li>• Imaging Drum E-label Error</li> <li>• Unauthorized Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black Cartridge</li> <li>• Unauthorized Imaging Drum</li> <li>• Replace Cyan, Magenta, or Yellow Printing In Mono</li> </ul>	
Printer alerts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Load Paper [TYPE] [SIZE]</li> <li>• Tray 1 Paper Out</li> <li>• Tray 2 Paper Out</li> <li>• Tray 3 Paper Out</li> <li>• Insufficient Memory</li> <li>• Door Cover Open</li> <li>• Close Cover</li> <li>• Manual Feed</li> <li>• Tray 1 Jam</li> <li>• Tray 2 Jam</li> <li>• Tray 3 Jam</li> <li>• Jam In Print Paper Path</li> <li>• Jam In Cartridge Area</li> <li>• Jam In Output Bin</li> <li>• Jam Under Drum Or In Rear Door</li> <li>• Printer Mispick</li> <li>• Invalid Driver</li> <li>• Fuser Error</li> <li>• Low Fuser Error</li> <li>• Slow Fuser Error</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High Fuser Error</li> <li>• Fuser Driver Error</li> <li>• Beam Error</li> <li>• Reinstall Fuser</li> <li>• Scanner Error</li> <li>• Fan Error</li> <li>• Page Punt</li> <li>• Engine Comm Error</li> <li>• Tray 1 Unexpected Size [SIZE]</li> <li>• Tray 2 Unexpected Size [SIZE]</li> <li>• Tray 3 Unexpected Size [SIZE]</li> <li>• Misprint</li> <li>• Top Detect Error</li> <li>• Top Sensor Error</li> <li>• Carousel Rotation Error</li> <li>• DC Controller Error</li> <li>• 59.A0 Error</li> <li>• 59.C0 Error</li> <li>• T2 Clutch Error</li> <li>• 59.4 Error</li> </ul>
Scan notifications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scan To Not Setup</li> <li>• Start Scan</li> <li>• ADF Loaded</li> </ul>	
<b>E-mail alerts</b>	<b>Event</b>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cartridge Low</li> <li>• Replace Cartridge</li> <li>• Close doors/covers</li> </ul>	



**Table 2-1** Event alerts for HP ToolboxFX (continued)

- Insufficient memory
- Manual feed
- Non-HP print cartridge installed
- Unauthorized supply installed
- Paper out
- Printer mispick
- Remove paper jam
- Unexpected paper size

Select from the options under **Show the alert** to receive the alerts in one or all of three forms:

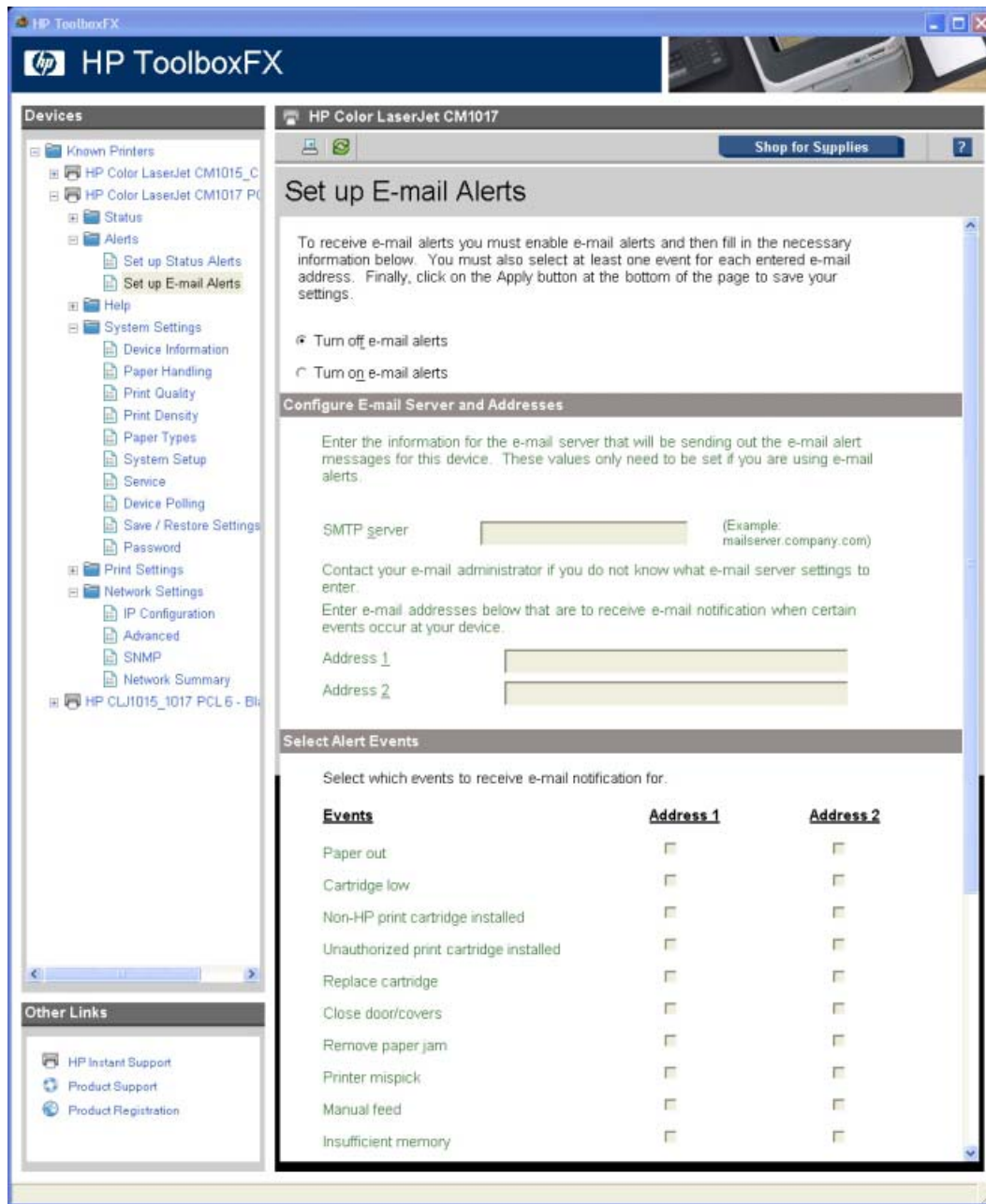
- As a pop-up message
- As a system tray icon
- As a desktop alert



**NOTE** Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

### Set up E-mail Alerts

Use the **Set up E-mail Alerts** screen to set up e-mail alerts for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/ CM1017 MFP.



**Figure 2-51 Set up E-mail Alerts screen**

E-mail messages can be sent when certain events occur at the product. Select the specific events for notification.

To use this feature, use a valid e-mail address, select the events for notification, configure the SMTP e-mail server that will be used to send the e-mail message, and then click **Apply** to save the settings.

Up to two e-mail addresses can be configured to receive separate e-mail messages for separate events.

To ensure that the proper e-mail addresses have been used and that the SNMP server information is valid, click the **Test E-mail Settings** button.



**NOTE** Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

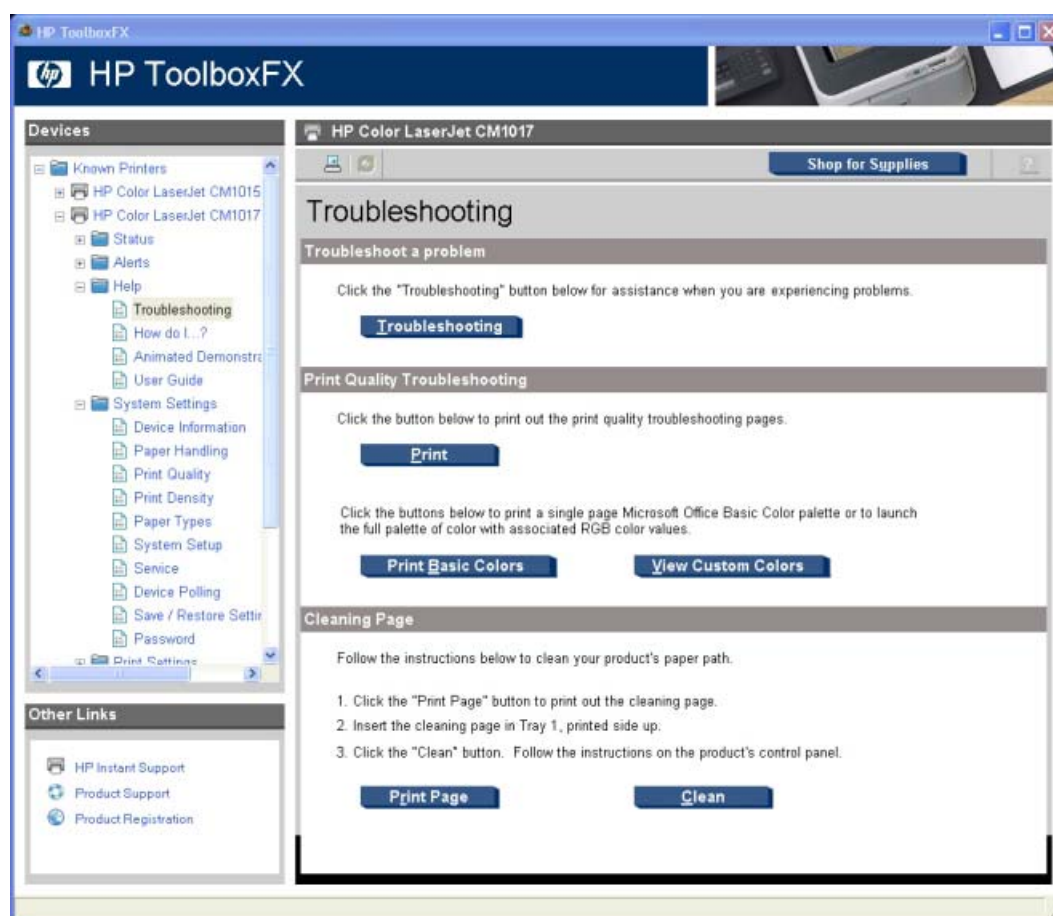
## Help folder

The **Help** folder contains the following sub-folders:

- [Troubleshooting](#)
- [How do I...?](#)
- [Animated Demonstrations](#)
- [User Guide](#)

All of the content in the **Help** folder is static HTML content, except for the animated demonstrations. This content contains hyperlinks, and **Next** and **Previous** buttons, which allows users to navigate through the various sections of the Help content.

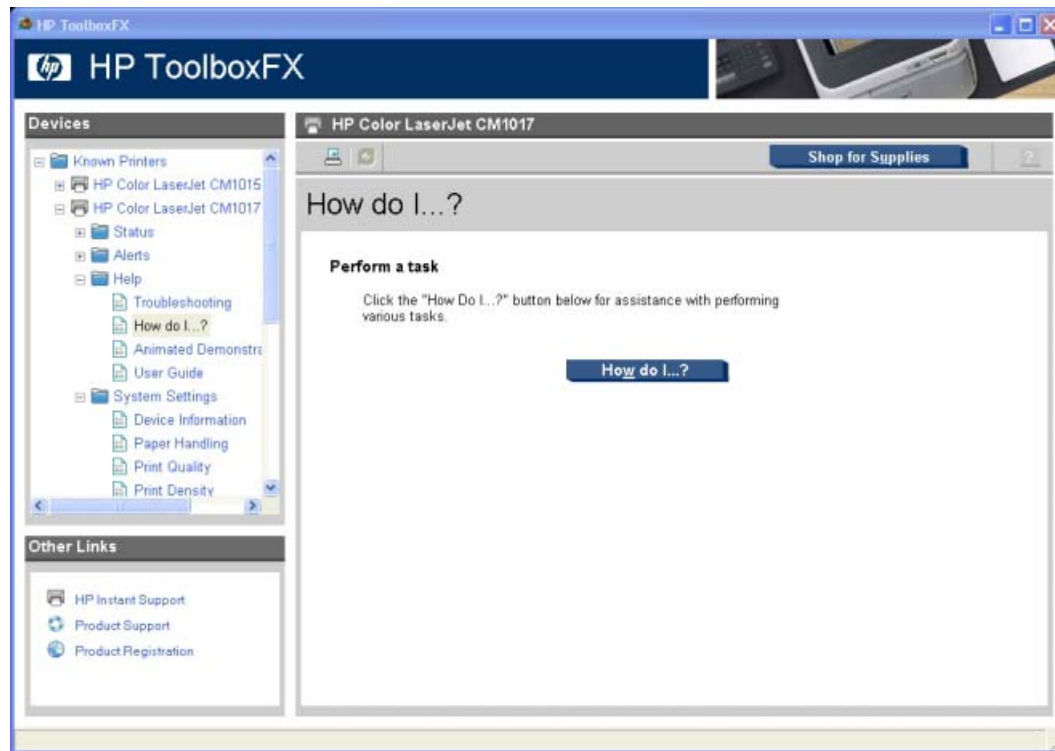
## Troubleshooting



**Figure 2-52** Troubleshooting sub-folder

Click **Troubleshooting** on the Troubleshooting screen to access the Troubleshooting chapter of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide.

## How do I...?



**Figure 2-53** How do I...? sub-folder

Click **How do I... ?** on the How do I... ? screen to access the How do I... ? chapter of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide.

Each of the How do I...? screens (Print, Network, Add Memory, and Other), contains set of links. Each link corresponds to a particular task. Click these links to open a new window that provides content about the given task.

## Animated Demonstrations

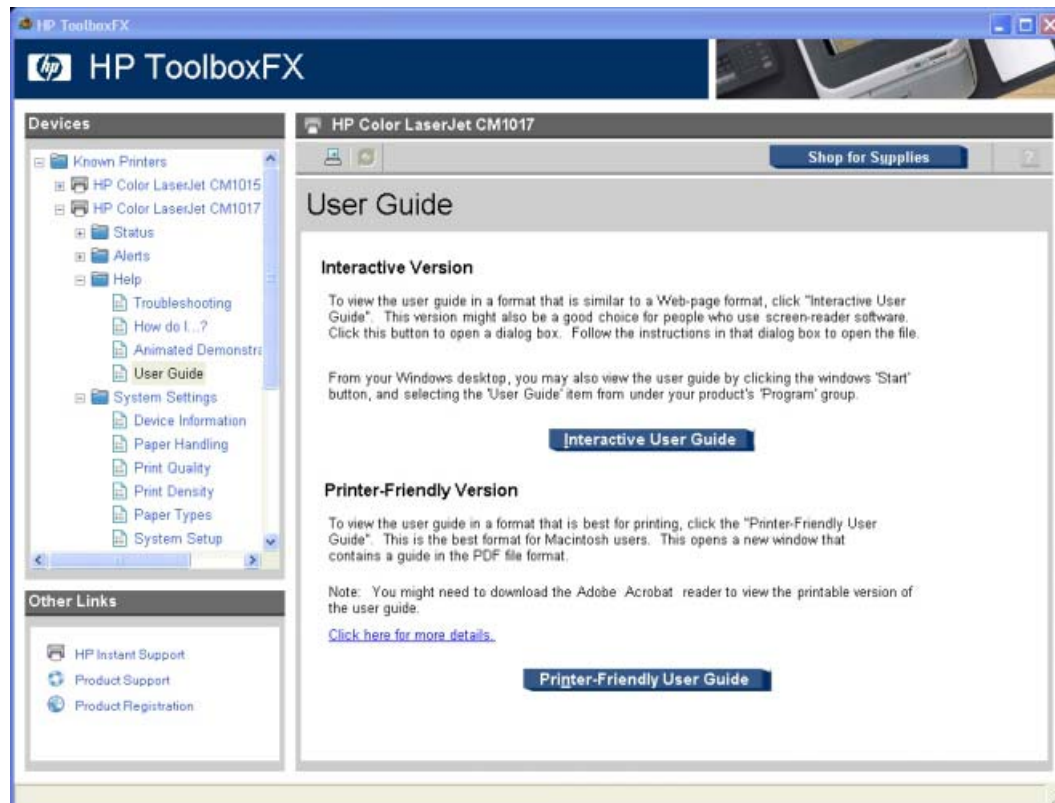


**Figure 2-54** Animated Demonstrations screen

Click the links on the **Animated Demonstrations** screen to view animated demonstrations about the following topics.

- Paper jam removal
- Replace a print cartridge
- Manual duplex printing (printing on both sides of the paper)

## User Guide



**Figure 2-55** HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide

Use the **User Guide** screen to access the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide.

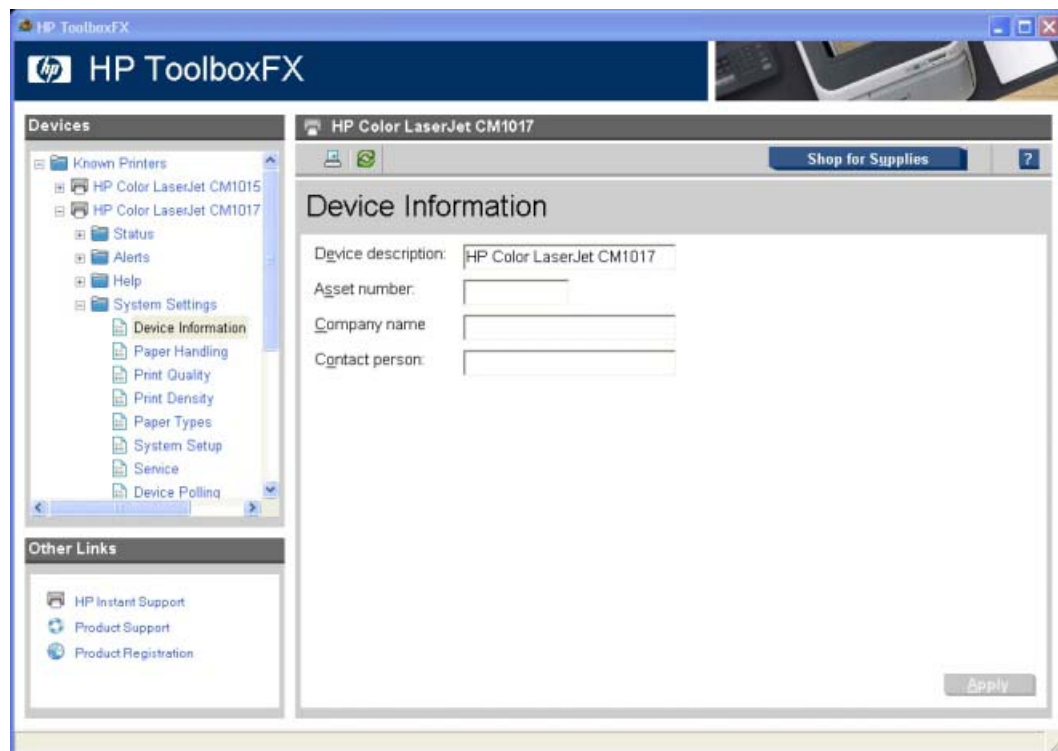
## System Settings folder

The **System Settings** folder contains the following sub-folders:

- [Device Information](#)
- [Paper Handling](#)
- [Print Quality](#)
- [Print Density](#)
- [Paper Types](#)
- [System Setup](#)
- [Service](#)
- [Device Polling](#)
- [Save/Restore Settings](#)
- [Password](#)

## Device Information

Use the **Device Information** screen to add or change information about the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.



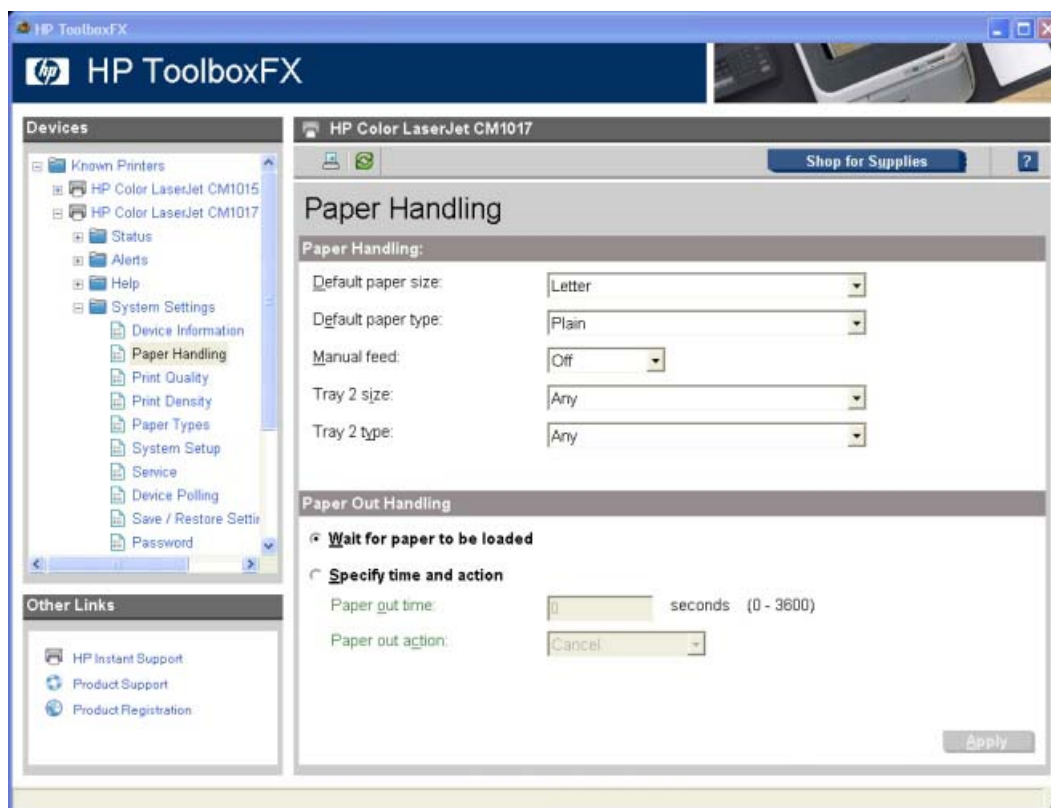
**Figure 2-56** Device Information screen



**NOTE** Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

## Paper Handling

Use the **Paper Handling** screen to change the paper-handling defaults for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

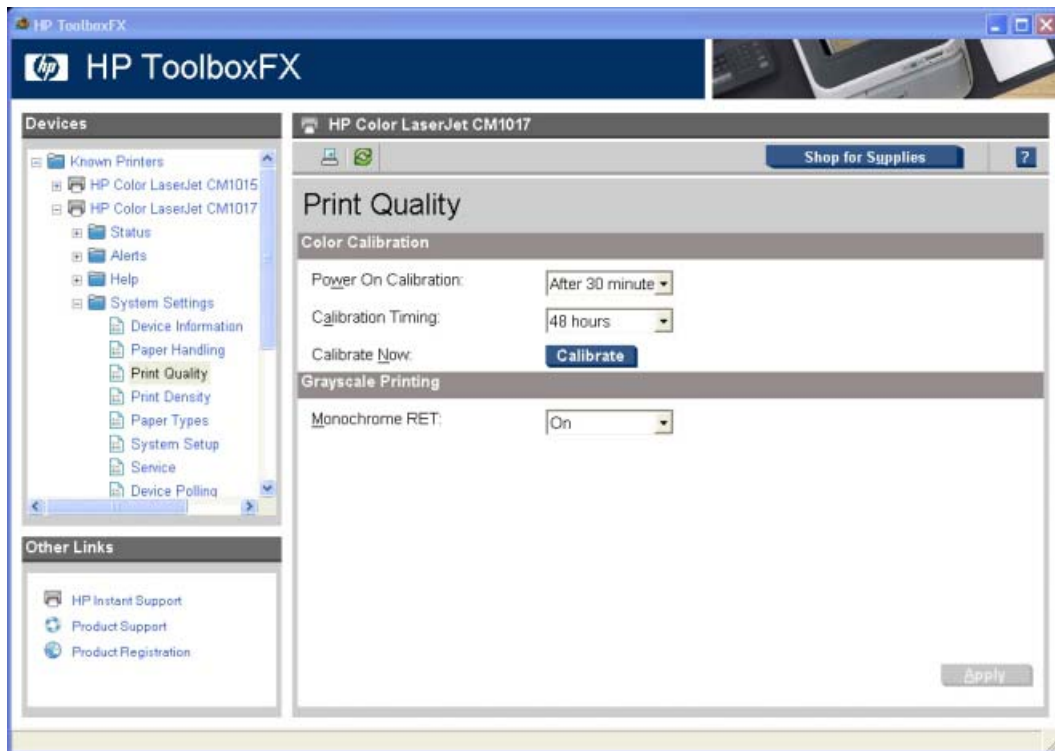


**Figure 2-57** Paper Handling screen

### Print Quality

Use the **Print Quality** screen to change the print-quality defaults for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

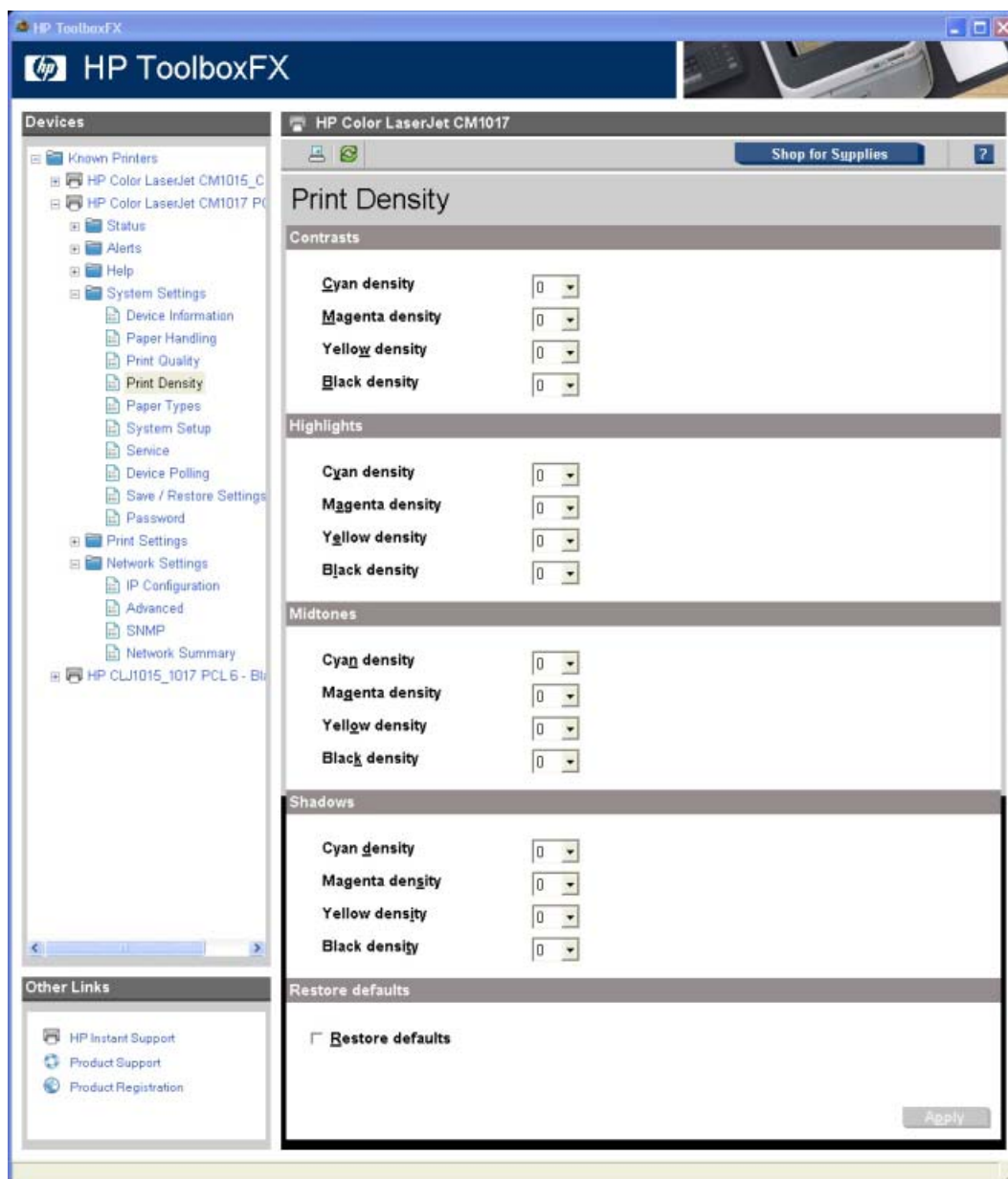




**Figure 2-58** Print Quality screen

### Print Density

Use the settings on the **Print Density** page to adjust the amount toner the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP uses for images, pages, and documents.



**Figure 2-59** Print Density page

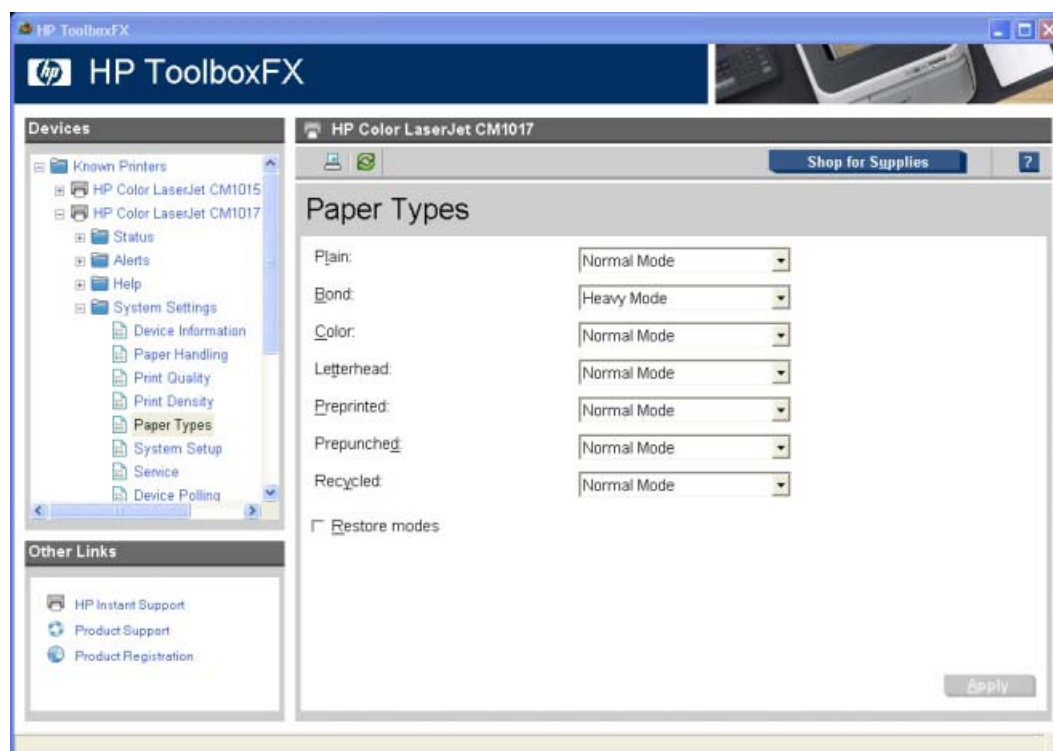
The **Print Density** page contains the following settings:

- Contrasts.** Contrast is the density difference between light (highlight) and dark (shadow) colors. To increase the difference between light and dark colors (equivalent to a negative highlight adjustment and a positive shadow adjustment), use a positive contrast setting. To decrease the difference between light and dark colors (equivalent to a positive highlight adjustment and a negative shadow adjustment), use a negative contrast setting.
- Highlights.** Highlight colors are colors near white. To make highlight colors darker, use a positive highlight setting, and to make highlight colors lighter use a negative highlight setting. This adjustment does not affect midtone or shadow colors.

- **Midtones.** Midtone colors are about halfway between white and solid density. To make midtone colors darker, use a positive midtone setting, and to make midtone colors lighter use a negative highlight setting. This adjustment does not affect highlight or shadow colors.
- **Shadows.** Shadow colors are colors near solid density. To make shadow colors darker, use a positive shadow setting, and to make shadow colors lighter use a negative shadow setting. This adjustment does not affect highlight or midtone colors.

## Paper Types

Use the **Paper Types** screen to configure the standard print modes that correspond to the various paper types.



**Figure 2-60** Paper Types screen

A print mode is a special setting that controls the print speed and the fuser temperature of the MFP. The product speed and fuser temperature are adjusted to match the print mode that selected, which can result in better print quality when printing on certain media types.



**NOTE** Not all of the paper types listed in the driver can be adjusted from the **Paper Types** screen.

The following table shows the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP supports and the default fuser mode for each type.

**Table 2-2** Standard print modes

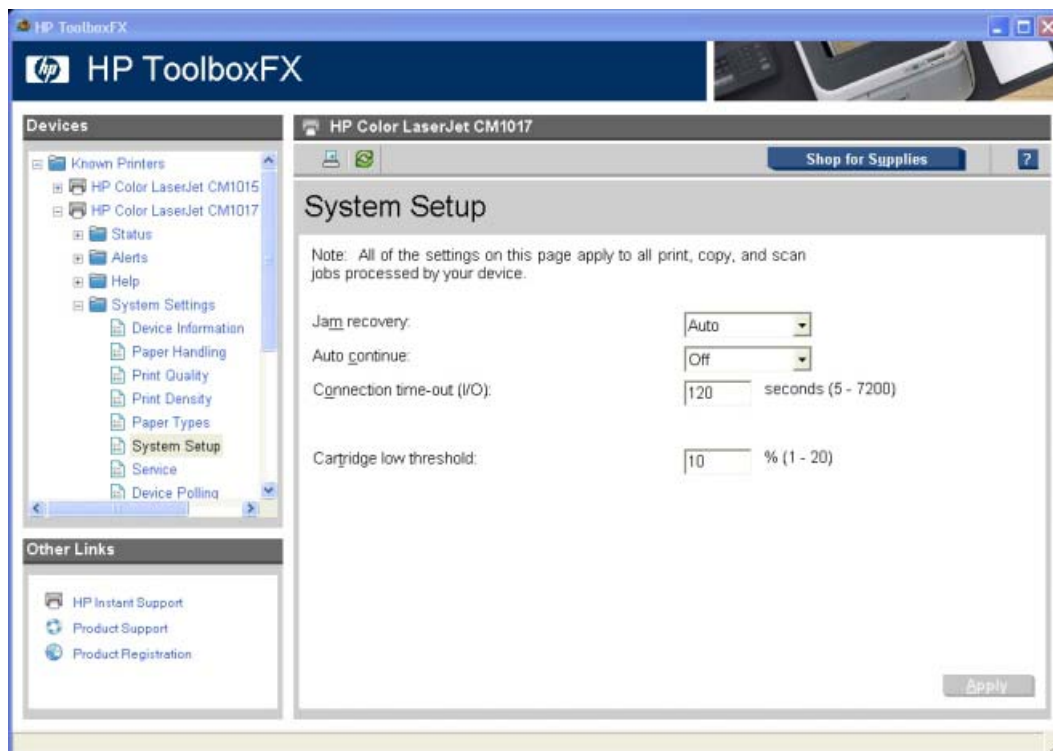
Standard print modes	Extended print modes	Color tables	Sensor correlation prefix	Default paper types
Normal Mode	None	Plain	PlainFull	Plain, Color, Preprinted,

**Table 2-2** Standard print modes (continued)

Standard print modes	Extended print modes	Color tables	Sensor correlation prefix	Default paper types
				Prepunched, Recycled, Letterhead
Heavy Mode	None	Plain	PlainHalf	Heavy, Bond
Cardstock Mode	None	Plain	PlainHalf	Cardstock
Light Mode	None	Plain	PlainFull	Light
Light Glossy Mode	None	Glossy	Glossy	Glossy
Glossy Mode	None	Glossy	Glossy	Heavy Glossy
Heavy Glossy Mode	None	Glossy	Glossy	HP Premium Plus Photo
Tough Paper Mode	None	Glossy	Glossy	Tough Paper
Transparency Mode	None	OHT	Glossy	Transparency
Label Mode	None	Plain	PlainHalf	Labels

## System Setup

Use the **System Setup** screen to change the system defaults for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/ CM1017 MFP.

**Figure 2-61** System Setup screen

The following **Jam recovery** settings are available:

- Auto (default)
- On
- Off

The following **Auto continue** settings are available:

- On
- Off (default)

Set the **Connection time-out (I/O)** setting to any value from 5 to 7200 seconds.

The following **Fast first page out** settings are available:

- On (default)
- Off

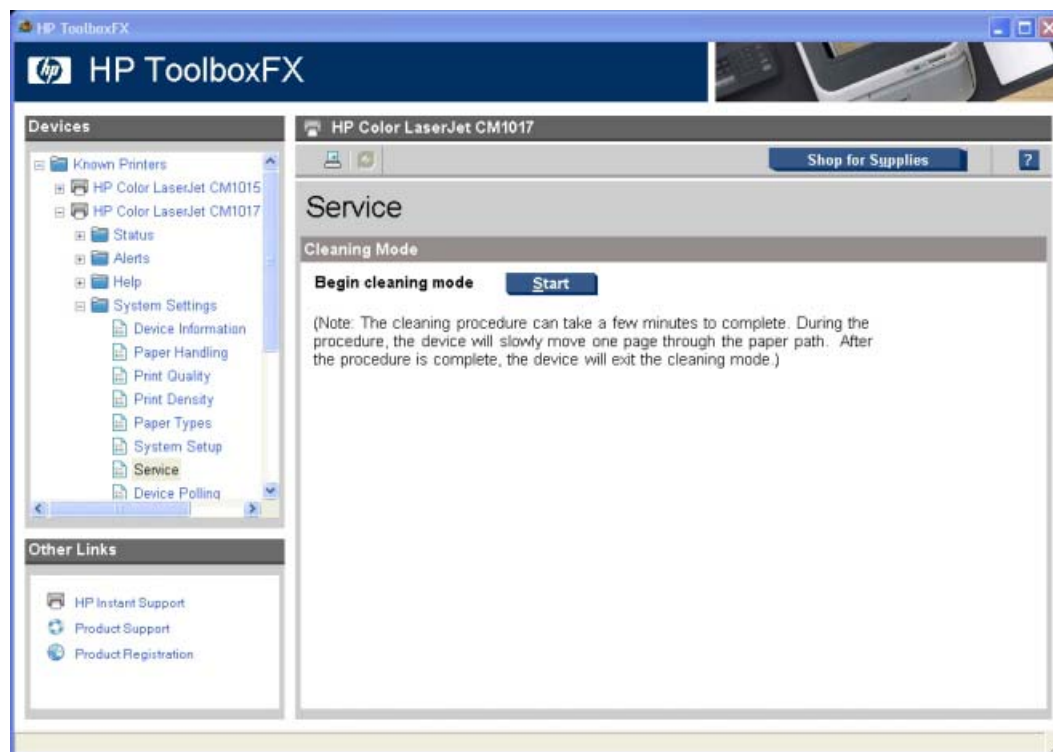
Set the **Cartridge low threshold** setting to any value from 1 to 20%. The **Cartridge low threshold** option sets the percentage threshold that triggers a toner low alert in the HP ToolboxFX.



**NOTE** Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

## Service

Use the **Service** screen to start the cleaning mode procedure on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/ CM1017 MFP.

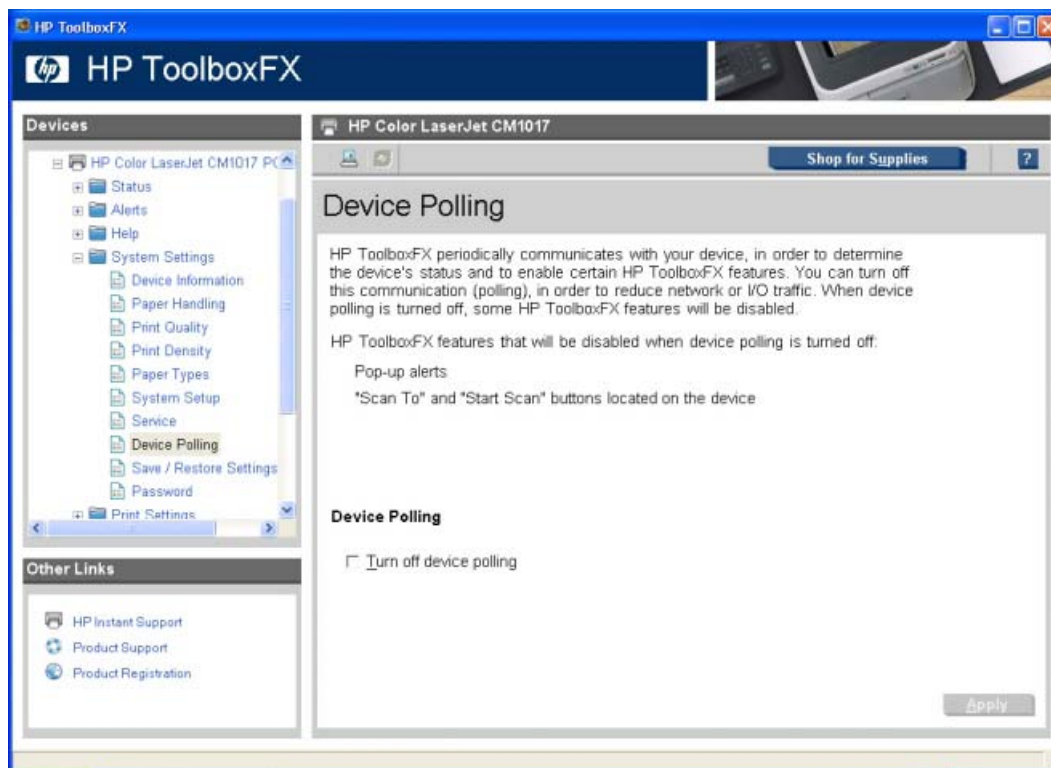


**Figure 2-62** Service screen

During the printing process, paper, toner, and dust particles accumulate inside the MFP. Over time, this buildup can cause print-quality problems such as toner specks or smearing. Click **Start** to run the cleaning mode procedure on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

### Device Polling

The HP ToolboxFX periodically communicates with the MFP to determine device status and enabled features. Use the **Device Polling** screen to turn off pop-up alerts and the Scan To and Start Scan buttons on the MFP control panel.



**Figure 2-63** Device Polling screen

### Save/Restore Settings

Use the **Save/Restore Settings** screen to save all of the device settings to a file on the computer. Or load the settings that have been saved into the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP from this screen.



**Figure 2-64** Save / Restore Settings screen

Click **Save**, the **Save as** dialog box might be hidden. Look behind the browser window or on the task bar.

Settings that were saved from a previous HP product cannot be restored. Only settings that were saved from an HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP can be restored.

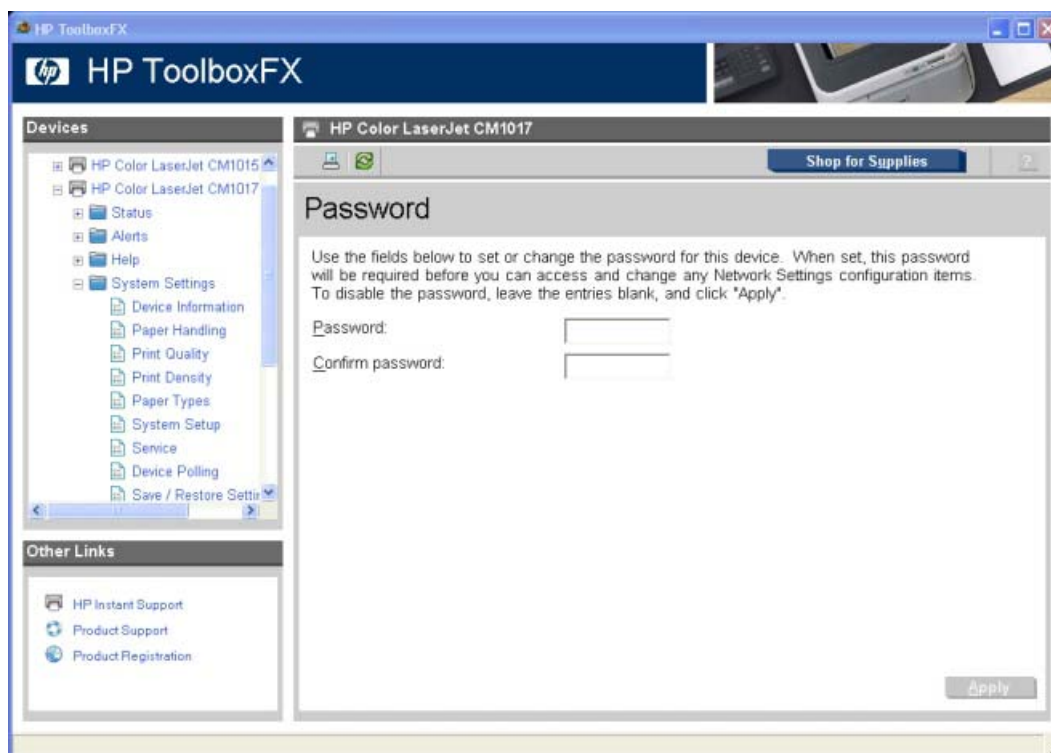


**NOTE** The HP ToolboxFX will not function until settings have been fully loaded and the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP control panel returns to the **Ready** state.

## Password

Use the **Password** screen to set a password for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.





**Figure 2-65 Password screen**

Network administrators can set user passwords to protect network settings. Once a password is set, only users who know the password have access to the **Network Settings** folder. If a password has been set, users are prompted to type the password. If the typed-in password matches the password stored in the MFP, users can navigate through the **Network Settings** screens and make changes to the settings. Users who do not type the correct password within three attempts are not allowed access to the **Network Settings** screens.

If the password is lost or forgotten, the factory settings for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP must be restored and a new password must be assigned.

Follow these steps to restore the factory settings for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

1. Turn off the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.
2. Lightly press the right arrow key and the cancel button simultaneously.
3. Holding these two buttons down, turn on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.



**NOTE** Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

The following HP ToolboxFX features become locked when a password is set.

- **Shop for Supplies** button
- **Support** button
- **System Settings** pages
- **Print Settings** pages



- **Network Settings** pages
- **Event Log** page

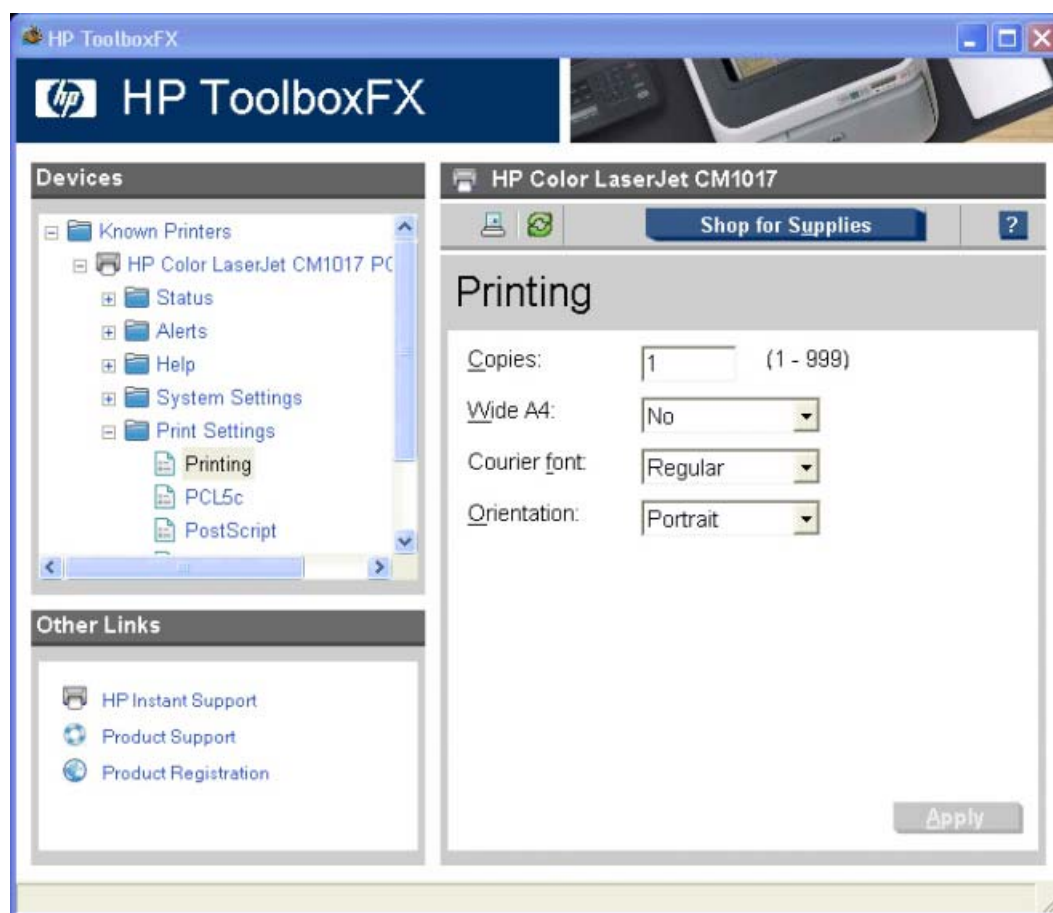
## Print Settings folder

The **Print Settings** folder contains the following screens.

- [Printing](#)
- [PCL5c](#)
- [PostScript](#)
- [Memory Card](#)

### Printing

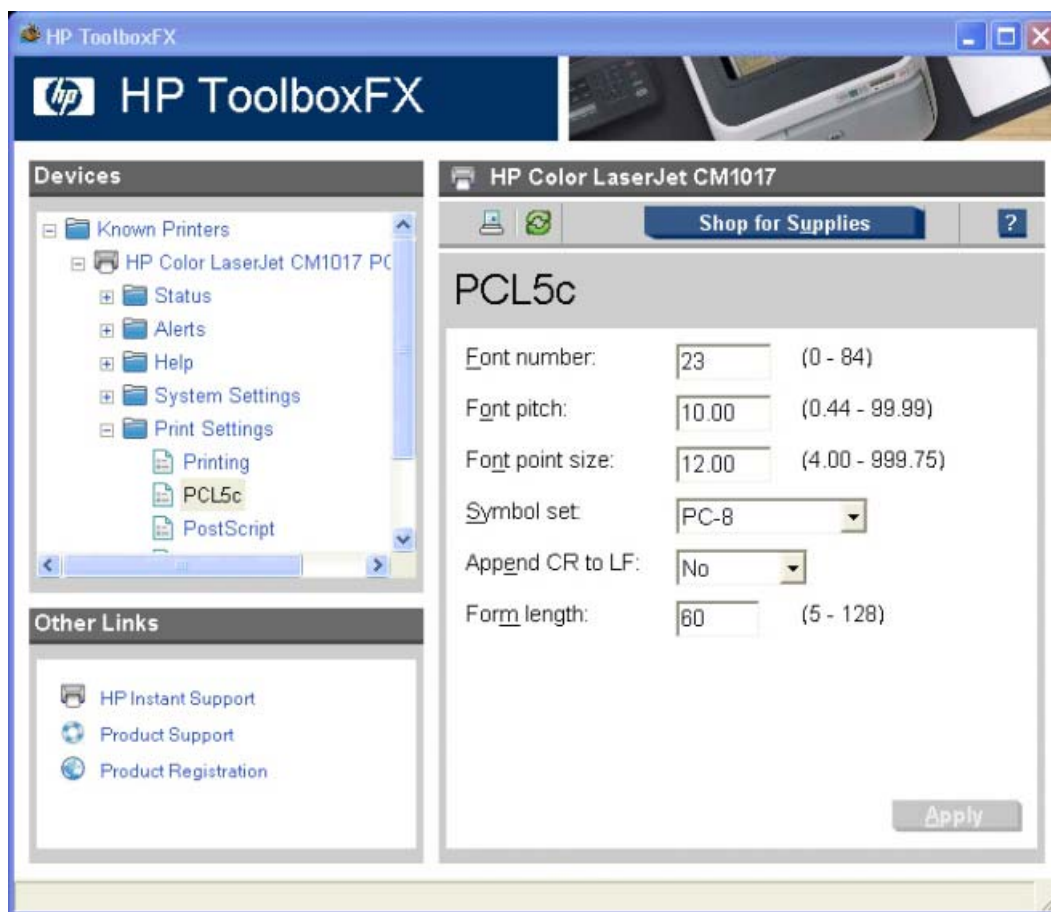
Use the **Printing** screen to change the printing defaults for your HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.



**Figure 2-66** Printing screen

### PCL5c

Use the **PCL5c** screen to change the PCL defaults for your HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.



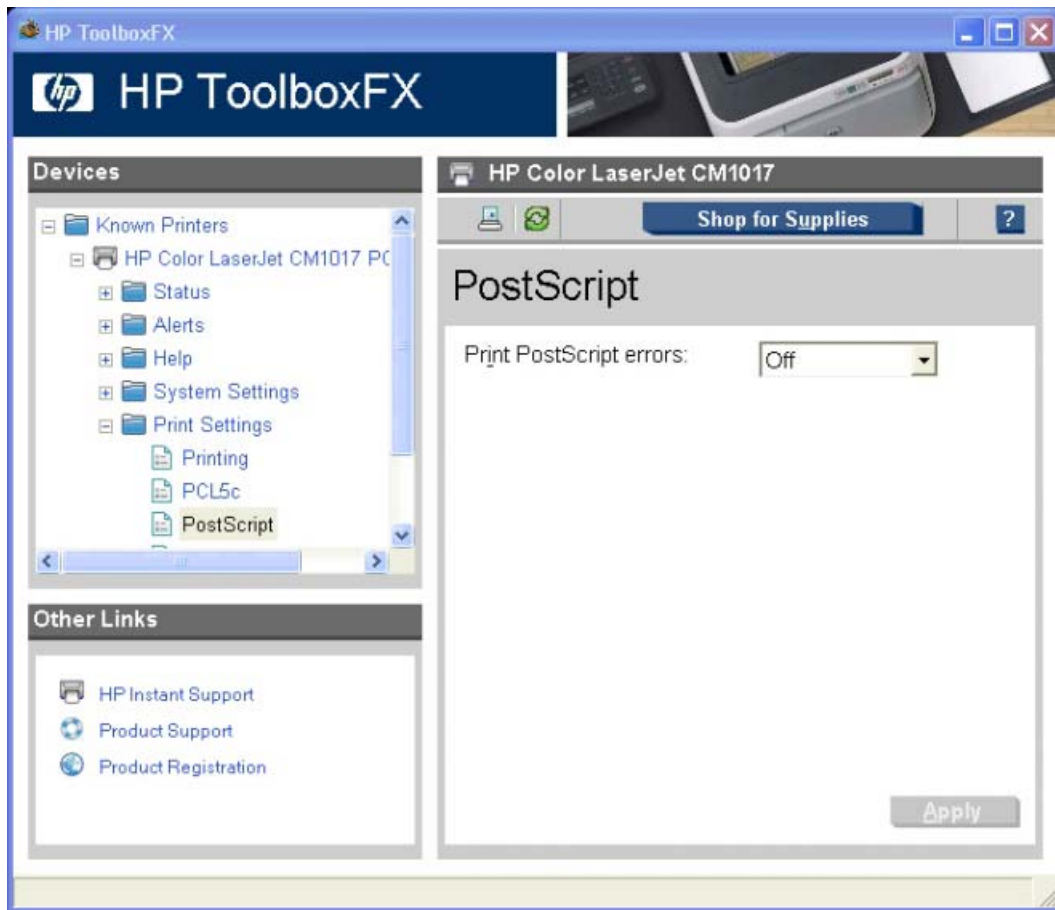
**Figure 2-67** PCL5c screen



**NOTE** You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

### PostScript

Use the **PostScript** screen to change the Postscript defaults for your HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.



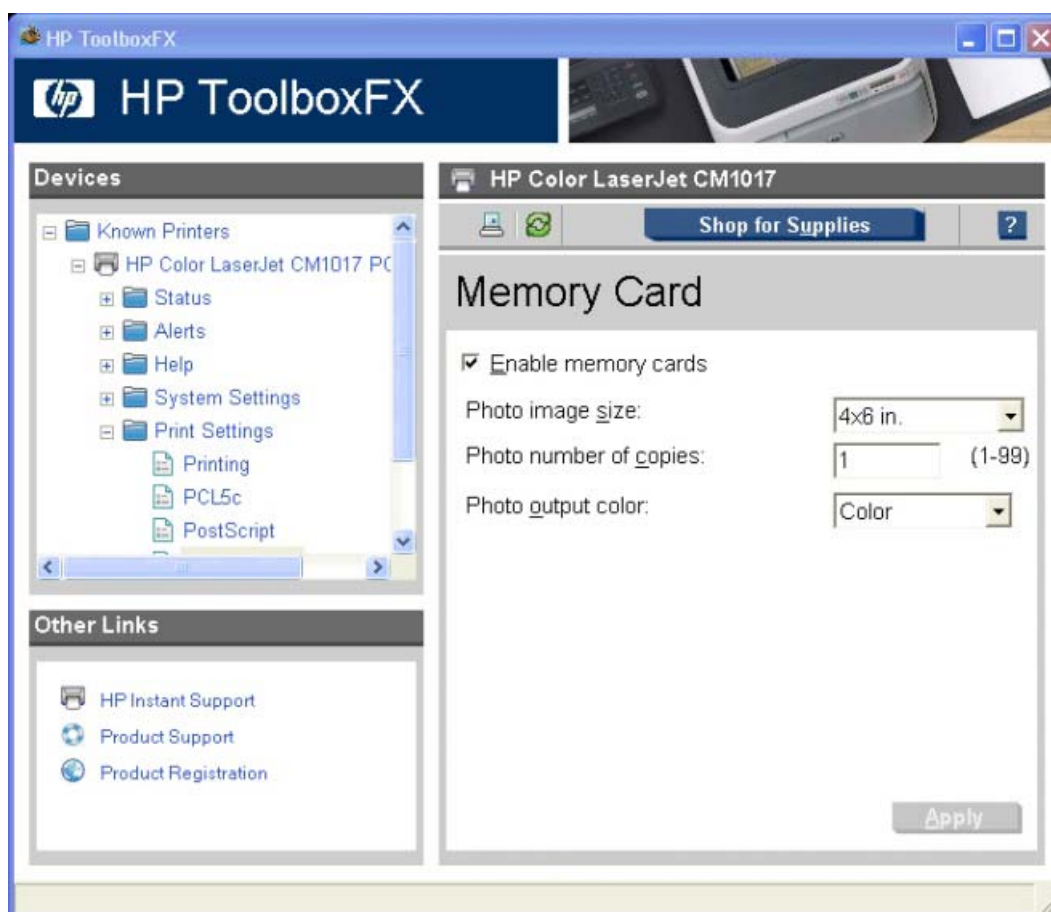
**Figure 2-68** PostScript screen



**NOTE** You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

### Memory Card

Use the options on the Memory Card page to configure print settings when using memory cards.



**Figure 2-69** Memory Card page

Three options are available for configuring the MFP when using memory cards.

- **Photo image size.** Select the size photos to print from the drop-down list.
- **Photo number of copies.** Type the number of copies from 0 to 99 to print for each image.
- **Photo output color.** Select either **Color** or **Monochrome** from the drop-down list.

Click the **Enable memory cards** check box to save the settings.



**NOTE** You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

## Network Settings folder

The HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP includes onboard networking support. This model does not support the use of external Jetdirect boxes for network connectivity. Use the **Network Settings** options to configure the network settings for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.

For network installations, the HP ToolboxFX communicates with the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP by using the network settings that appear on the following **Network Settings** sub-folder screens:

- [IP Configuration](#)
- [Advanced](#)

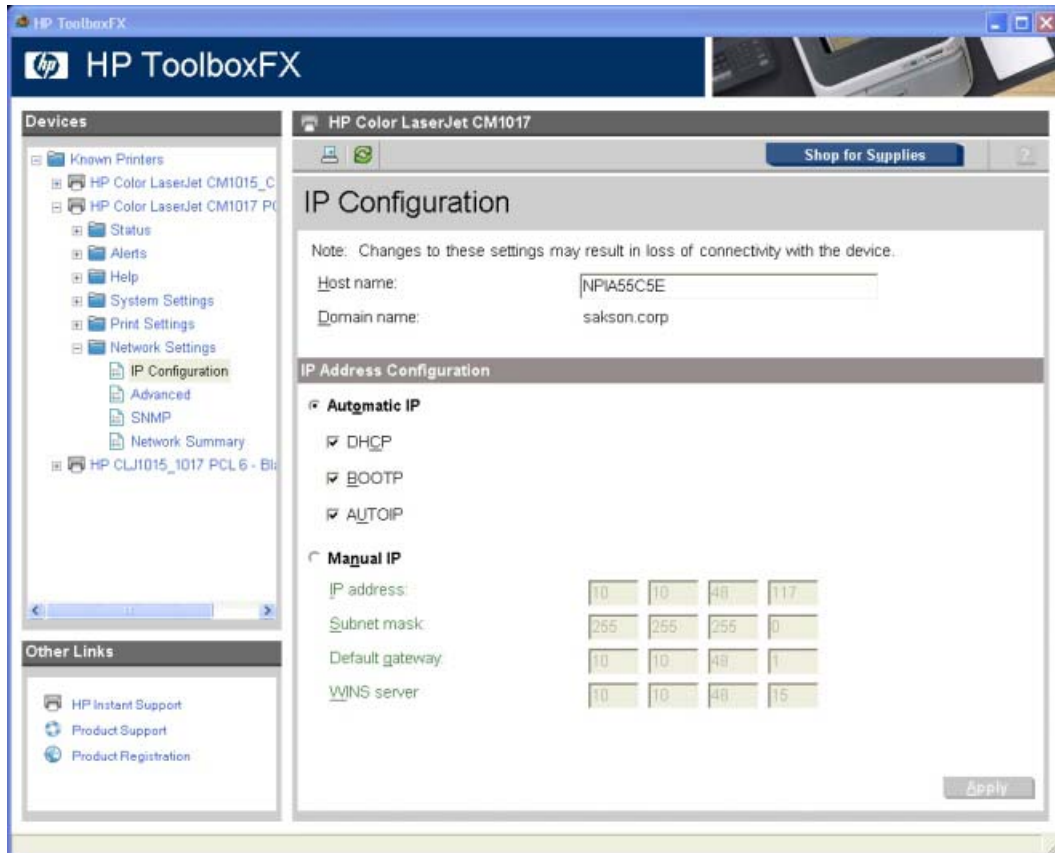
- [SNMP](#)
- [Network Summary](#)



**CAUTION** Changing network settings can cause communication problems between HP ToolboxFX and the product.

## IP Configuration

The **IP Configuration** screen shows the settings for basic TCP/IP network configuration. After changing these settings, click **Apply** to save the changes. Changing these settings causes the MFP to restart.



**Figure 2-70** IP Configuration screen

The **IP Configuration** screen shows the host name and domain of the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP. By default, the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP uses automatic IP configuration and DNS Server. Use this screen to configure the TCP/IP address and DNS Server manually.

The following **IP Address Configuration** options are available:

- **Automatic IP.** This option is selected by default. It causes the MFP to obtain a TCP/IP address from a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server, BOOTP server, or AUTOIP.
- **Manual IP.** Select Manual IP to manually specify an Internet Protocol (IP) address (also known as a static IP address). Selecting this option requires an IP address in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Default gateway** fields.

The following **DNS Address Configuration** options are available:

- **Automatic DNS Server.** This option is selected by default. It causes the MFP to automatically obtain network addresses for DNS servers from the network. If selected, a DHCP server provides this information.
- **Manual DNS Server.** Select this option to manually specify network addresses for DNS servers used by the computer. If selected, type the IP address for the DNS server in **Preferred DNS server** field.

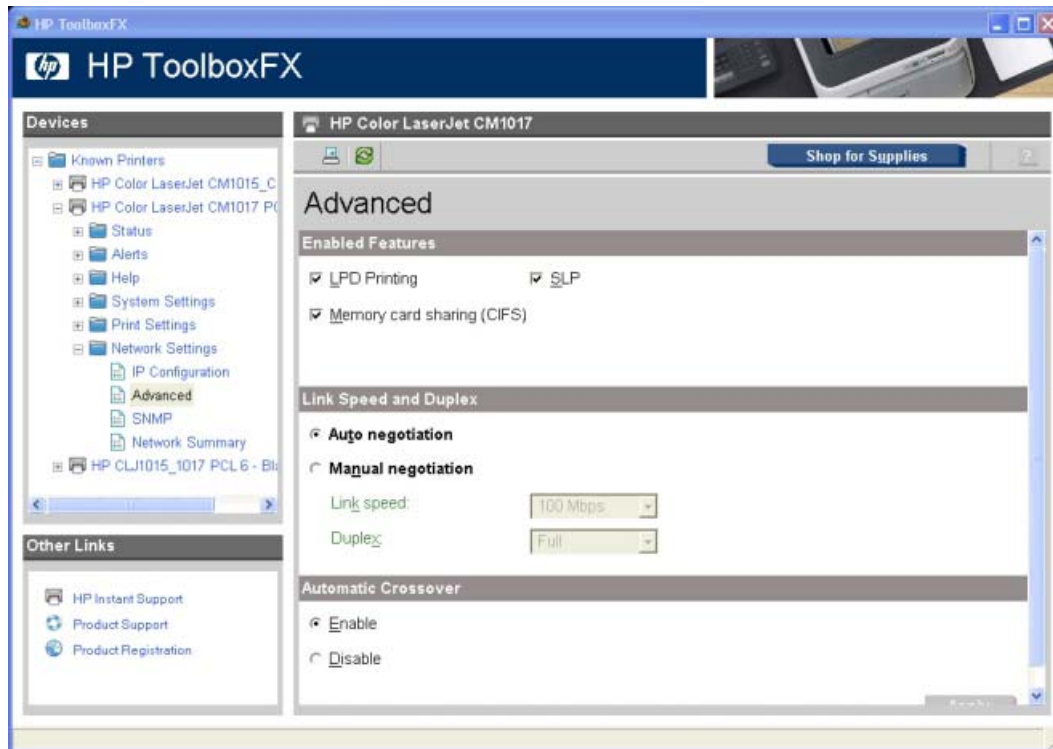
In the **Alternate DNS server** field, specify the IP address for the alternate or secondary DNS server for this computer. This server is used if the DNS server specified in Preferred DNS server is unavailable.



**NOTE** Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

### Advanced

Use the **Advanced** screen to set advanced networking features for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.



**Figure 2-71** Advanced Network Settings screen

The following table shows the options and settings that are available for the **Advanced** screen.

**Table 2-3** Advanced Network Settings options and settings

Option	Settings
Enabled Features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LPD Printing (enabled by default)</li> <li>• HP SLP Discovery (enabled by default)</li> </ul>

**Table 2-3** Advanced Network Settings options and settings (continued)

Option	Settings
Link Speed and Duplex	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto negotiation (default setting)</li> <li>• Manual negotiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Link speed: 10 megabits per second (Mbps) or 100 Mbps</li> <li>• Duplex: Full or Half</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Automatic Crossover	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable (default)</li> <li>• Off</li> </ul>



**NOTE** Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

## SNMP

Use the **SNMP** screen to set SNMP networking features for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.

**Figure 2-72** SNMP screen



The following options are available on the **SNMP** screen:

- **Enable SNMP v1 read-write access.** Select this option to enable SNMP V1 agents on the MFP. Custom community names can be configured to control management access to the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.
  - **Set Community name:** Type the SNMP Set Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be configured (or written) on the MFP.
  - **Confirm Set Community name:** Retype the SNMP Set Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be configured (or written) on the MFP.
  - **Get Community name:** Type the SNMP Get Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be read from the MFP.
  - **Confirm Get Community name:** Retype the SNMP Get Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be read from the MFP.
  - **Disable SNMP v1 default Get Community name of “public”.** Select this option to disable the default Get community name "public". If selected, type values in the **Get Community name** and **Confirm Get Community name** fields.
- **Enable SNMP v1 read-only access (uses “public” for the Get Community value).** Select this option to enable the SNMP V1 agents on the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP, but limit access to read-only. Write-access is disabled. The default **Get Community name** "public" is automatically enabled.
- **Disable SNMP v1.** Select this option to disable the SNMP V1 agents on the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP, which is recommended for secure environments. If SNMP V1 is disabled, some port monitors or discovery utilities might not operate properly.



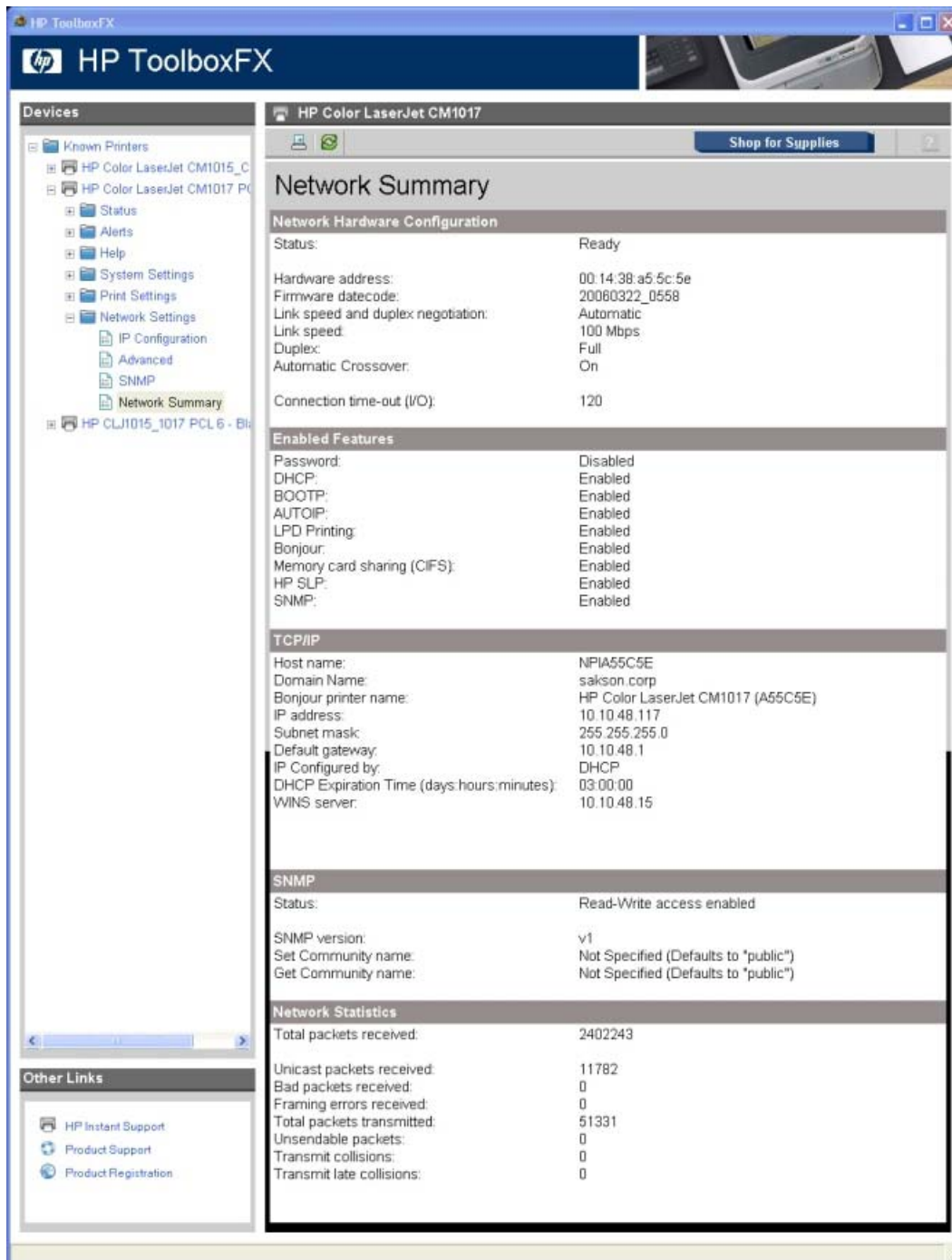
**NOTE** Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

**NOTE** Disabling SNMP can cause the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP to lose functionality for features such as scanning.

### Network Summary

The **Network Summary** screen provides an overview of the network settings that have been enabled for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.





**Figure 2-73** Network Summary screen

The settings appear under the following headings:

- Network Hardware Configuration
- Enabled Features
- TCP/IP

- SNMP
- Network Statistics

## Other screens

The following table lists screens that are also available through the HP ToolboxFX.

Screen	Access
<b>About HP ToolboxFX</b> screen	Click the <b>HP</b> logo that appears in the upper-left corner of the HP ToolboxFX screens.
HP Instant Support	Click the <b>HP Instant Support</b> link in the <b>Other Links</b> box that appears on all HP ToolboxFX and HP EWS screens.
<b>Product Support</b> screen	Click the <b>Product Support</b> link in the <b>Other Links</b> box that appears on all HP ToolboxFX and HP EWS screens.
<b>Product Registration</b> screen	Click the <b>Product Registration</b> link in the <b>Other Links</b> box that appears on all HP ToolboxFX and HP EWS screens.
<b>Shop for Supplies</b> screen	Click the <b>Shop for Supplies</b> link in upper-right corner on all HP ToolboxFX screens.

## About HP ToolboxFX dialog box

Click the HP logo in the HP ToolboxFX heading banner on any HP ToolboxFX screen to access the **About HP ToolboxFX** dialog box. This dialog box shows the software version number and a copyright notice. This dialog box also shows the version number for each HP ToolboxFX product that is installed.



**Figure 2-74** HP ToolboxFX dialog box

## HP Instant Support

Click **HP Instant Support** to access self-help based on information sent from the product to the HP Web site. The help includes recommendations for troubleshooting, firmware upgrades, and reference documentation that is customized to respond to the most recent events that have occurred on the product.

## Product Support

The **Product Support** link connects to a Web page that contains links to online support for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

## Product Registration

The **Product Registration** link connects to a Web page for registering the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

United States-English

» HP Home

» Contact HP

Search:

**hp**  
invent

**HP Registration**  
Welcome

**» HP Registration**

- » Your user profile
- » Product registration
- » Subscriber's Choice
- » Frequently asked questions

**Register today with HP to**

- Access support and services, and get the most out of your HP products
- Manage your profile and register your products
- Sign up for free support alerts, driver notices, and personalized newsletters

**HP registration**

**I am a new visitor**

Please select your Country or Region.

Country / Region  
UNITED STATES

**Register »**

**I am a returning visitor**

Welcome back. Please sign in.

User ID

Password

» Forgot your User ID?  
» Forgot your password?

**Sign-in »**

[Privacy statement](#)   [Using this site means you accept its terms](#)   [Feedback to the webmaster](#)

© 2006 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

**Figure 2-75** Product Registration screen

## Shop for Supplies

The **Shop for Supplies** link connects to a Web page to order supplies online from a choice of resellers. The supplies needed for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP are pre-selected. Change quantities or select additional items. The items are dropped into the shopping cart, ready for checkout, ensuring that the correct supplies are ordered through the selected reseller.

# HP Embedded Web Server

The HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) is a Web application that allows users to control settings on a network-connected HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP through the Web browser. To open the HP EWS, open the Web browser and type the MFP IP address in the address bar.



**NOTE** If you are using an HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP or an HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP that is connected to the computer using the USB port, you do not have access to the HP EWS interface. However, most of the information that appears in HP EWS can be viewed using the HP ToolboxFX interface. For more information, see [HP ToolboxFX](#).

The following tabs are available in the HP EWS:

- [Status tab](#)
- [System tab](#)
- [Print tab](#)
- [Networking tab](#)

## Status tab

Use the **Status** tab to access and print out detailed information regarding device and supply status, device configuration, network configuration, and usage.

The **Status** tab contains the following pages:

- [Device Status](#)
- [Supplies Status page](#)
- [Device Configuration page](#)
- [Network Summary page](#)
- [Print Info Pages](#)
- [Event Log page](#)

## Device Status

The **Device Status** page shows device status messages from the device. The **Device Status** page also displays some pertinent MFP information and device settings.

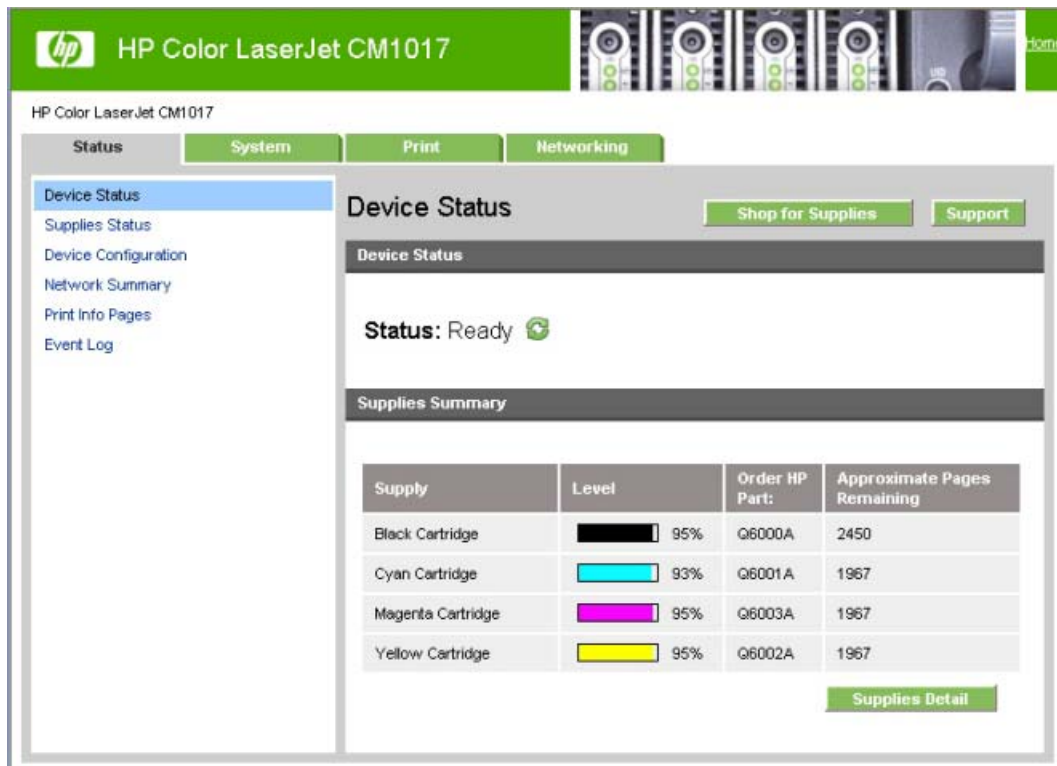
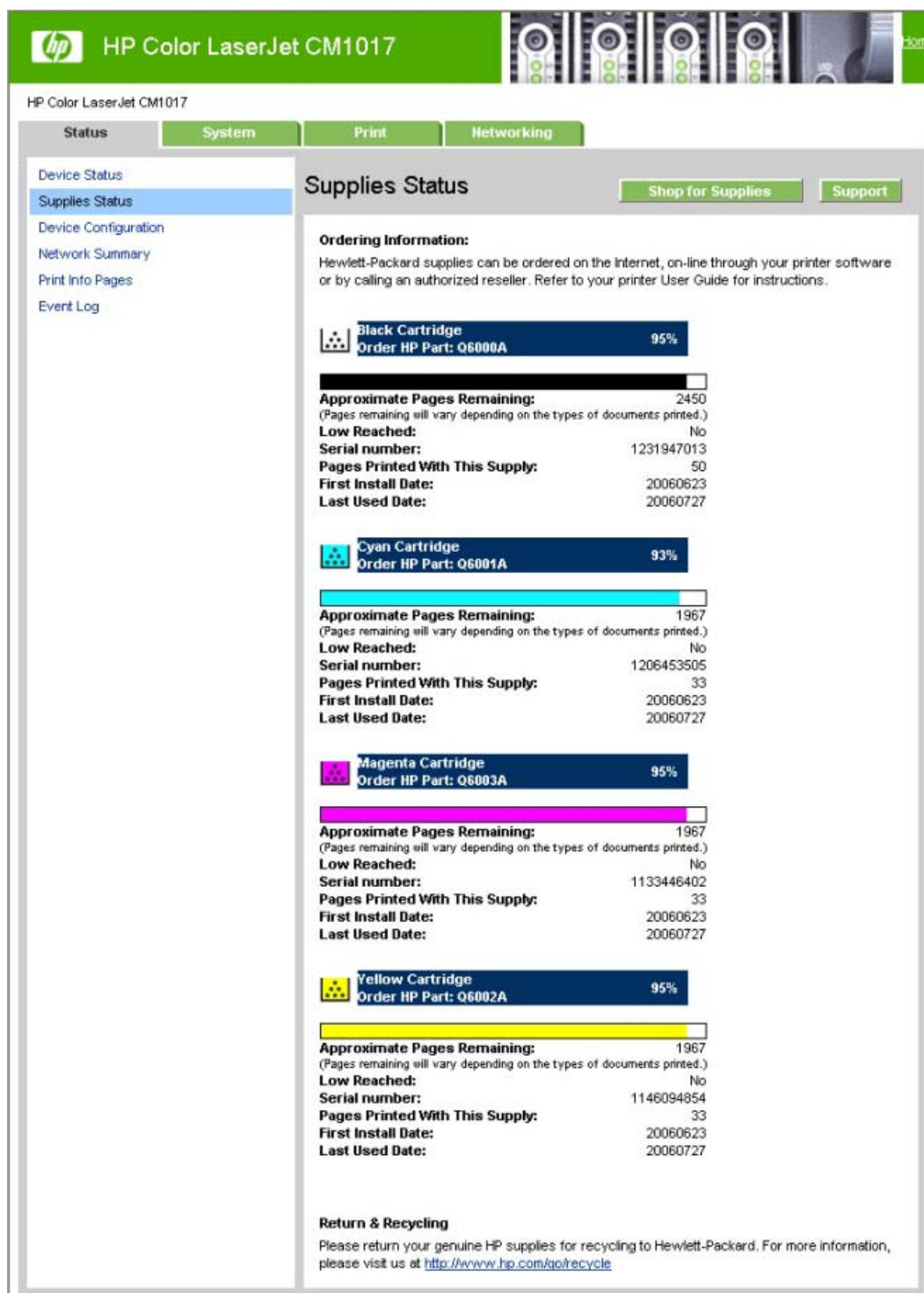


Figure 2-76 HP EWS – Device Status page

## Supplies Status page


The **Supplies Status** page displays the status of all of the supplies used by the MFP, including the black, cyan, magenta, and yellow print cartridges.




**Figure 2-77** HP EWS – Supplies Status page

## Device Configuration page

The **Device Configuration** page displays the values of all of the settings available to be set in the MFP. The contents of this page are consistent with the Configuration page generated by the firmware.


**HP Color LaserJet CM1017**



HP Color LaserJet CM1017

Status
 System
 Print
 Networking

Device Status  
 Supplies Status  
**Device Configuration**  
 Network Summary  
 Print Info Pages  
 Event Log

**Device Configuration**
[Shop for Supplies](#)
[Support](#)

**Product Information**

<b>Product Name:</b>	HP Color LaserJet CM1017
<b>Formatter Number:</b>	KK000GL
<b>Product Serial Number:</b>	CN1Y644008
<b>Service ID:</b>	16173
<b>Firmware Datecode:</b>	20060614
<b>ADF installed:</b>	No
<b>Max monochrome print quality:</b>	600
<b>Max color print quality:</b>	ImageREt 2400
<b>Controller Number:</b>	0
<b>Device Description:</b>	HP Color LaserJet CM1017
<b>Language:</b>	English
<b>Asset Number:</b>	
<b>Company Name:</b>	
<b>Contact Person:</b>	
<b>Hardware Address:</b>	00:14:38:a5:5c:5e
<b>IP Address:</b>	10.10.48.124
<b>Total Memory:</b>	64 MBytes
<b>Available Memory:</b>	40.21 MBytes

**Installed Personalities and Options**

<b>PCL5c</b>	
<b>PostScript</b>	
<b>PCLXL</b>	
<b>DIMM Slot 1:</b>	Empty
<b>Memory card:</b>	Empty - 0 MB

**Page Counts**

<b>Total pages printed:</b>	41
<b>Color pages printed:</b>	32
<b>Pages mispicked in printer:</b>	0
<b>Pages jammed in printer:</b>	0
<b>PCL6 pages printed:</b>	46
<b>PS pages printed:</b>	4
<b>PCL pages printed:</b>	0
<b>Color pages printed from photo:</b>	0
<b>Monochrome pages printed from photo:</b>	0
<b>Flatbed pages scanned to copy:</b>	1
<b>Monochrome pages printed from copy:</b>	0
<b>Color pages printed from copy:</b>	1
<b>Flatbed pages scanned to host:</b>	10
<b>Total flatbed pages scanned:</b>	11

Figure 2-78 HP EWS – Device Configuration page – 1 of 3

Paper Settings	
Paper size:	Letter
Paper type:	Plain
Tray 2 size:	Any size
Tray 2 type:	Any type
Paper out action:	Wait forever
Manual Feed:	Off
Plain:	Normal
Light:	Light
Heavy:	Heavy
Card stock:	Card stock
HP Premium Cover:	Card stock
Bond:	Heavy
Color:	Normal
Preprinted:	Normal
Letterhead:	Normal
Prepunched:	Normal
Recycled:	Normal
Light Glossy:	Light Glossy
Glossy:	Light Glossy
Heavy glossy:	Glossy
HP Laser Photo:	Heavy glossy
Labels:	Label
Envelope:	Envelope
Heavy envelope:	Heavy envelope
Tough paper:	Tough paper
Transparency:	Transparency

Print Settings	
Auto Continue:	Off
Copies:	1
Courier font:	Regular
Orientation:	P (Portrait)
Wide A4:	No
Connection Timeout (I/O):	120 seconds
Jam recovery:	Auto
Font source:	I (Internal)
Font number:	23
Pitch:	10.00
Point size:	12.00
Symbol set:	PC-8
Form:	60 Lines
Append CR to LF:	No
Print PS Errors:	Off
Print to fade (Override):	No

Figure 2-79 HP EWS – Device Configuration page – 2 of 3



Memory Card Printing Settings	
Default photo image size:	4 x 6 in
Default photo number of copies:	1
Default photo output color:	Color

Copy Settings	
Default Copy Quality:	Text
Default Copy Light/Dark:	<----->
Default Copy Collation:	
Default Copy Number Of Copies:	1
Default Copy Reduce/Enlarge:	Original (100%)


  

Print Density				
	<b>C</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>Y</b>	<b>K</b>
Contrasts:	0	0	0	0
Highlights:	0	0	0	0
Midtones:	0	0	0	0
Shadows:	0	0	0	0

Figure 2-80 HP EWS – Device Configuration page – 3 of 3

## Network Summary page

The **Network Configuration** page contains all the information about the network and its enabled features.



HP Color LaserJet CM1017

HP Color LaserJet CM1017

Status System Print **Networking**

Device Status  
Supplies Status  
Device Configuration  
**Network Summary**  
Print Info Pages  
Event Log

**Network Summary** [Shop for Supplies](#) [Support](#)

**Network Hardware Configuration**

Status: Ready

Hardware Address: 00:14:38:a5:5c:5e  
Firmware Datecode: 20060614  
Link Speed and Duplex Negotiation: Automatic  
Link speed: 100 Mbps  
Duplex: Full  
Automatic Crossover: Enabled  
Connection Timeout (I/O): 120 seconds

**Enabled Features**

Password: Not Specified  
DHCP: Enabled  
BOOTP: Enabled  
AUTOIP: Enabled  
LPD Printing: Enabled  
Memory Card Sharing (CIFS): Enabled  
Bonjour: Enabled  
SLP: Enabled  
SNMP: Enabled

Figure 2-81 HP EWS – Network Configuration page – 1 of 2

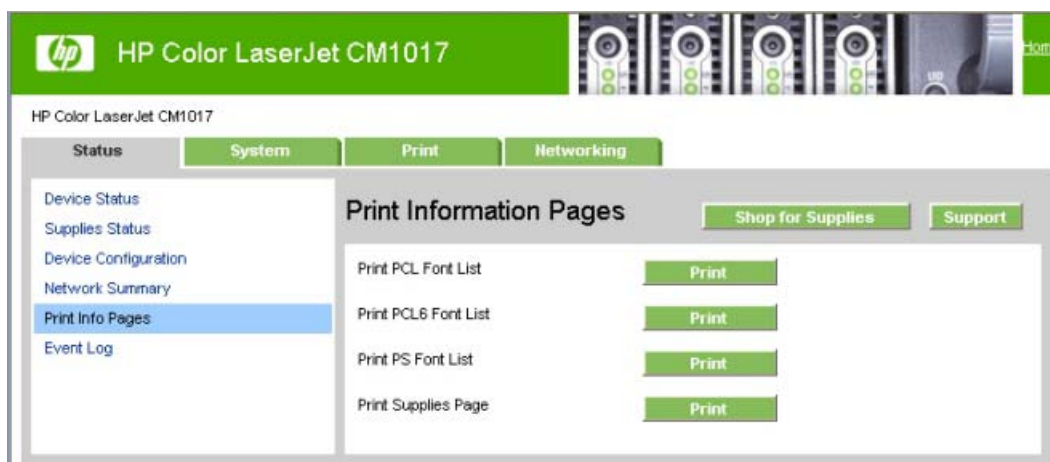
TCP/IP	
Host Name:	NPIA55C5E
Domain Name:	sakson.corp
Bonjour printer name:	HP Color LaserJet CM1017 (A55C5E)
IP Address:	10.10.48.124
Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0
Default Gateway:	10.10.48.1
IP Configured By:	DHCP
DHCP/BOOTP Server:	10.10.48.15
DHCP Expiration Time:	02:14:08 (days:hours:minutes)
WINS server:	10.10.48.15
SNMP	
Status:	Read-Write Access Enabled
SNMP Version:	v1
Set Community Name:	Not Specified (Defaults to 'public')
Get Community Name:	Not Specified (Defaults to 'public')
Network Statistics	
Total Packets Received:	5316882
Unicast Packets Received:	2724115
Bad Packets Received:	0
Framing Errors Received:	0
Total Packets Transmitted:	3430403
Unsendable Packets:	0
Transmit Collisions:	0
Transmit Late Collisions:	0

**Figure 2-82** HP EWS – Network Configuration page – 2 of 2

## Print Info Pages

The **Print Info Pages** page provides users the ability to easily print out the internal special pages that are generated by the device. The following information pages are available.

- PCL Font List
- PCL6 Font List
- PS Font List
- Print Supplies Page



**Figure 2-83** HP EWS – Print Info Pages page

## Event Log page

Use the **Event Log** page to track the events that occur on the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.



**Figure 2-84** HP EWS – Event Log page

## System tab

Use the **System** tab to view and change settings for the following features:

- [Device Information page](#)
- [Paper Handling page](#)
- [Print Quality page](#)
- [Print Density page](#)
- [Paper Types page](#)
- [System Setup page](#)
- [Password page](#)

## Device Information page

The **Device Information** page contains identifying information about the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.

HP Color LaserJet CM1017

HP Color LaserJet CM1017

Device Information

Shop for Supplies Support

Device Description: HP Color LaserJet CM1017

Asset Number:

Company Name:

Contact Person:

Apply Cancel

Figure 2-85 HP EWS – Device Information page

## Paper Handling page

Use this page to configure the paper-handling settings for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.

HP Color LaserJet CM1017

HP Color LaserJet CM1017

Paper Handling

Shop for Supplies Support

Paper Handling

Default Paper Size: Letter

Default Paper Type: Plain

Manual Feed: Off

Tray 2 size: Any size

Tray 2 type: Any type

Paper Out Handling

☒ Wait For Paper To Be Loaded

☐ Specify Time and Action

Paper out time: 0 seconds (0 - 3600)

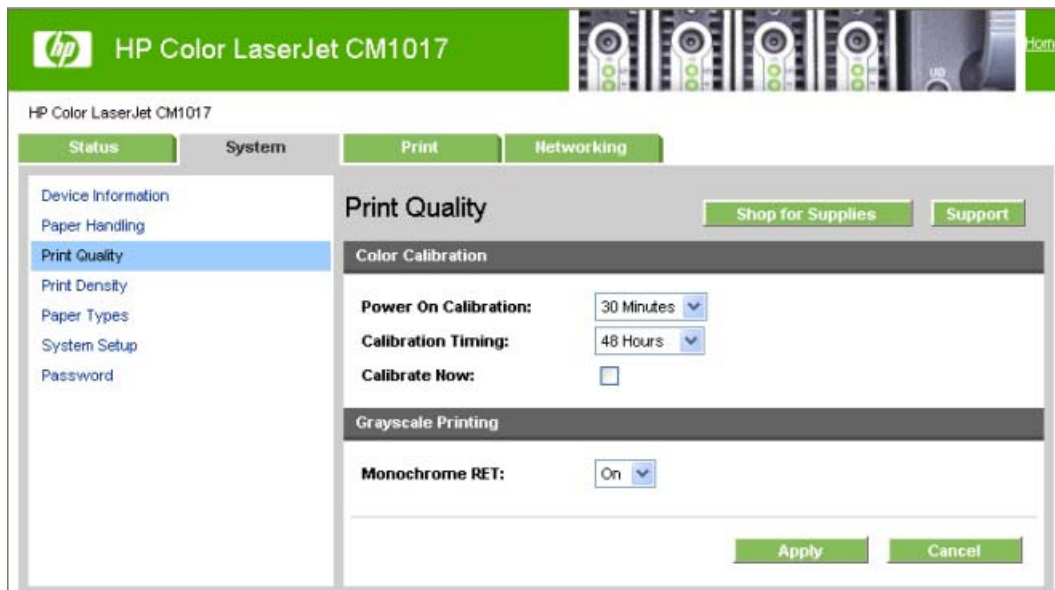
Paper out action: Cancel

Apply Cancel

Figure 2-86 HP EWS – Paper Handling page

## Print Quality page

Use the **Print Quality** page to change the print quality defaults for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.



**Figure 2-87** HP EWS – Print Quality page

## Print Density page

Use the **Print Density** page to control the print density of each print cartridge on the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.

The screenshot displays the HP EWS (Embedded Web Server) interface for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017. The top navigation bar includes 'Status', 'System', 'Print', and 'Networking'. The left sidebar lists various settings: 'Device Information', 'Paper Handling', 'Print Quality', 'Print Density' (selected), 'Paper Types', 'System Setup', and 'Password'. The main content area is titled 'Print Density' and features a 'Shop for Supplies' and 'Support' button. Below this, there are four sections: 'Contrasts', 'Highlights', 'Midtones', and 'Shadows'. Each section contains four density sliders for Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black, all currently set to 0. At the bottom, there is a 'Restore defaults' section with a checkbox and 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Section	Color	Density
Contrasts	Cyan Density	0
	Magenta Density	0
	Yellow Density	0
	Black Density	0
Highlights	Cyan Density	0
	Magenta Density	0
	Yellow Density	0
	Black Density	0
Midtones	Cyan Density	0
	Magenta Density	0
	Yellow Density	0
	Black Density	0
Shadows	Cyan Density	0
	Magenta Density	0
	Yellow Density	0
	Black Density	0

Restore defaults: ☐

Apply Cancel

Figure 2-88 HP EWS – Print Density page

## Paper Types page

Use the **Paper Types** page to set the default paper type settings for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.

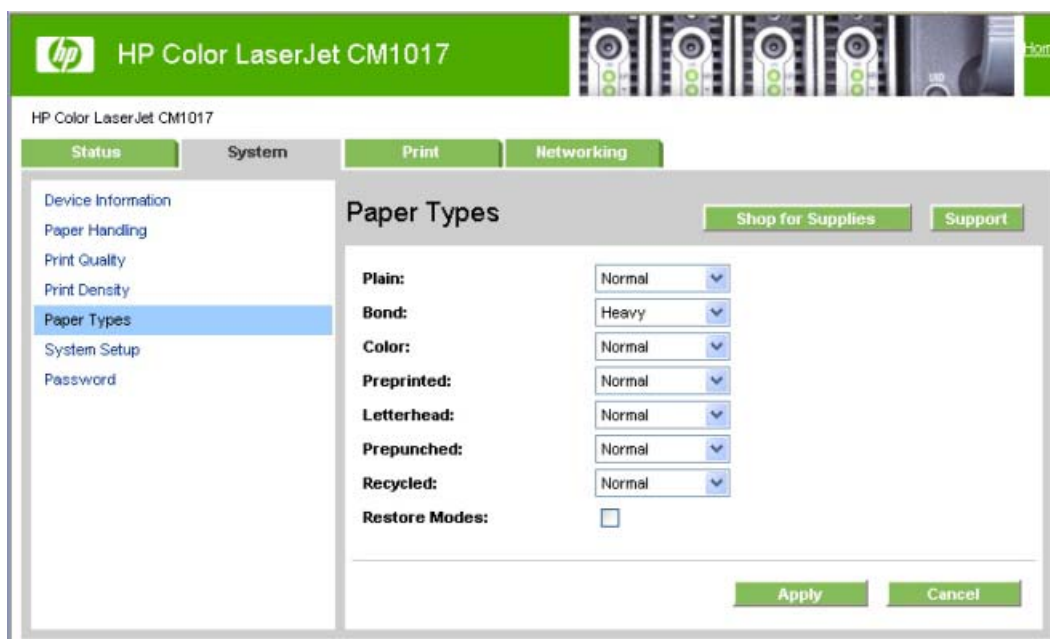


Figure 2-89 HP EWS – Paper Types page

## System Setup page

Use the **System Setup** page to change settings on the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP such as Jam Recovery and Auto Continue.

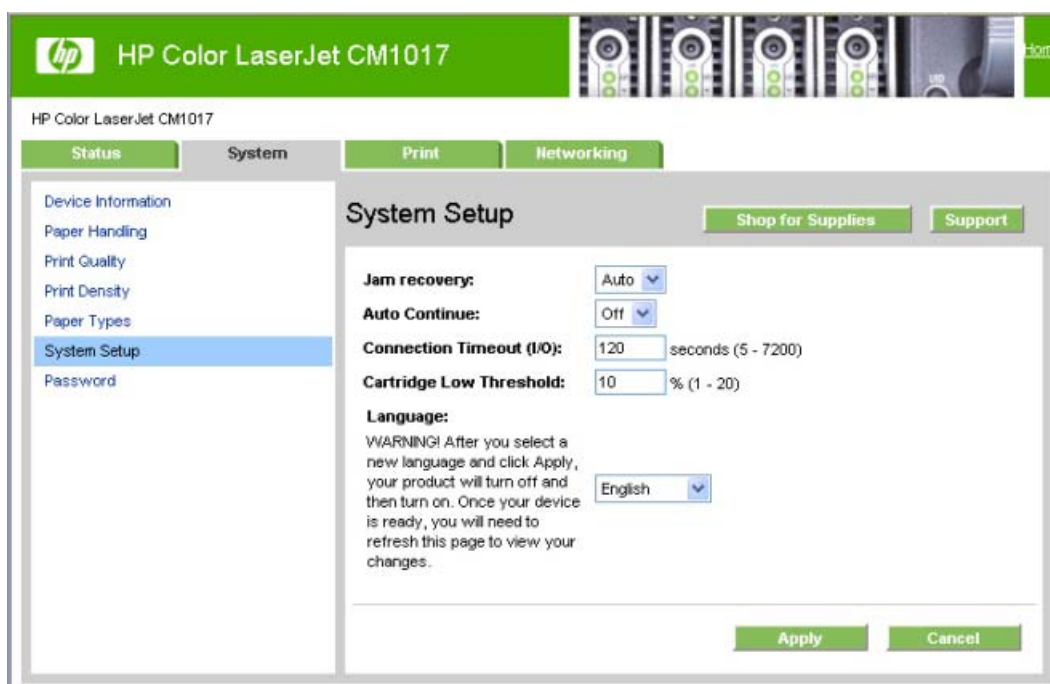


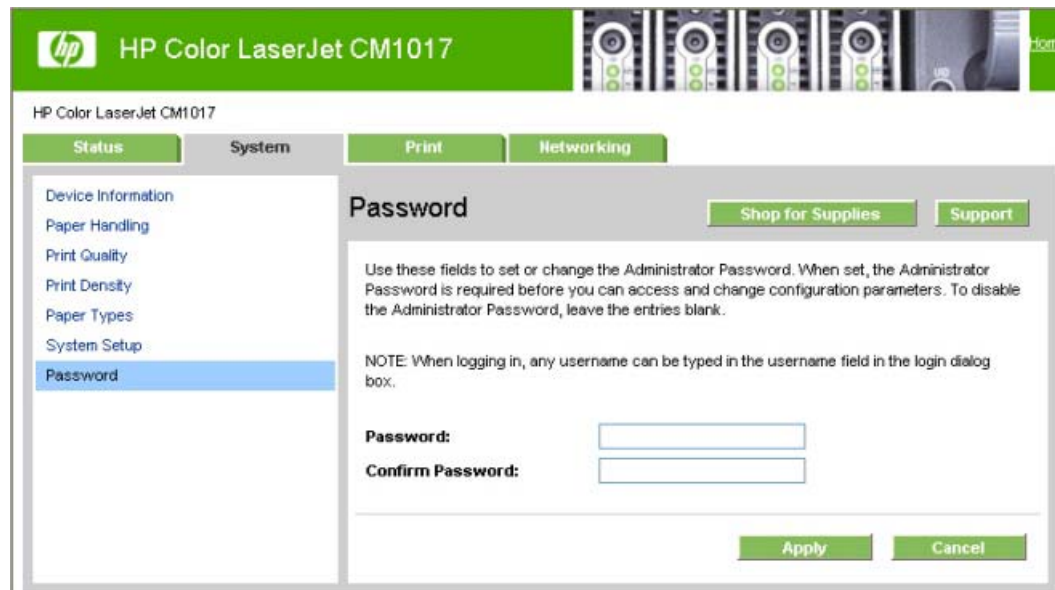
Figure 2-90 HP EWS – System Setup page



## Password page

Use this page to set or change the Administrator password to limit access to MFP features.

- **Shop for Supplies** button
- **Support** button
- **System** pages
- **Print** pages
- **Networking** pages
- **Event Log** page



**Figure 2-91** HP EWS – Password page

## Print tab

Use the **Print** tab to view and change print settings. The following pages are available:

- [Printing page](#)
- [PCL5c page](#)
- [PostScript page](#)
- [Memory Card page](#)

## Printing page

Use this page to change the printing defaults for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.





Figure 2-92 HP EWS – Printing page

## PCL5c page

Use the **PCL5c** page to change font information and form length.

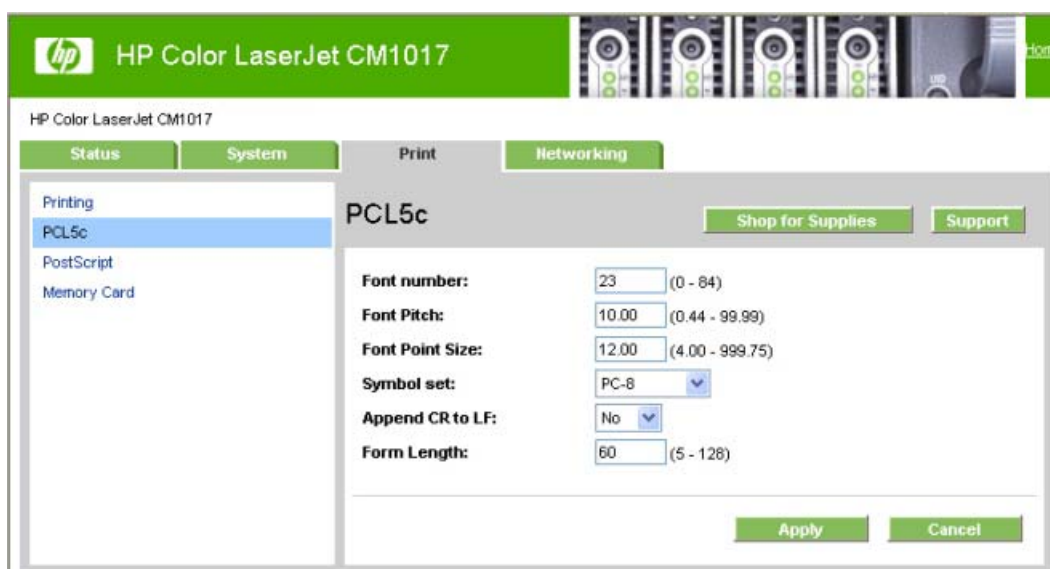
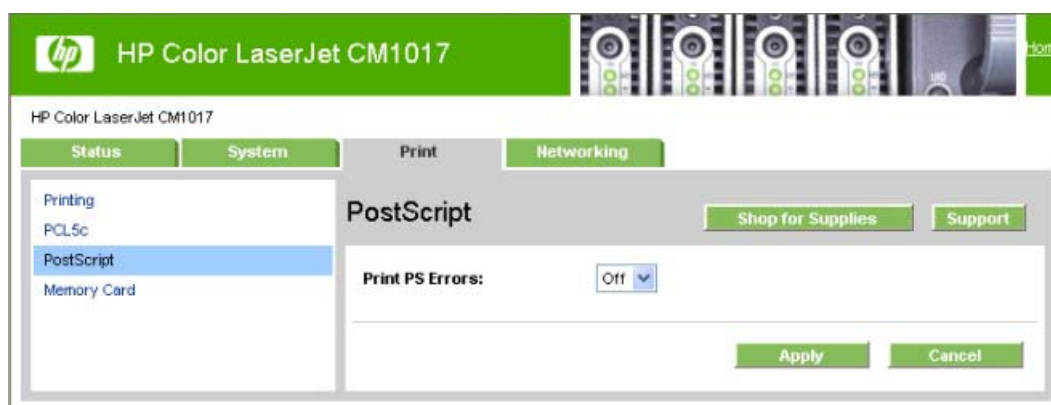


Figure 2-93 HP EWS – PCL5c page

## PostScript page

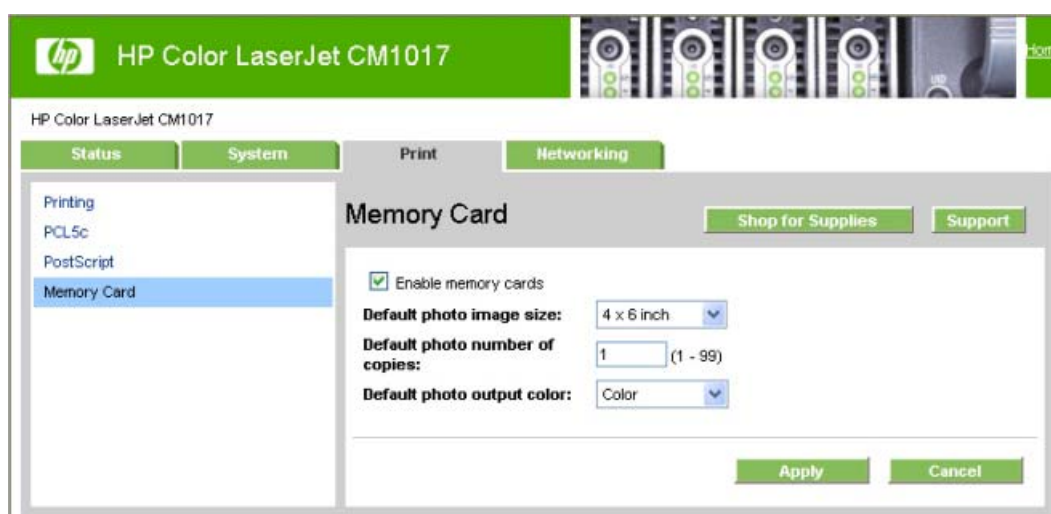
Use the **PostScript** page to change the **Print PS Errors** option.



**Figure 2-94** HP EWS – PostScript page

## Memory Card page

Use the **Memory Card** page to enable and control the memory card function of the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.



**Figure 2-95** HP EWS – Memory Card page

## Networking tab

Use the **Networking** tab to view and change settings for network connection and communication. The following pages are available:

- [IP Configuration page](#)
- [Advanced page](#)
- [Bonjour \(Rendezvous\) page](#)
- [SNMP page](#)
- [Network Summary page](#)

## IP Configuration page

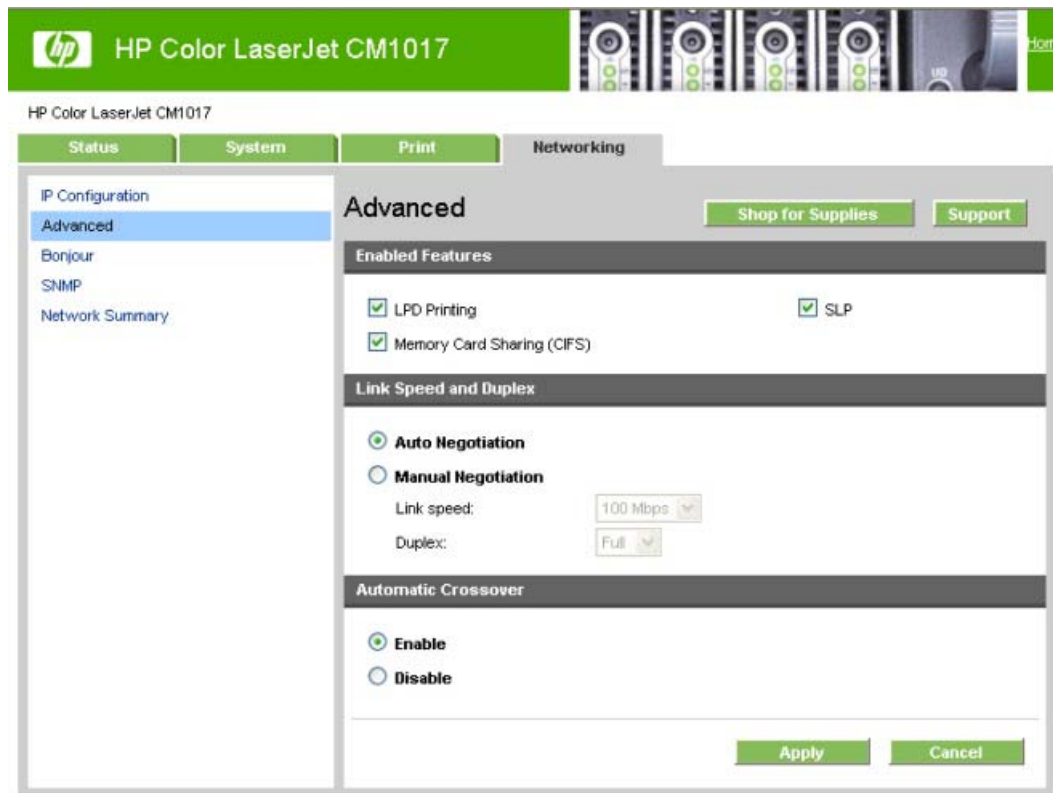
Use the **IP Configuration** page to configure the IP address and host and domain names for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.

The screenshot shows the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 Embedded Web Server (EWS) interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Status', 'System', 'Print', and 'Networking'. The 'Networking' tab is active, and the 'IP Configuration' sub-tab is selected in the left sidebar. The main content area is titled 'IP Configuration' and features a warning message: 'Warning: A change in the IP Address will result in loss of connectivity to the browser.' Below the warning, there are fields for 'IP Configured By:' (set to DHCP), 'Host Name:', and 'Domain Name:'. There are two radio buttons for 'Automatic IP' (selected) and 'Manual IP'. Under 'Automatic IP', there are three checked checkboxes: 'DHCP', 'BOOTP', and 'AUTOIP'. Below these, there are four rows of input fields for 'IP Address:', 'Subnet Mask:', 'Default Gateway:', and 'WINS server:', each with four individual digit boxes. At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons. A 'Shop for Supplies' button and a 'Support' link are also visible in the top right of the configuration area.

**Figure 2-96** HP EWS – IP Configuration page

## Advanced page

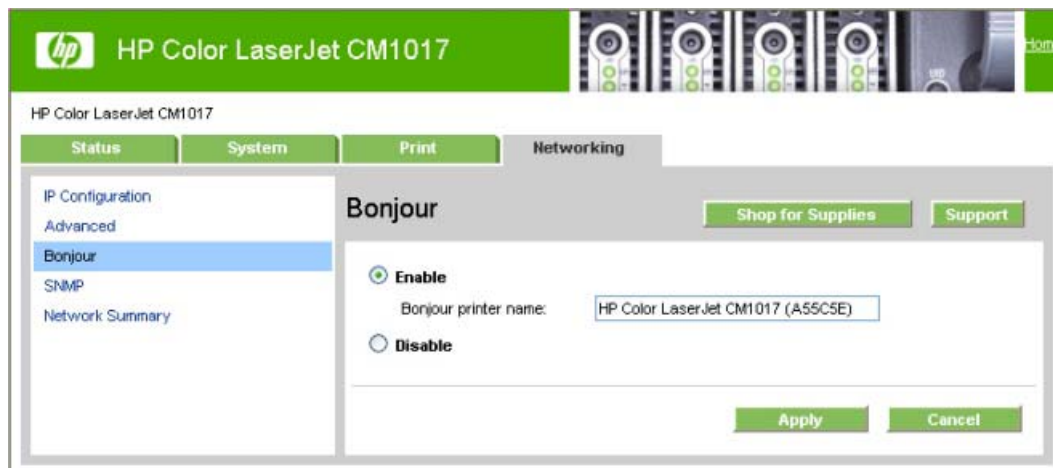
Use the **Advanced** page to configure the enabled settings and other settings, such as link speed, for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.



**Figure 2-97** HP EWS – Advanced page

### Bonjour (Rendezvous) page

Use the **Bonjour (Rendezvous)** page to enable or disable the Bonjour settings for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.



**Figure 2-98** HP EWS – Bonjour (Rendezvous) page

### SNMP page

Use this page to configure the SNMP settings for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.



**NOTE** Changing SNMP settings can cause the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP to lose functionality for features such as scanning.

**Figure 2-99** HP EWS – **SNMP** page

## Network Summary page

The **Network Summary** page contains all the information about the network and its enabled features.

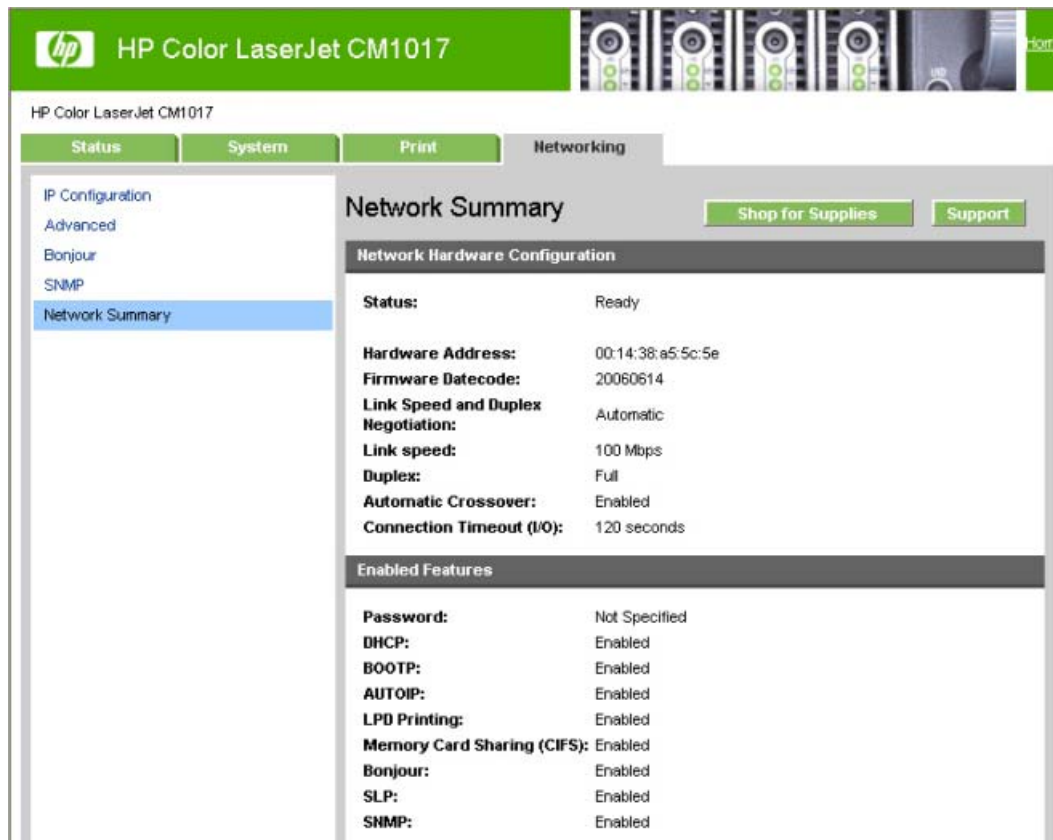


Figure 2-100 HP EWS – Network Summary page – 1 of 2

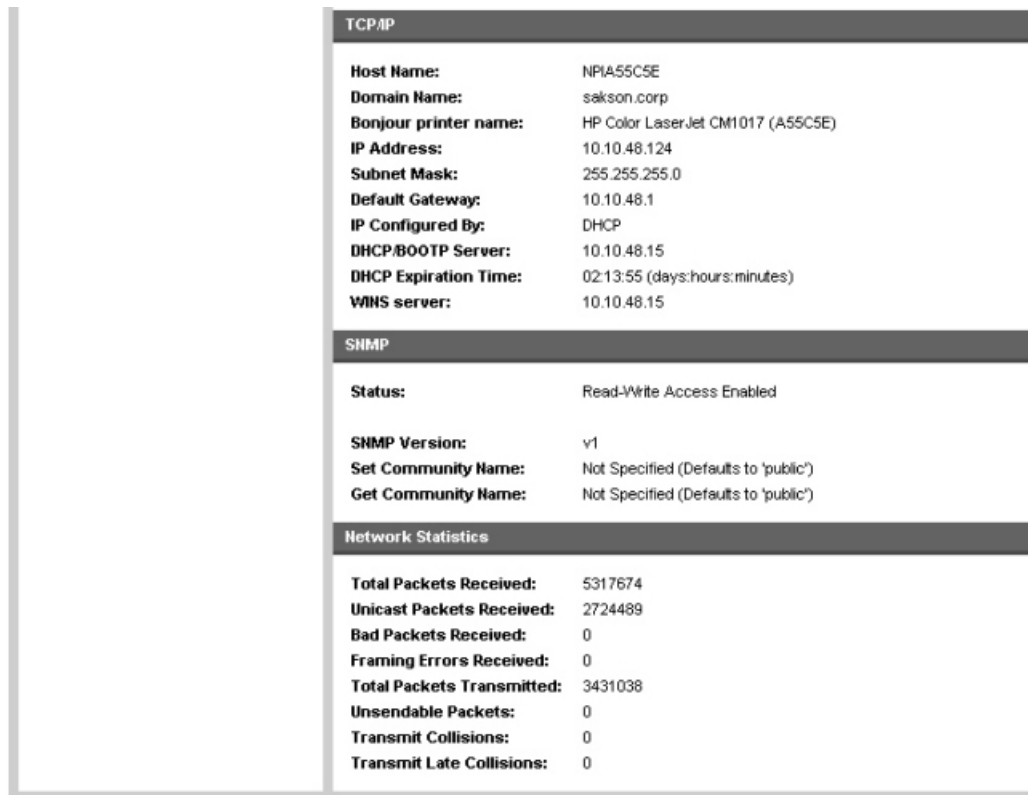


Figure 2-101 HP EWS – Network Summary page – 2 of 2

## Optional software

After installing the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software, the CD browser presents links for installing optional HP software products on computers running Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, or Microsoft Windows XP x64. The following software programs are available for installation from the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software CD:

- **HP Photosmart Premier.** Use the HP Photosmart Premier software to manage and manipulate the digital photographs. The HP Photosmart Premier Transfer software is installed automatically with HP Photosmart Premier. Use the HP Photosmart Premier Transfer software to transfer digital photographs quickly and easily between HP devices and the computer. For more information about these programs, see the [HP PhotoSmart Premier](#) section.
- **HP Document Viewer.** Use this software to easily view and manage scanned documents. Quickly view documents as thumbnails or full-size pages, and zoom in to magnify key parts of any page. Add annotations to a document and even select groups of documents for collectively printing, e-mailing, faxing, and more. Converting scanned documents to text is also easy.

The following optional software programs are available for installation on separate CDs that came with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

- **HP Marketing Assistant.** Use the HP Marketing Assistant software to prepare flyers, brochures, and other creative pieces that use the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. For more information, see the [HP Marketing Assistant](#) section.



**NOTE** The HP Marketing Assistant might not be available in all countries/regions.

- **Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS.** Use Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS to convert scanned images into text that can be edited in word-processing programs.

### HP PhotoSmart Premier

HP Photosmart Premier is an optional software program that is included with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. Install HP Photosmart Premier by using the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system CD.

To start HP Photosmart Premier, click **Start, Programs, HP, and HP Photosmart Premier**. Or double-click the **HP Photosmart Premier** icon on the desktop shortcut or click the **HP Photosmart Premier** link in the **Software** section of the HP Solution Center.



The following six tabs are available:

- **View.** This is the default screen when the program opens. Navigate to any images on the computer from the locations listed at the upper-left portion of the screen.

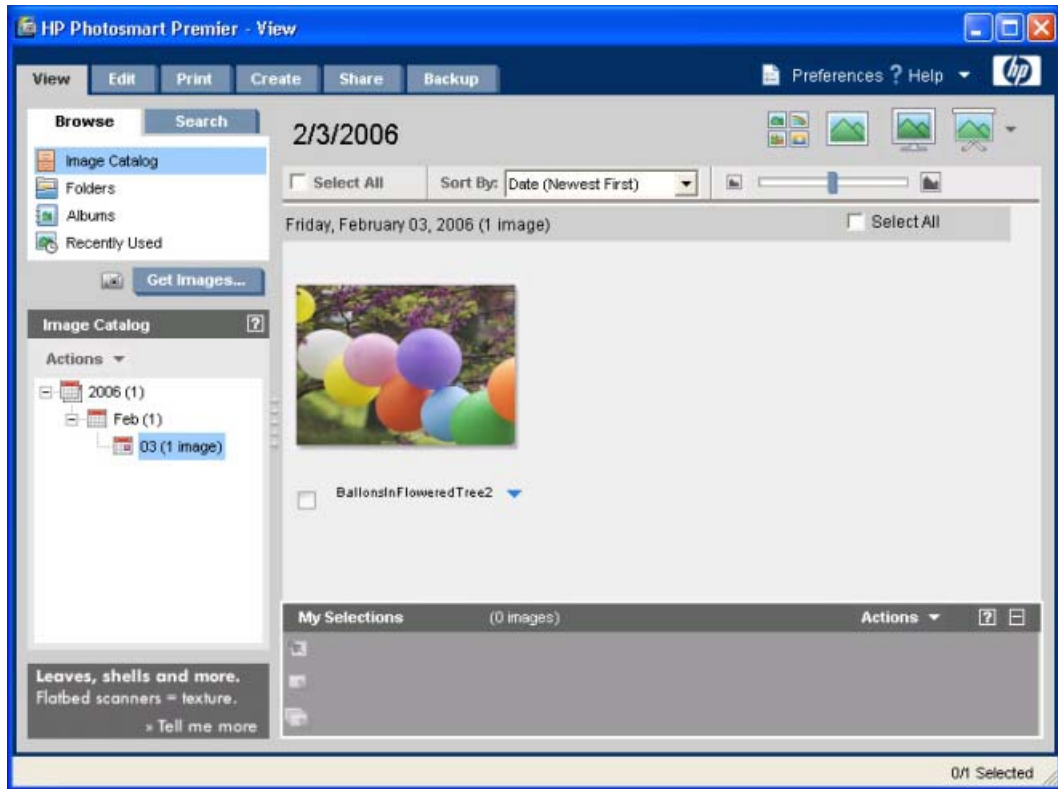
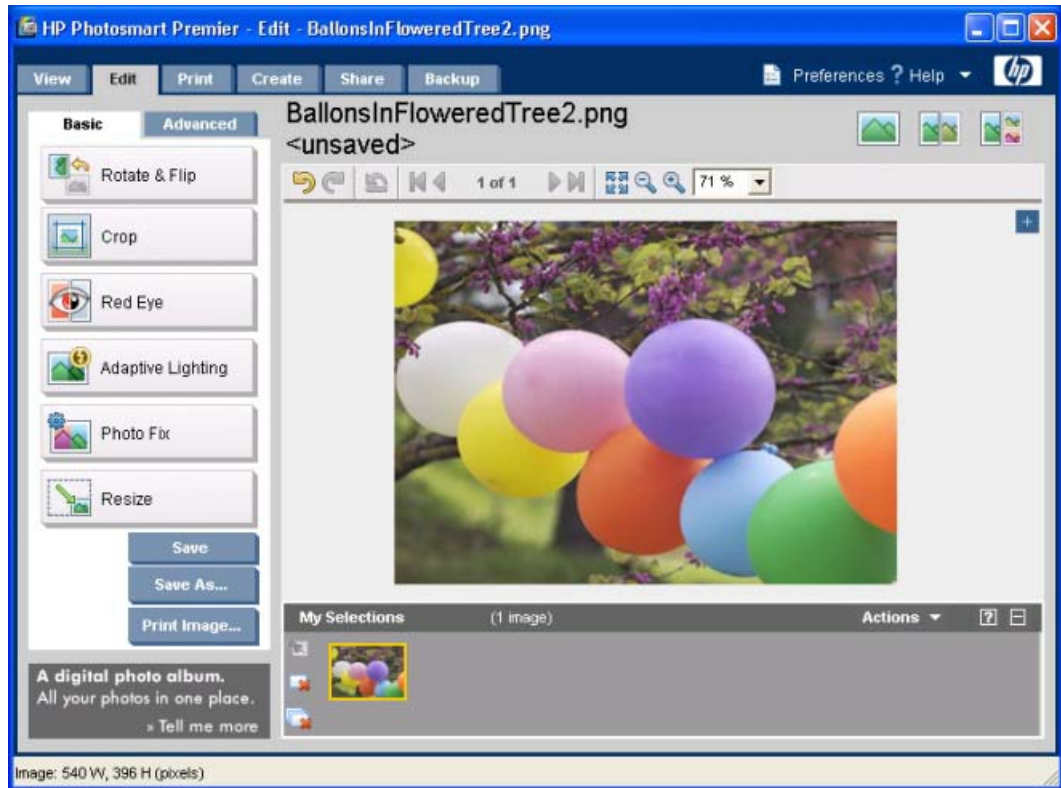


Figure 2-102 View tab



- **Edit.** Select an image and click the **Edit** tab to open and make changes to the image.



**Figure 2-103** Edit tab

- **Print.** Use the **Print** tab to select a print layout for the photographs and to select print settings.

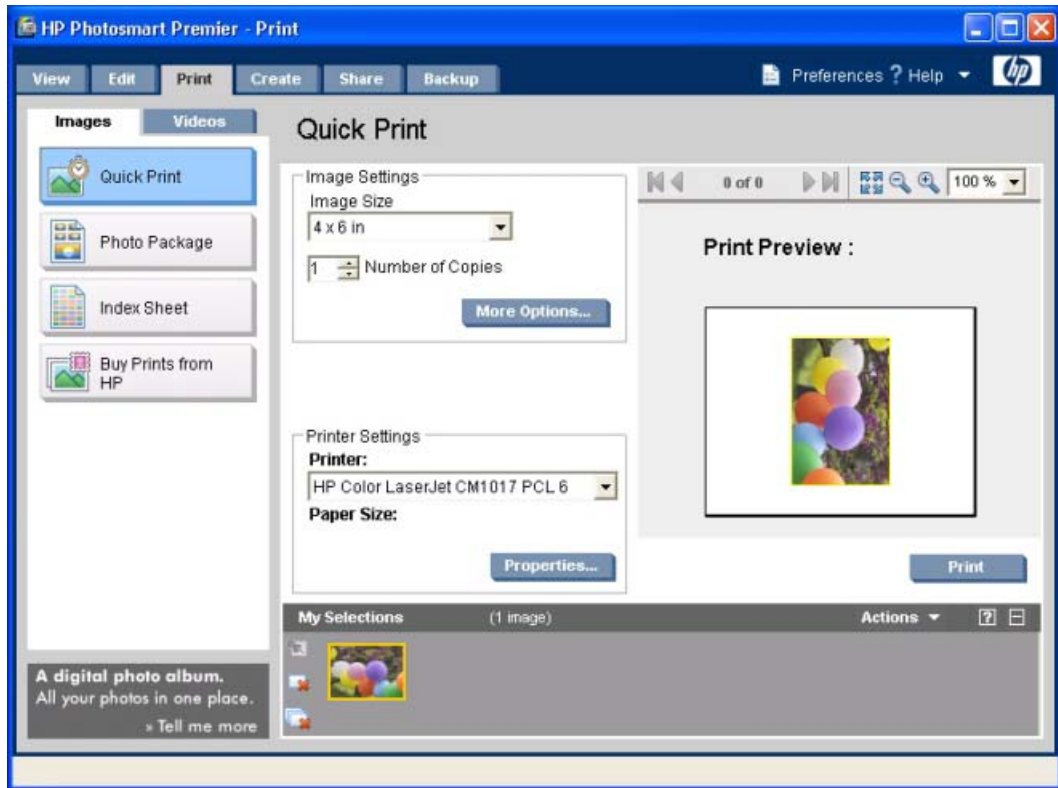


Figure 2-104 Print tab

- **Create.** Click this tab to use photos and other images in creative print projects such as photo album pages, cards, CD labels, calendars, flyers, and brochures. These projects contain predefined layouts with picture holders and customizable text objects. The available projects vary depending on the HP device installed.

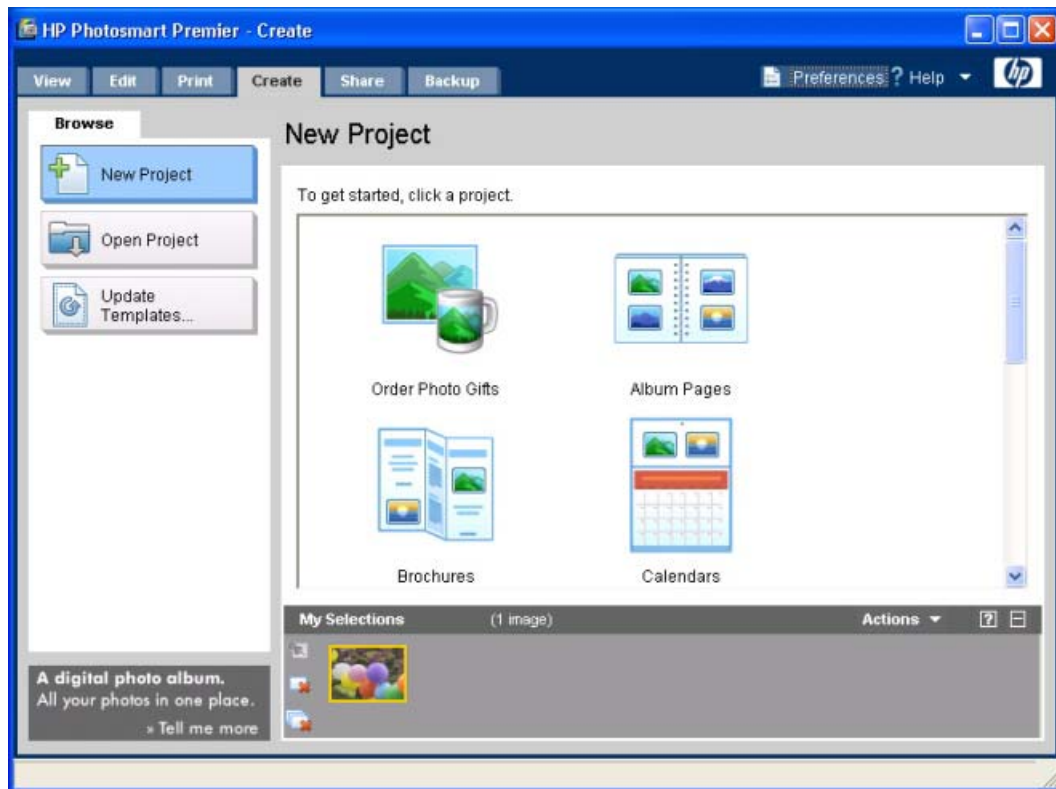


Figure 2-105 Create tab

- **Share.** Select the **Share** tab to share photos through e-mail, online albums, and for online photo-finishing through Snapfish.com, a service of HP.

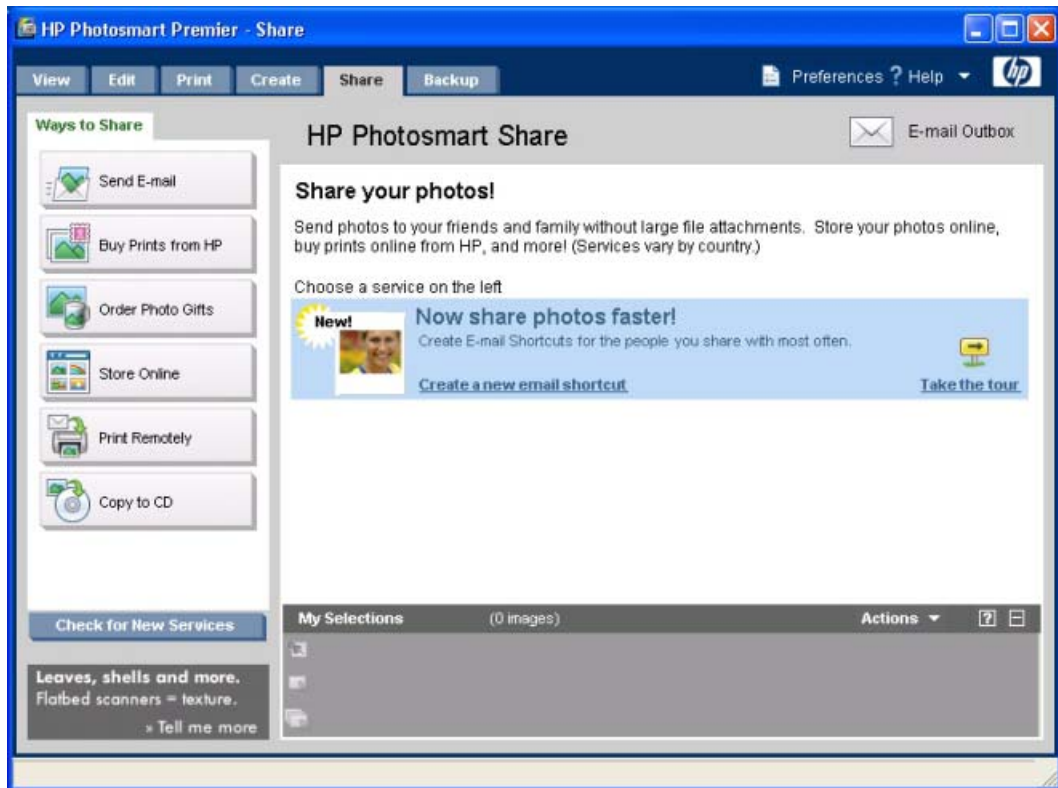


Figure 2-106 Share tab

- **Backup.** Use this tab to back up digital photographs and to burn them to a CD.

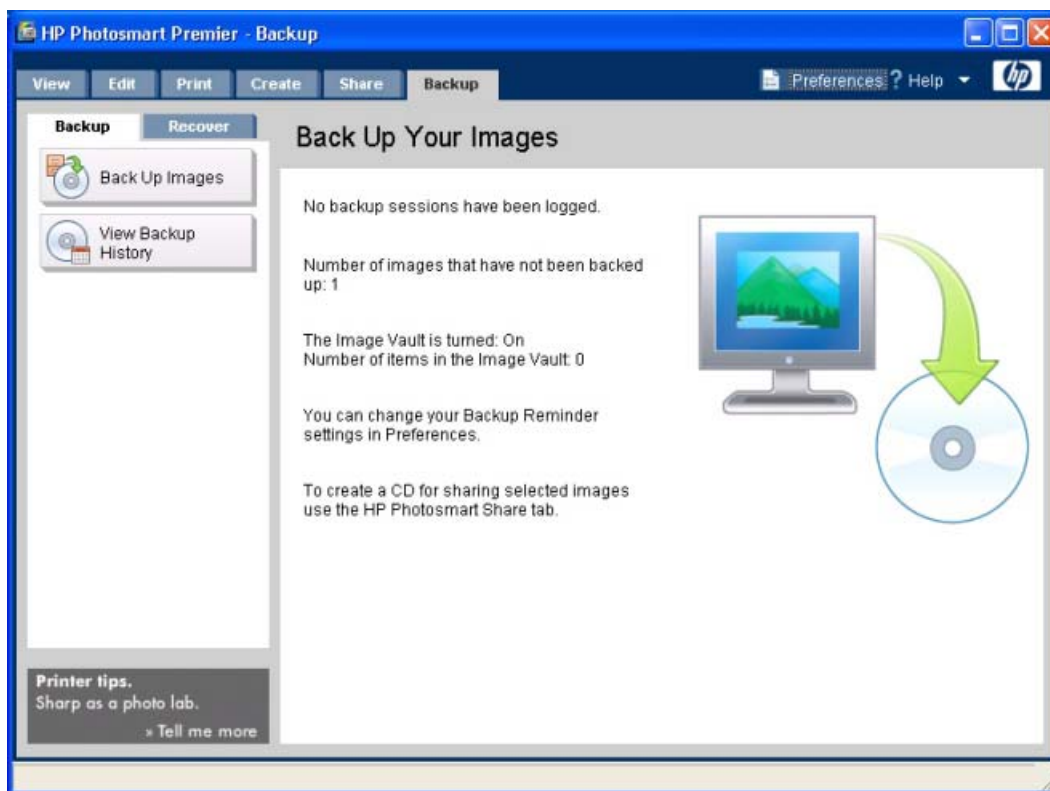


Figure 2-107 Backup tab

## HP Marketing Assistant



**NOTE** The HP Marketing Assistant might not be available in all countries/regions.

The HP Marketing Assistant is an optional software program that is included with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP on a separate CD.

The computer must have the following system requirements to use the HP Marketing Assistant software.

- Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, or Microsoft Windows XP x64
- Microsoft Word 2000 or later
- Internet Explorer 5.0 or above or Netscape Navigator 4.7 or above
- Some functionality requires internet access

Use the HP Marketing Assistant to create brochures, labels, stationery, and other marketing materials. The HP Marketing Assistant saves templates for documents and helps create them directly in Microsoft Word.

To start the HP Marketing Assistant, click **Start, Programs, HP,** and **HP Marketing Assistant.** Or double-click the **HP Marketing Assistant** icon on the desktop shortcut or click the **HP Marketing Assistant** link in the **Software** section of the HP Solution Center.

Consult the HP Marketing Assistant software CD for documentation and support information.

## Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS

Readiris Pro V11.0 converts scanned images into text that can be edited in word-processing programs. The user interface is localized into 21 languages. However, the software supports text-recognition in 123 languages. See [Readiris Pro V11.0 languages](#) for a list of languages.



**NOTE** Readiris Pro V11.0 supports text recognition in 2-byte Asian characters. You must have your operating system set up to display 2-byte characters in order to see the text.

When Readiris Pro V11.0 is installed on the computer, it appears as an option in the destination drop-down box in the HP Scan software. If you select **Readiris** as the destination, your image is scanned into .TIFF format and Readiris Pro V11.0 starts automatically to begin the text-recognition process.

For better text-recognition scanning results, start Readiris Pro V11.0 and scan directly into the program. Readiris Pro V11.0 automatically starts a wizard to help you through this process.

Readiris Pro V11.0 uses a separate installer that comes on a separate CD. The CD includes the base software along with the Middle-East and Asian options.

### Text-recognition software

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software has an integrated text-recognition feature. This feature is also known as optical character recognition, or OCR. Text-recognition capability is also provided by Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS.

#### About text-recognition reliability

Text-recognition software turns an image into computer-editable text by analyzing the image and defining the characters. The accuracy obtained through text-recognition software depends on the quality, size, and structure of the original document, and on the quality of the scan itself. To obtain the best possible results when using text-recognition software, use the following guidelines:

- Process only pages that contain 9-point text or larger.
- Limit pages that contain underlining, forms, graphics, rotated text, photographs, and handwriting.
- Scan images squarely.
- Make sure that the pages are free of extraneous marks.
- Maximize the scanning resolution.
- Process only pages that have crisp, clear text. Letters that have gaps, that "bleed" along their edges, or that touch other letters do not work well. Text that is aligned closely to nontext items, such as graphics, might also degrade text-recognition results.
- Fine-tune the amount of black and white on scanned images. See the user guide for information.
- Avoid scanning from thin media that has information printed on the back side. The information on the back can bleed through.

Even following these recommendations, less-than-perfect results might occur. This is because text-recognition technology itself is evolving and is still less than perfect.

# 3 Install Microsoft Windows printing-system components

## Introduction



**NOTE** This chapter covers information about the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software for Microsoft Windows. For information about Macintosh installations, see the [Macintosh](#) chapter.

Topics:

- [Installation overview](#)
- [Installation options](#)
- [Printing-system software installation](#)
- [Installing optional software](#)
- [Uninstall](#)

## Installation overview

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software for Microsoft Windows systems comes on three CDs. The first CD includes everything needed to access the features of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. The second CD includes the optional software program HP Marketing Assistant, and the third CD includes the optional software program Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS. For more information about these programs, see [HP Marketing Assistant](#) and [Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS](#).

The Setup program installs the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software from the CD onto the hard disk and updates Microsoft Windows files.

For all of the supported platforms, each install option presents a series of query dialog boxes to guide the installation process. The user provides information about the computer environment. The Installer guides through the installation, whether installation is for a directly-connected or networked product. At the end of the printing-system software installation, the option for installing additional software programs appears. These programs include HP Photosmart Premier and HP Document Viewer.



**NOTE** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software uses Microsoft USB printing support (USB00X) rather than DOT4 printing support.

## Recommended and Custom installations

In Microsoft Windows systems, the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software installer presents the user with the option of installing a **Recommended** installation or a **Custom** installation. If the user selects **Recommended**, the installer automatically checks the computer to see if it meets minimum system requirements. If the computer meets minimum system requirements, the installer performs a Recommended – Full installation. If the computer does not meet minimum system requirements, the installer performs a Recommended – Minimum installation. If the user selects **Custom**, the installer checks the computer and presents installation options based on whether the computer meets the minimum system requirements. Checking for system requirements is an automated process and is transparent to users. To see more information about system requirements, see [System requirements](#).

The following table shows the components that are installed for each installation type.

**Table 3-1** Installed software components by installation type

Component	Recommended – Full installation	Recommended – Minimum installation	Available through a Custom installation
HP PCL 6 Unidriver	X	X	X
HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software	X	X	X
Scan drivers (TWAIN and WIA)	X	X	
Mass storage driver	X	X	
HP Software Update	X	X	X
Screen fonts	X		
HP Customer Participation Program	X		X



**Table 3-1** Installed software components by installation type (continued)

HP ToolboxFX	X			
HP Embedded Web Server	X		X	
HP Solution Center	X			
HP Photosmart Premier (optional)	X		X	X
HP Marketing Assistant (optional)	X		X	X
HP Document Viewer (optional)	X		X	X
Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS (optional)	X		X	X

# Installation options

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software can be used with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP in the following configurations:

- **Direct Connection.** Install the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software on a computer that is directly connected to the product through a USB port, and that is running Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, or Microsoft Windows XP x64.

In this configuration, the MFP is not shared. A single user has complete physical control over the MFP and all of the MFP features are available.

- **Shared direct connection that uses Microsoft peer-to-peer networking.** Install the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software on a computer that is directly connected to the product through a USB port, and that is running Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, or Microsoft Windows XP x64. The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP can then be shared with other users on the network by using Microsoft Windows sharing.

When Microsoft Windows is used to share a local MFP over the network, the operating system handles all of the networking issues. The product prints in this configuration, but only the local computer can use the scanner or the HP ToolboxFX. All other users have access to only the print functions of the MFP. Also, because Microsoft peer-to-peer networking is unidirectional, network users do not receive printer-status messages when they print to the product.



**NOTE** HP does not support vending drivers across operating systems that have different print-driver architectures, such as HP Traditional drivers and HP Unidriver. To use a mix of operating systems, install an alternate print driver and download the driver for the specific operating system.

- **Network connection that uses onboard networking.** Install the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP printing-system software on a computer that has access to a local area network (LAN) to which the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP is also connected, and that is running Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, or Microsoft Windows XP x64. The HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP has onboard networking that connects to a LAN through a 10/100Base-T (RJ-45) port.

The following are required for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP to work on a LAN-based network connection.

- An installed network that uses the TCP/IP network protocol
- A cable for the type of network connection used (not included)



**NOTE** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP does not include on-board networking.

## Microsoft Windows installation for direct connections

Use the following instructions to install the product software on a computer that is running Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows XP x64, or Microsoft Windows Server 2003.



**NOTE** Set up and turn on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP before installing the printing-system software. Do not connect the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP to the computer until prompted by the software installation program.

**NOTE** Administrator privileges are required to install the printing-system software.

1. Quit all open programs.
2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive.



**NOTE** If the CD does not start automatically, click **Start**, click **Run**, and then browse to and double-click the AUTORUN.EXE file in the root directory of the CD.

3. Follow the onscreen prompts to install the software.
4. If prompted to restart the computer, click **Yes**.
5. When the installation is nearly complete, the **Finish** dialog box appears. Click **Finish** to finish the installation and print a test page.

## Install additional drivers with the Microsoft Add-Printer Wizard

To install the HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver or the PS Emulation Unidriver, use an Add-Printer-Wizard installation.

### Install the HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver or the PS Emulation Unidriver

1. Close all open programs on the computer.
2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system CD into the CD-ROM drive on the computer.



**NOTE** If the CD starts automatically, click **Exit** to exit the installation program.

3. Click **Start**, **Printers and Faxes**, and then double-click **Add Printer**.
4. Click **Next** on the **Welcome** screen.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions.
6. When prompted for a location of the driver, browse to the following location on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software CD:

<CD ROM drive>:\drivers\Win2000\_XP



**NOTE** When prompted to select a port for the new driver, select the same port that the HP PCL 6 Unidriver is installed on.

7. Choose either the HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver or the PS Emulation Unidriver to install.



**NOTE** Install one of these drivers at a time. To install both drivers, complete the Add Printer Wizard for the first driver, then perform steps 1–8 again for the second driver.

8. If prompted to restart the computer, click **Yes**.

## Microsoft Windows Installation for computers on a network

This section provides information about the following topics:

- [Network setup](#)
- [Microsoft Windows installation instructions for networked computers](#)

## Network setup

Set up, turn on, and connect the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP to the network before installing the software.



**NOTE** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP does not support network connections.

1. Connect the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP to the network.
2. Turn on the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.



**NOTE** If the power-up sequence is not completed in this order, the installer discovery utility fails to recognize the product. It can take a few minutes for the device to obtain a TCP/IP address.

3. To print a configuration page from the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP, press **Menu**. Press the **v** button until **Reports** appears on the control panel. Press the **OK** button. Press the **v** button until **Config report** appears on the control panel. Press the **OK** button.
4. To complete the product installation, install the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP software. Use the information from the test pages to specify the network variables during installation.

## Microsoft Windows installation instructions for networked computers

Each computer that has the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP software installed can use all of the product features that are available over a network connection.

To install the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP software on networked Microsoft Windows operating systems, use the following instructions:



**NOTE** Administrator privileges are required to install the software.

1. Quit all open programs.
2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP software CD into the CD-ROM drive.



**NOTE** If the CD-ROM does not start automatically, click **Start**, click **Run**, and then browse to and double-click the AUTORUN.EXE file in the root directory of the CD.

3. Click **Install software** and follow the onscreen prompts.
4. When prompted by the Installer software to select how the printer will be connected, select **Connected via the network**, and then click **Next**. Follow the onscreen instructions.
5. If prompted to restart the computer, click **Yes**.

6. After installation of the software, dialog boxes appear to print a test page, register the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP over the Web, and install optional software.

## Setting up Microsoft Windows-sharing (peer-to-peer networking)

This section contains instructions for using Microsoft Windows-sharing to make the product available to network users when the product is directly connected to a computer.



**NOTE** This document outlines the procedures for sharing a MFP that uses Microsoft Windows Sharing (Peer-to-Peer networking). If these procedures are not successful, contact Microsoft at the following Web site: [www.microsoft.com](http://www.microsoft.com). HP does not support Peer-to-Peer networking, as the feature is a function of Microsoft operating systems and not of the HP drivers.

**NOTE** In Windows-sharing, the person who uses the computer that is directly connected to the product can allow other users on the network to print to the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

When the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP is shared, install the drivers on all of the computers that will print to the MFP.

## Setting up the host computer running Microsoft Windows 2000

At the computer that is directly connected to the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, perform the following steps.

1. Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. In the printer list, right-click the icon for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, and then click **Sharing**.
3. On the **Sharing** tab, click the **Share As** option button, and then type a name for the product in the **Share Name** field. Click **OK**.



**NOTE** The **Share Name** must be a maximum of 8 characters.

## Setting up the host computer running Microsoft Windows XP or Microsoft Windows Server 2003

At the computer that is directly connected to the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, perform the following steps.

1. Click **Start**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.
2. In the printer list, right-click the icon for HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, and then click **Sharing**.
3. On the **Sharing** tab, click the **Share this printer** option button, and then type a name for the product in the **Share Name** field. Click **OK**.

4. Click the **Ports** tab. Click to clear the **Enable bidirectional support** check box, and then click **OK**.

## Setting up the client computers

After setting up the host computer to share the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, the next step is to configure the client computers. Perform the following steps at all the other network computers that will use the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

### Setting up client computers running Microsoft Windows 2000

1. Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Double-click the **Add Printer** icon to open the **Add Printer** wizard.
3. Click **Next** to start the wizard.
4. Click the **Network Printer** option button, and then click **Next**.
5. Type in the path and share name of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.



**NOTE** Or click **Browse** and navigate to find the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

6. Click **Next**.
7. Click **Yes** or **No** when prompted to use this MFP as the default printer for Microsoft Windows-based programs, and then click **Next**.
8. Click **Finish** to complete the installation and close the **Add Printer** wizard.



**NOTE** You might need the product software CD to complete the print-driver installations.

### Setting up client computers running Microsoft Windows XP or Microsoft Windows Server 2003

1. Click **Start**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.
2. In the column to the left, under **Printer Tasks**, click **Add a printer** to open the **Add Printer** wizard.
3. Click **Next** to start the wizard.
4. Click the **A network printer or a printer attached to another computer** option button, and then click **Next**.
5. Type the path and share name of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP  
- OR -

Click **Browse** and navigate to find the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

Click **Next**.

6. Click **Yes** or **No** when prompted to use this MFP as the default printer for Microsoft Windows-based programs, and then click **Next**.
7. Click **Finish** to complete the installation and close the **Add Printer** wizard.

## Install the print driver only



**NOTE** If a port is not available for installation, create a port, click **Have Disk**, and insert the printing-system software CD that came with the product.

1. From the **Start** menu, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers** (Microsoft Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows XP x64, and Microsoft Windows Server 2003).
2. Double-click **Add Printer**, and then click **Next**.
3. When asked if the product is a local or network printer, select local, and then click **Next**.



**NOTE** Use of a local port is recommended, if it is available. If no local port is available, create a new port.

**NOTE** When prompted to select a port for the new driver, select the same port that the HP PCL 6 Unidriver is installed on.

4. You might need to first select the printer from the list of printers or type a TCP/IP address. If the print driver is not available, the **Add Printer Wizard** dialog box appears. Click **Have Disk** on the wizard screen.
5. Insert the CD into the drive.
6. To install the HP PCL 6 Unidriver, navigate to the root folder of the CD (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive) and click **OK**. The Install Printer Software dialog box appears. Select the driver for the product and click **OK**.
7. Complete the installation. A test page prints. Check the test page to ensure that the print driver is installed correctly.

# Printing-system software installation

This section contains information about the following topics:

- [Animated Getting Started Guide](#)
- [Printing-system software installation for Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP](#)
- [Printing-system software installation for Microsoft Windows Server 2003](#)

## Animated Getting Started Guide

When you insert the printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive, the Animated Getting Started Guide starts automatically.



**NOTE** If the Animated Getting Started Guide does not start automatically, click **Start, Run**, type `X://autorun.exe` (where X is the letter of the CD drive), and then click **OK**.

The **Begin Setup** screen appears, as shown in the following illustration.



**Figure 3-1** Animated Getting Started Guide – Begin Setup screen

Click **Begin Setup** to initiate a series of screens that show how to prepare the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP for software installation. Click the arrows in the lower-right corner of the screen to view animated illustrations of each step.

Click **Index** to see a list of setup topics in the Animated Getting Started Guide. Or if the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP has already been set up or is already installed on a network, click **Install Software** to install the print drivers and other software features.

When setup is complete, the **Install Software** screen appears.





Figure 3-2 Install Software screen

## Printing-system software installation for Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP



**NOTE** HP recommends that you install the software before connecting the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP to the computer (software-first installation). These instructions are for a software-first installation.

Use these instructions the first time you install the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software.

The following sections describe the dialog box options that appear during the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software installation on Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP operating systems.

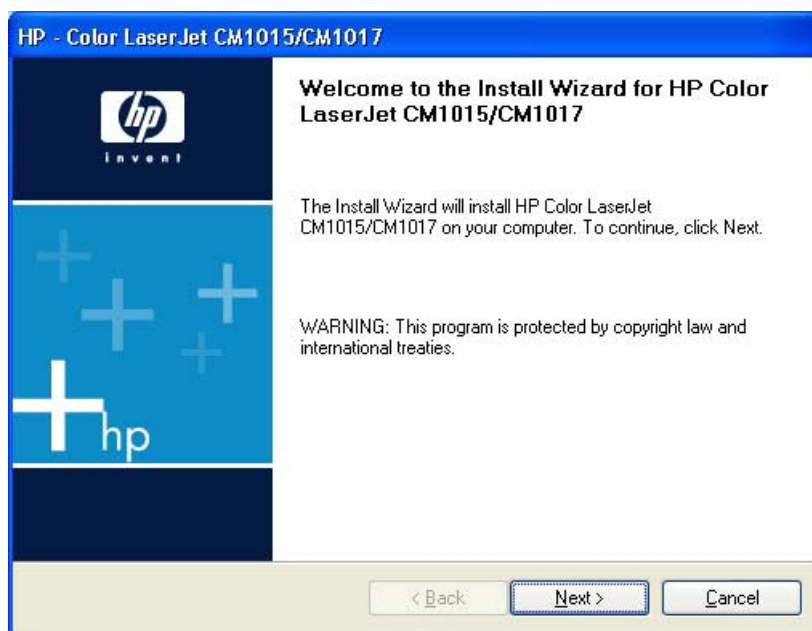


**NOTE** In the installation sequences described in this section, the product name HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP represents the specific HP LaserJet MFP that is installing.

### USB installation dialog box options for Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP



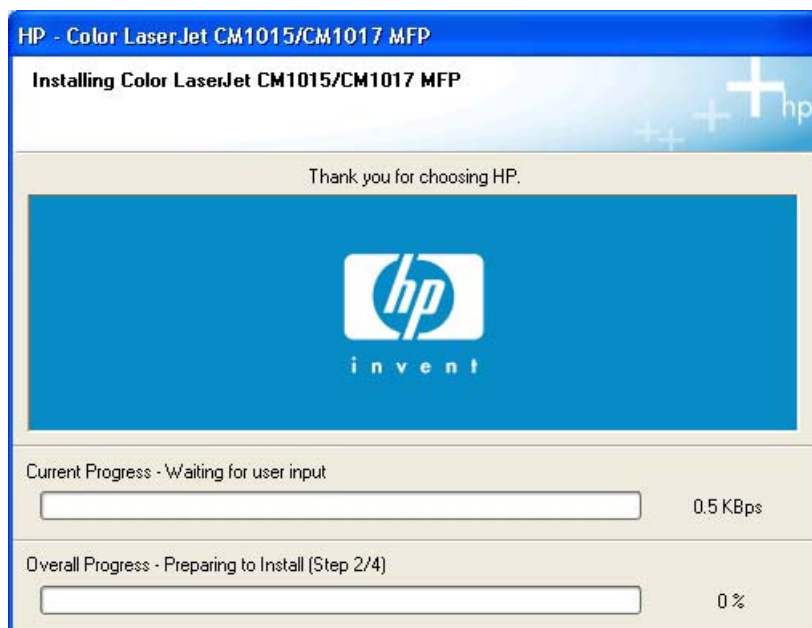
**NOTE** Click **Cancel** on any screen in the installation sequence to stop the installation. Click **Back** to return to the previous screen.



**Figure 3-3** USB install – Welcome to the Install Wizard dialog box

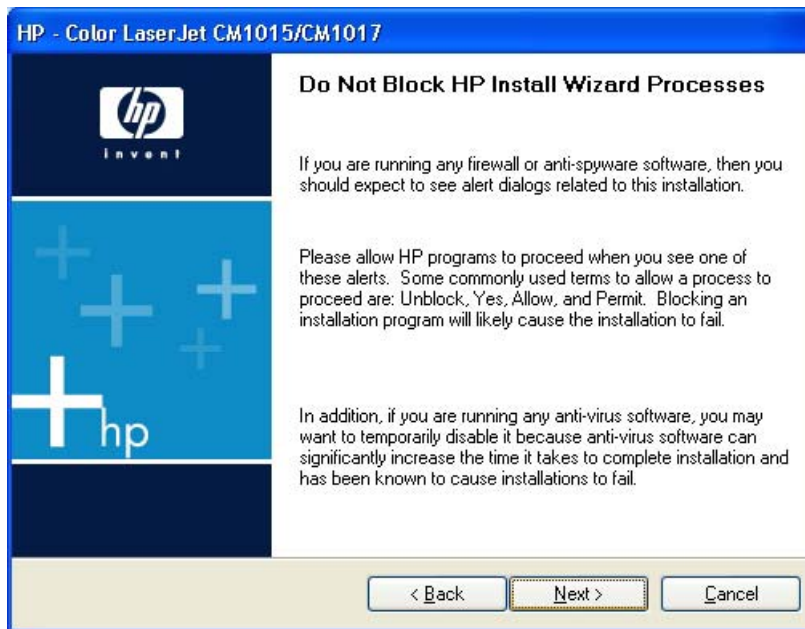
Click **Next** to continue.

Between dialog boxes, a **Current Progress** screen appears. This screen shows the progress of the installation and provides information about the number of subtasks that have been completed in each step. The screen disappears, and a new dialog box appears giving the next option in the installation sequence.



**Figure 3-4** USB install – Sample screen showing current progress

The **Do Not Block HP Install Wizard Processes** dialog box appears next. This dialog box appears even if a firewall is not in place on the computer.

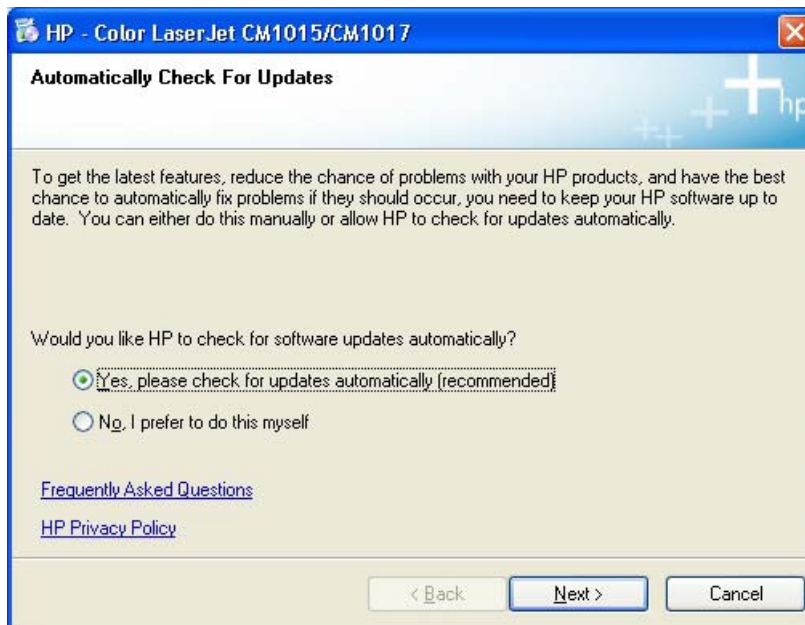


**Figure 3-5** USB install – **Do Not Block HP Install Wizard Processes** dialog box

Click **Next** to open the **Automatically check for updates** dialog box.



**NOTE** The **Automatically check for updates** dialog box appears only if the installer detects that a internet connection is available.



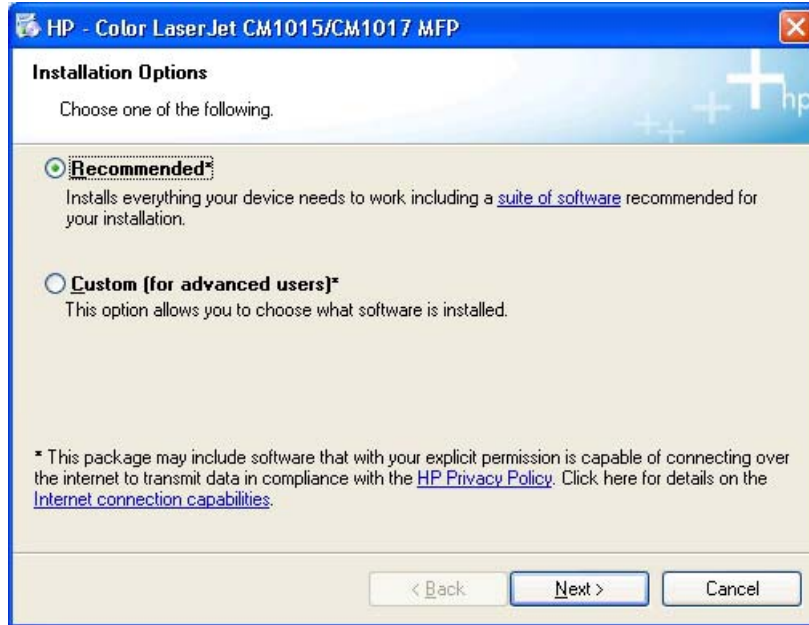
**Figure 3-6** USB install – **Automatically check for updates** dialog box

If Web access is available, click **Yes** to check for installation updates for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. This step is optional.

Click the following links to open a screen that provides further information:

- **Frequently Asked Questions**
- **HP Privacy Policy**

Click **No** and then **Next** to continue the installation without checking for installation updates.

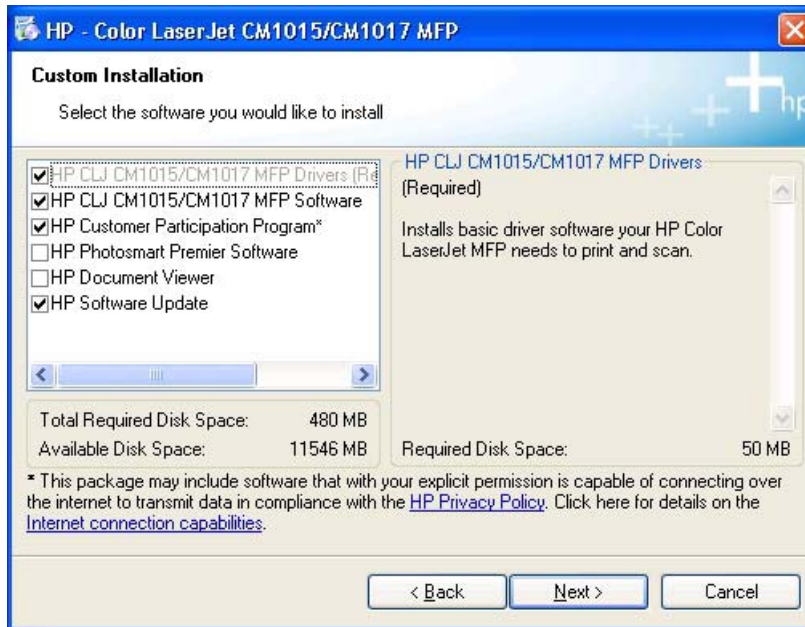


**Figure 3-7** USB install – Installation options dialog box

Clicking **Recommended** causes the installer to automatically check the computer to see if it meets minimum system requirements. If the computer meets minimum system requirements, the installer performs a Recommended – Full installation. If the computer does not meet minimum system requirements, the installer performs a Recommended – Minimum installation. Click **Next** to go to the **License Agreement** dialog box.

Clicking **Custom** causes the installer to check the computer and present installation options in the **Custom Installation** dialog box. based on whether the computer meets the minimum system requirements. Click **Next** to go to the **Custom Installation** dialog box.

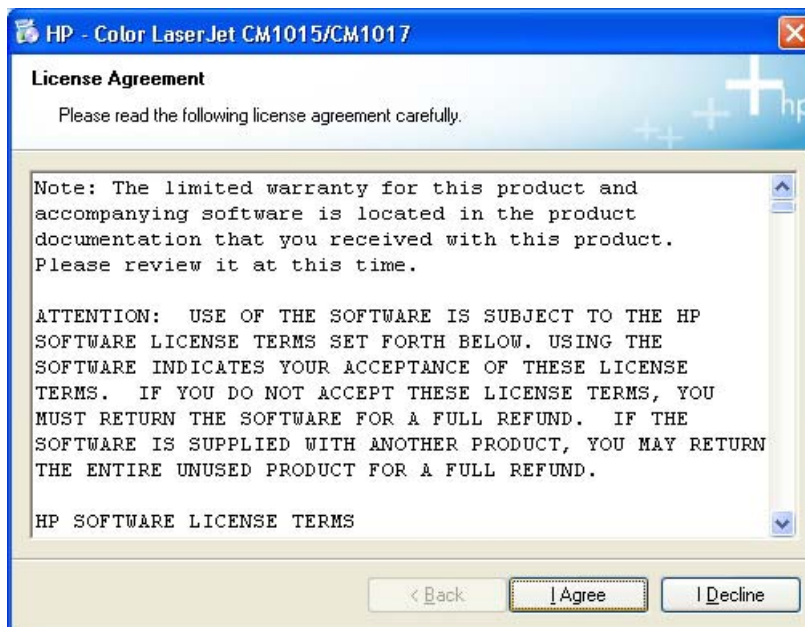
Checking for system requirements is an automated process and is transparent to users. To see more information about system requirements, see [System requirements](#). To see a list of the components that are installed for each type of installation see [Installation options](#).



**Figure 3-8** USB install – **Custom Installation** dialog box

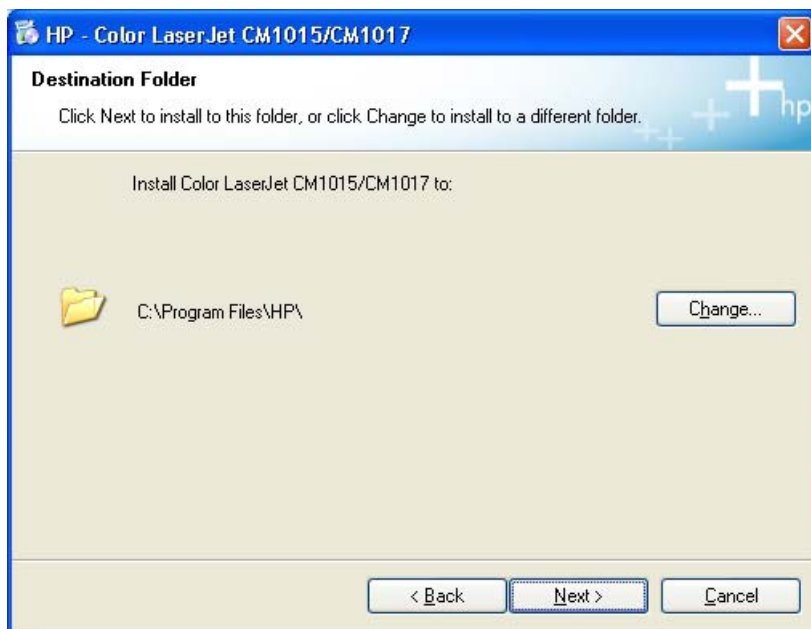
Click to select the software components to be installed. The **HP CLJ CM1015/CM1017 MFP Drivers** check box is selected by default and is the only required component for a custom installation.

Click **Next** to go to the **License Agreement** dialog box.



**Figure 3-9** USB install – **License Agreement** dialog box

Click **I Agree** to continue the installation. The **Destination Folder** dialog box appears.

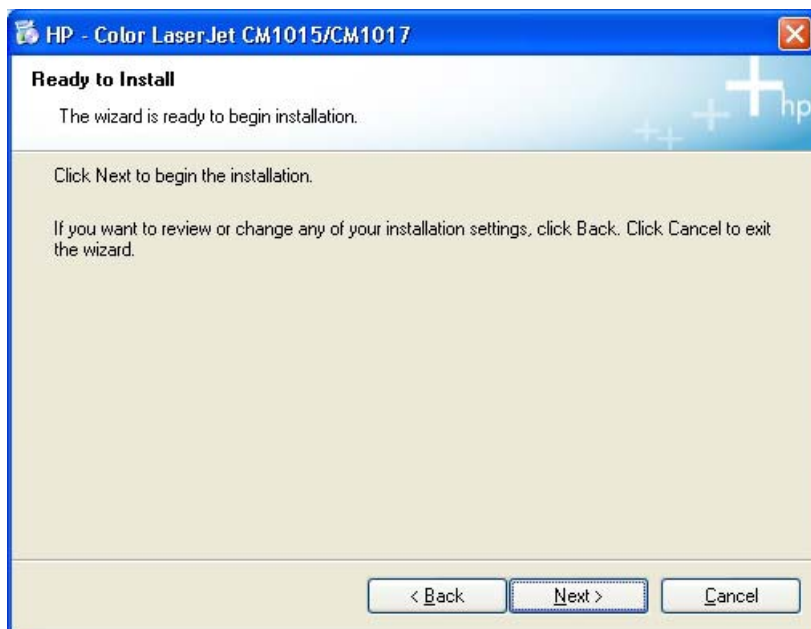


**Figure 3-10** USB install – **Destination Folder** dialog box

The **Destination Folder** dialog box shows where the printing-system software files are installed. The default option creates an **HP** program group. Access the program group by clicking **Start** and then **Programs**.

To change the location of the files to be installed, click the **Change** button and navigate to the new location, and then click **OK**.

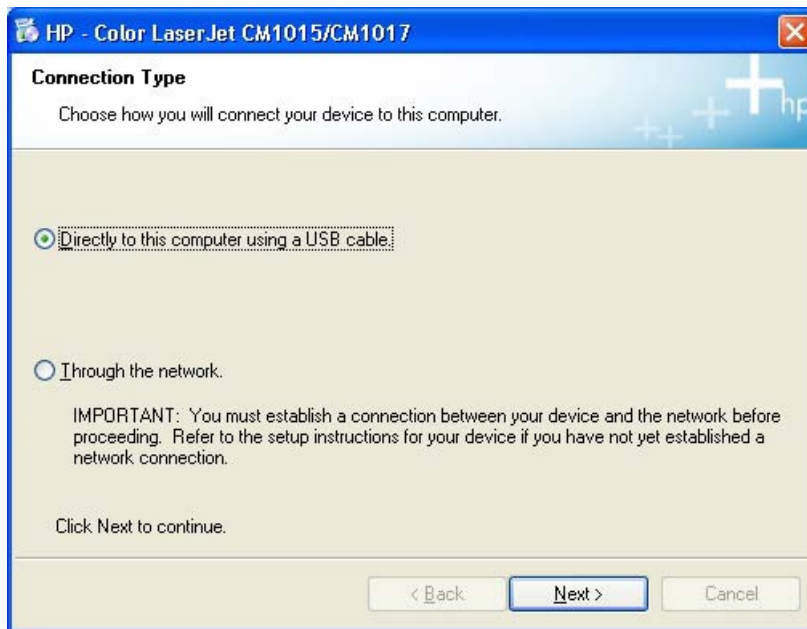
Click **Next** to go to the **Ready to Install** dialog box.



**Figure 3-11** USB install – **Ready to Install** dialog box

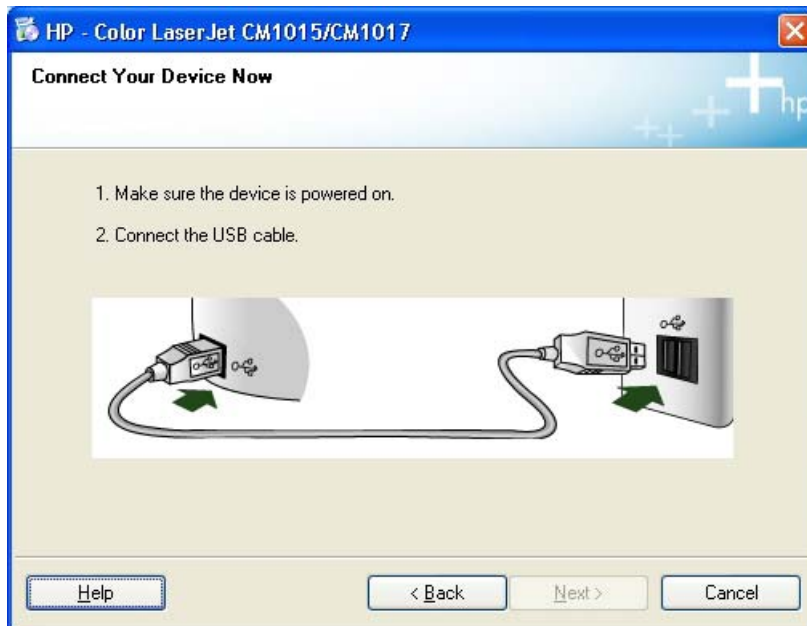
Click **Next** to continue. The **Connection Type** dialog box appears.





**Figure 3-12** USB install – **Connection Type** dialog box

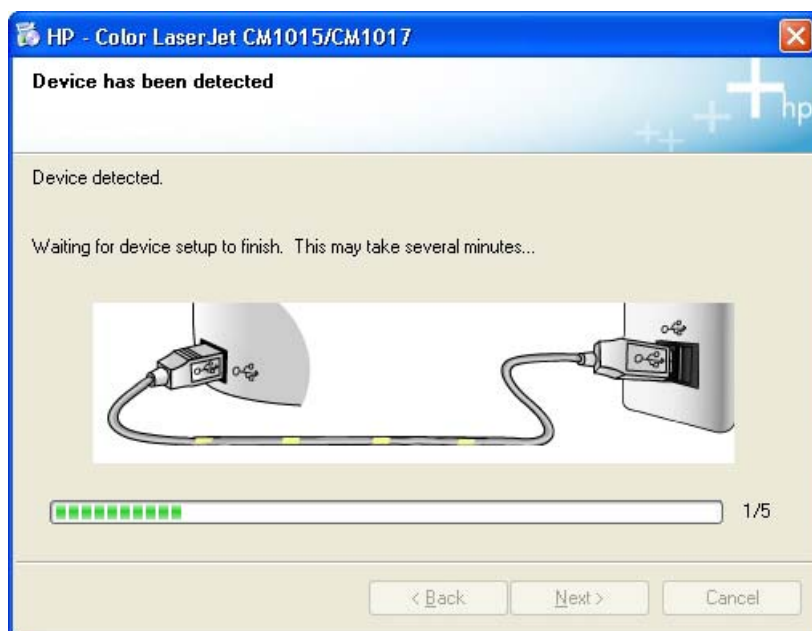
Click **Directly to this computer using a USB cable** (a "direct connection"), and then click **Next**. The **Connect Your Device Now** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-13** USB install – **Connect Your Device Now** dialog box

When the **Connect to your Device Now** screen appears, make sure that the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP is turned on. Then attach the USB cable to the computer and to the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

The **Next** button is enabled when the USB connection is complete. Click it to continue the installation.



**Figure 3-14** USB install – **Device has been detected** dialog box

The **Device has been detected** dialog box appears. After the progress bar fills, the **Next** button is enabled, the dialog box changes to show the product has been successfully connected.



**Figure 3-15** USB install – **Device has been detected – Product connected successfully!** dialog box

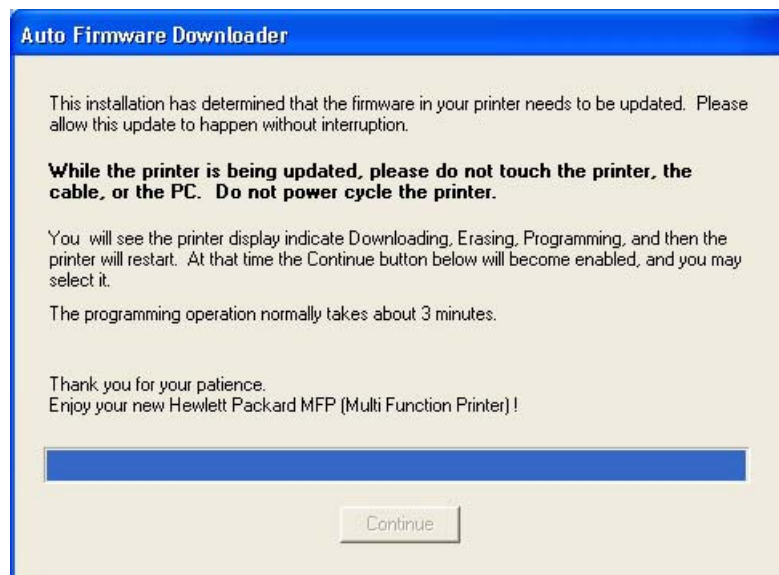
Click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Congratulations** dialog box appears.

The Auto Firmware Downloader feature of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software installer checks the device firmware at this point in the installation. If the firmware on the HP Color



LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software CD is newer than the firmware on the MFP, the **Auto Firmware Downloader** dialog box appears.

If the firmware on the MFP is already up-to-date, the **Connect Your Device Now** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-16** USB install – **Auto Firmware Downloader** dialog box



**WARNING!** Do not touch the printer, the printer cable, or the computer during the firmware update.

The firmware update process takes about 3 minutes. During this time, the MFP control panel displays several messages and then restarts the MFP.

When the firmware update process is complete, the **Continue** button becomes available. Click it to go to the **Restart** dialog box.



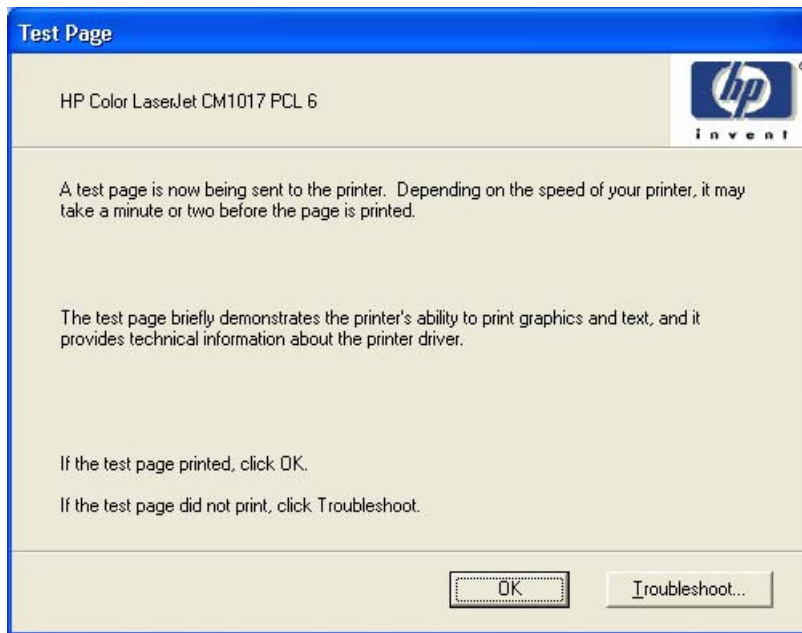
**Figure 3-17** USB install – **Restart** dialog box

Click **Restart** to restart the computer and continue with the installation. After the computer restarts, the **Congratulations! Software installation complete** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-18** USB install – **Congratulations! Software installation complete** dialog box

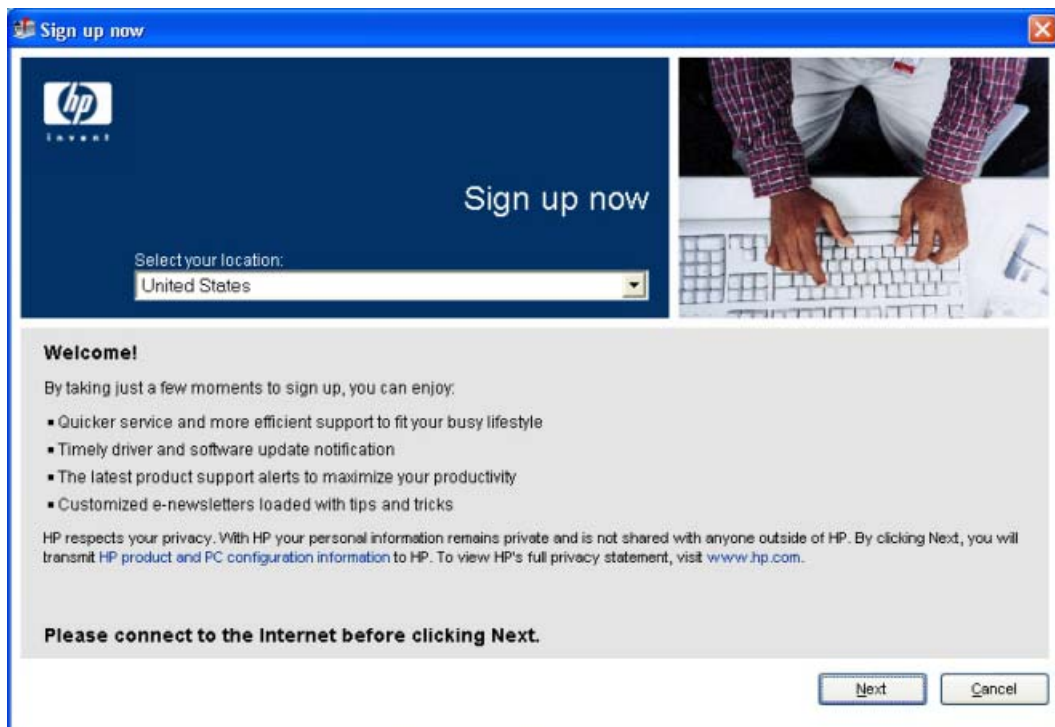
Click **Finish** to continue.



**Figure 3-19** USB install – **Test Page** dialog box

The **Test Page** dialog box indicates that a test page is being sent to the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. If the test page prints successfully, click **OK**. If the test page fails to print, click **Troubleshoot** to get help troubleshooting the problem.

The **Sign Up Now** screen appears.



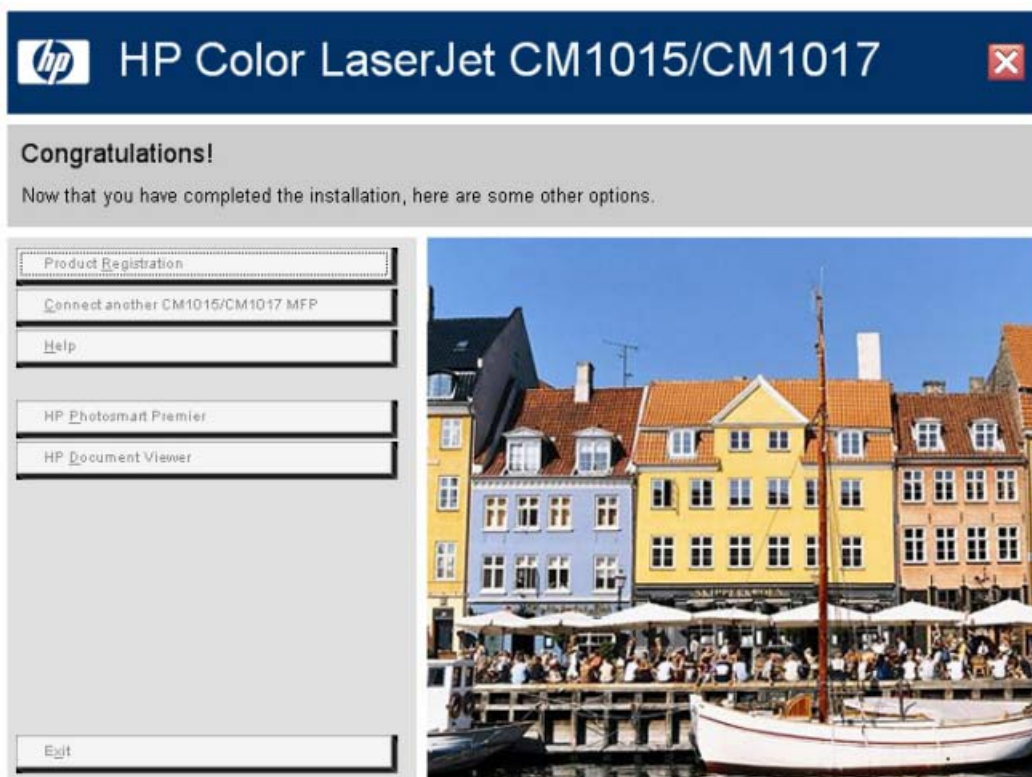
**Figure 3-20** Sign Up Now screen

If Web access is available, sign up to receive information from HP by following instructions on the **Sign Up Now** screen. Click **Next** to open the **HP Registration** Web page. Follow the onscreen instructions to register.

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Sign up now" with a blue header bar. Below the header is a navigation bar with "Back", "Forward", "Stop", "Refresh", and "Home" buttons. The main content area has a "United States-English" language selector in the top right. A "» HP Home" link is in the top left. Below this is a "» Contact HP" link and a search bar. The HP logo and "HP Registration Welcome" text are prominently displayed. A sidebar on the left lists "» HP Registration" with sub-links: "» Your user profile", "» Product registration", "» Subscriber's Choice", and "» Frequently asked questions". A central image of a smiling man is shown. To the right, a "Register today with HP to" section lists benefits: "Access support and services...", "Manage your profile...", and "Sign up for free support alerts...". Below this, the "HP registration" section is divided into two columns. The left column, "I am a new visitor", asks for "Country / Region" (with a dropdown menu showing "UNITED STATES") and has a "Register »" button. The right column, "I am a returning visitor", says "Welcome back. Please sign in." and has fields for "User ID" and "Password", with a "Sign-in »" button. Links for "Forgot your User ID?" and "Forgot your password?" are also present. The footer contains links for "Privacy statement", "Using this site means you accept its terms", and "Feedback to the webmaster", along with the copyright notice "© 2006 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.".

**Figure 3-21** HP Registration screen

After completing the registration option, the **Other Options** dialog box appears



**Figure 3-22** USB install – **Other options** dialog box

The **Other Options** dialog box appears after the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP installation has been completed.

Click **Product Registration** to register your product on the HP Web site.

Click **Connect another CM1015/CM1017 MFP** to connect another HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP to the computer.

Click Help to launch the online **Help** system.

Click **HP PhotoSmart Premier** or **HP Document Viewer** to install these software packages. For more information about the installation steps for these software packages, see [Installing optional software](#).

Click **Exit** to close the installer window.

### **Network installation dialog box options for Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP (HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP only)**

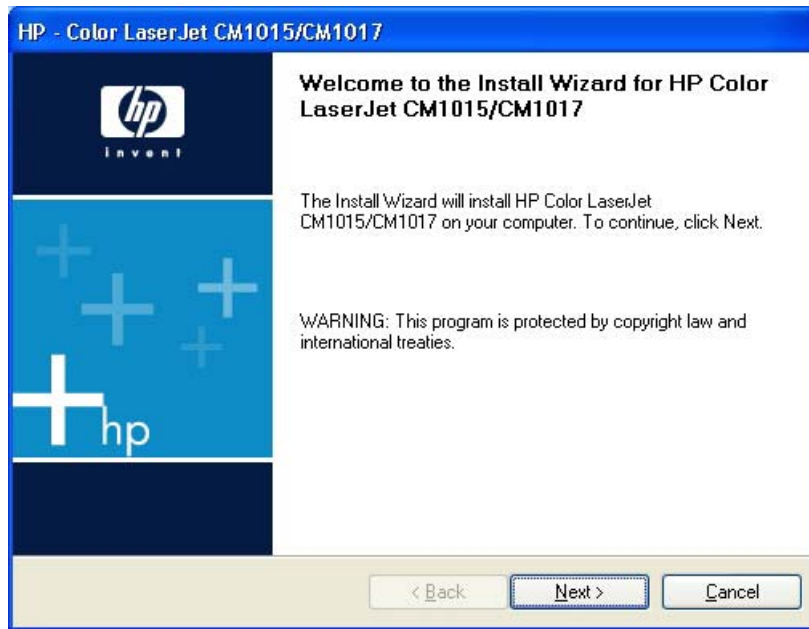
This section shows the dialog boxes that appear when installing the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP over a network connection.

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP does not support network connections.

Click the **Back** button, on any dialog box where it appears, to return to the dialog box. Click the **Cancel** button, on any dialog box where it appears, to cancel the installation.



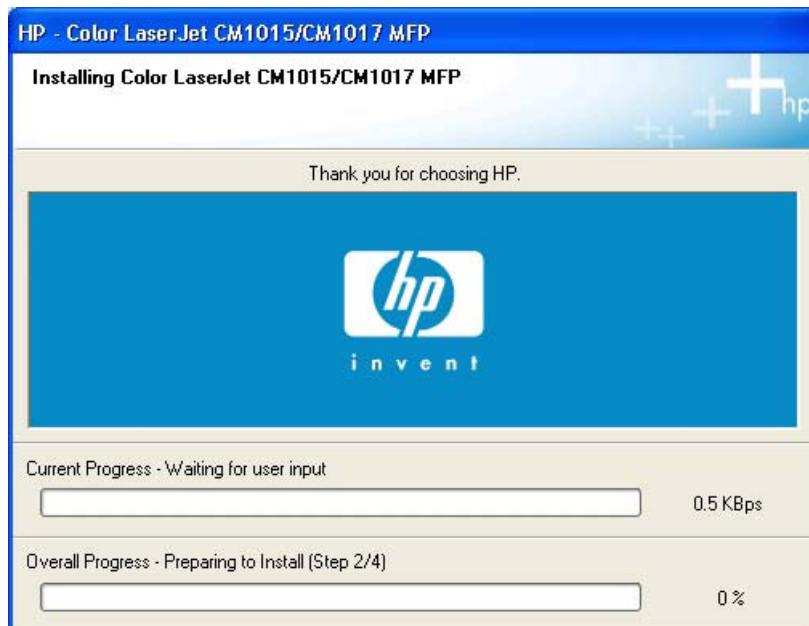
**NOTE** The sequence of dialog boxes might differ from what is shown here, depending on the product, the network configuration, and the options that selected.



**Figure 3-23** Network install — **Welcome** dialog box

Click **Next** to continue.

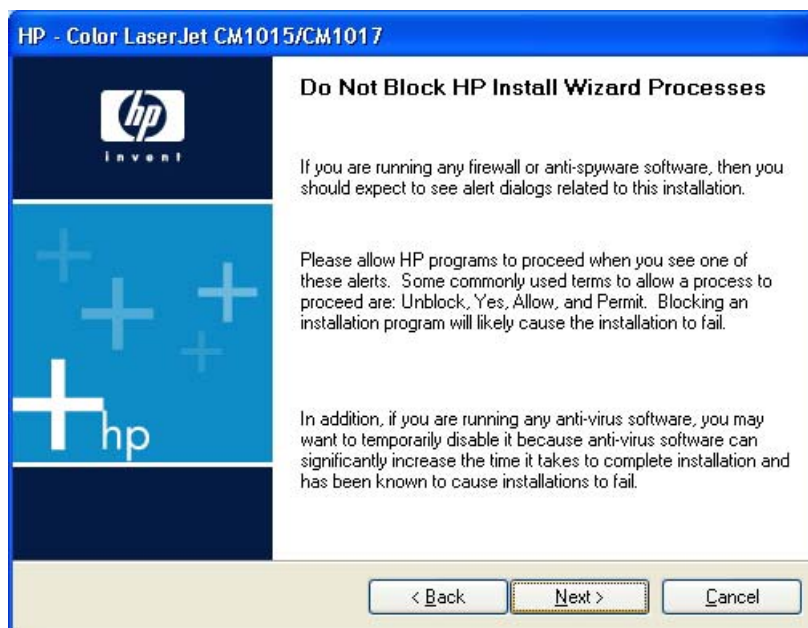
Between dialog boxes, a **Current Progress** screen appears. This screen shows the progress of the installation and provides information about the number of subtasks that have been completed in each step. The screen disappears, and a new dialog box appears giving the next option in the installation sequence.



**Figure 3-24** Network install – Sample screen showing current progress



The **Do Not Block HP Install Wizard Processes** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-25** Network install – **Do Not Block HP Install Wizard Processes** dialog box

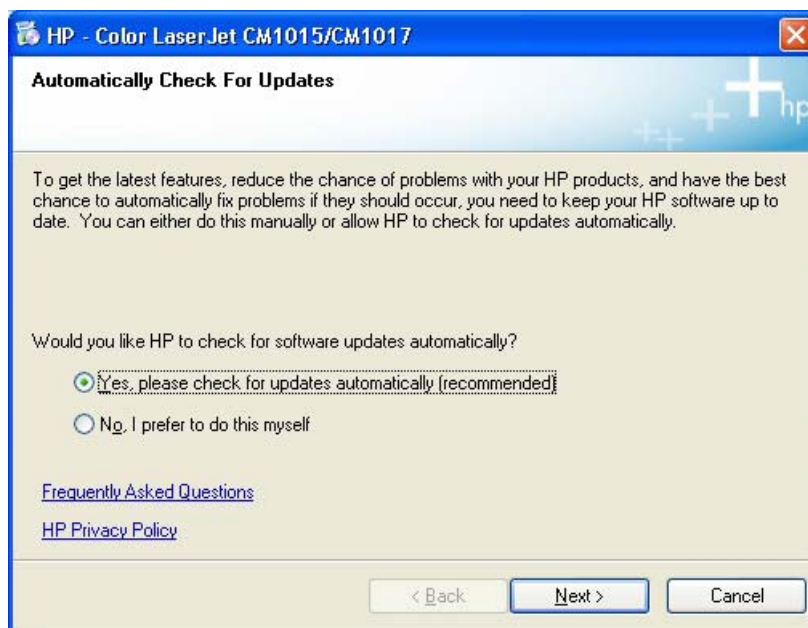


**NOTE** The **Do Not Block HP Install Wizard Processes** dialog box appears regardless of whether a firewall is present.

Click **Next** to open the **Automatically check for updates** dialog box.



**NOTE** The **Automatically check for updates** dialog box appears only if the installer detects that an Internet connection is available.



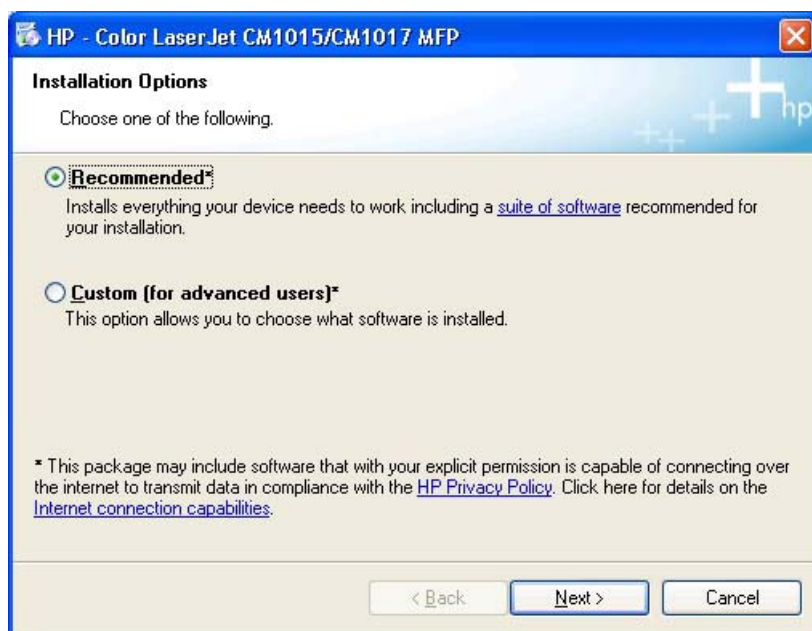
**Figure 3-26** Network install – **Automatically check for updates** dialog box

If Web access is available, click **Yes** to check for installation updates for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP. This step is optional.

Click the following links to open a screen that provides further information:

- **Frequently Asked Questions**
- **HP Privacy Policy**

Click **No** and then **Next** to continue the installation without checking for installation updates.



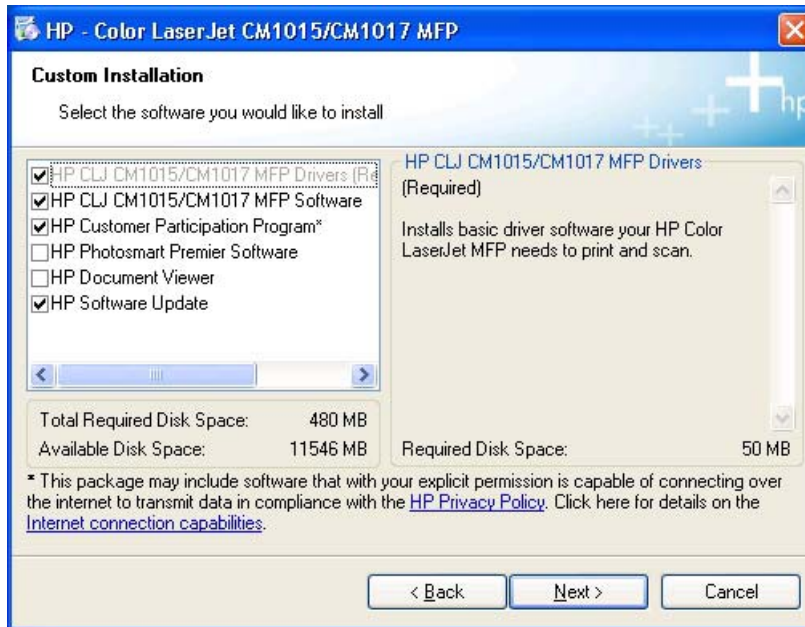
**Figure 3-27** Network install – **Installation options** dialog box

Clicking **Recommended** causes the installer to automatically check the computer to see if it meets minimum system requirements. If the computer meets minimum system requirements, the installer performs a Recommended – Full installation. If the computer does not meet minimum system requirements, the installer performs a Recommended – Minimum installation. Click **Next** to go to the **License Agreement** dialog box.

Clicking **Custom** causes the installer to check the computer and present installation options in the **Custom Installation** dialog box. based on whether the computer meets the minimum system requirements. Click **Next** to go to the **Custom Installation** dialog box.

Checking for system requirements is an automated process and is transparent to users. To see more information about system requirements, see [System requirements](#). To see a list of the components that are installed for each type of installation see [Installation options](#).

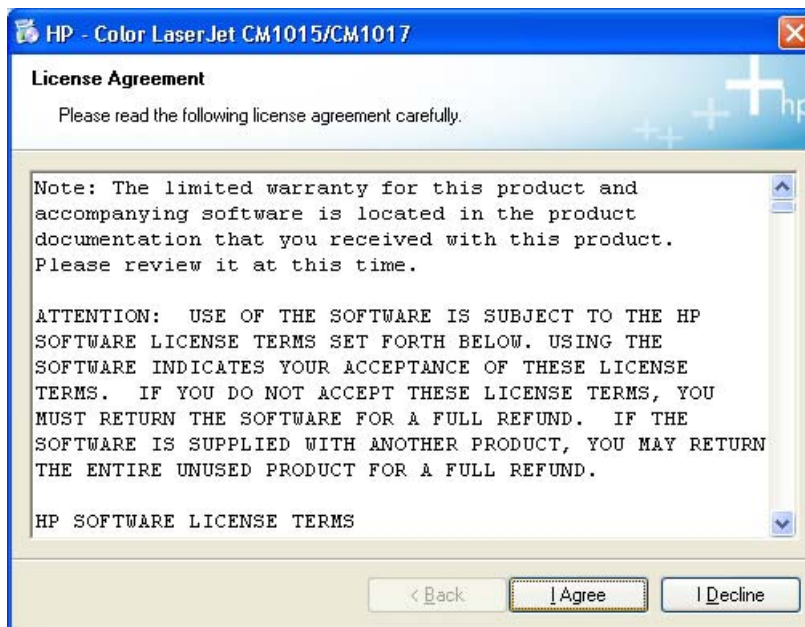




**Figure 3-28** Network install – Custom Installation dialog box

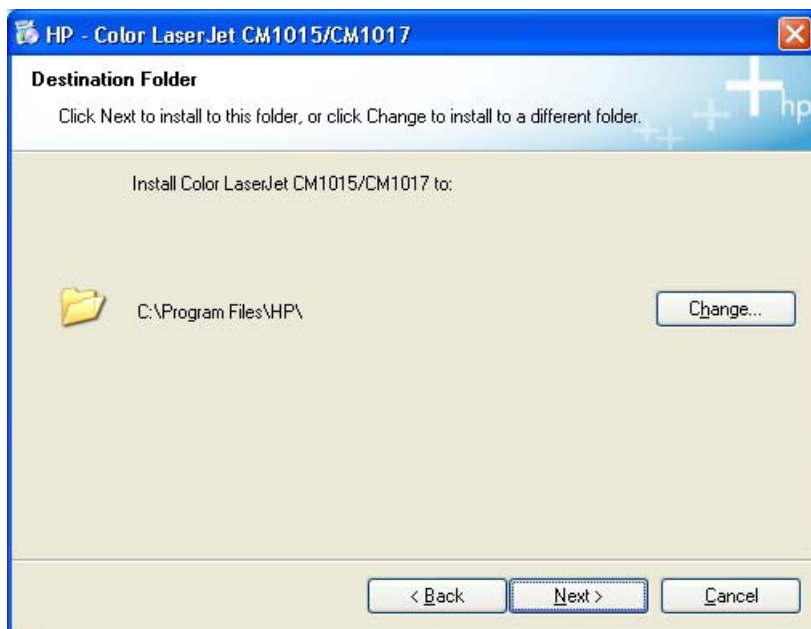
Click to select the software components to be installed. The **HP CLJ CM1015/CM1017 MFP Drivers** check box is selected by default and is the only required component for a custom installation.

Click **Next** to go to the **License Agreement** dialog box.



**Figure 3-29** Network install – License Agreement dialog box

Click **I Agree** to continue the installation. The **Destination Folder** dialog box appears.

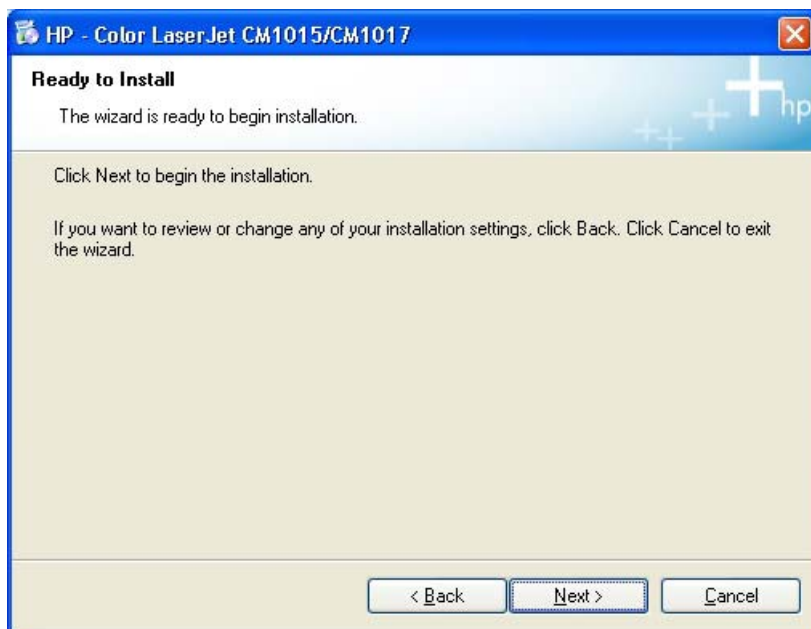


**Figure 3-30** Network install – **Destination Folder** dialog box

The **Destination Folder** dialog box shows where the printing-system software files are installed. The default option creates an **HP** program group. Access the program group by clicking **Start** and then **Programs**.

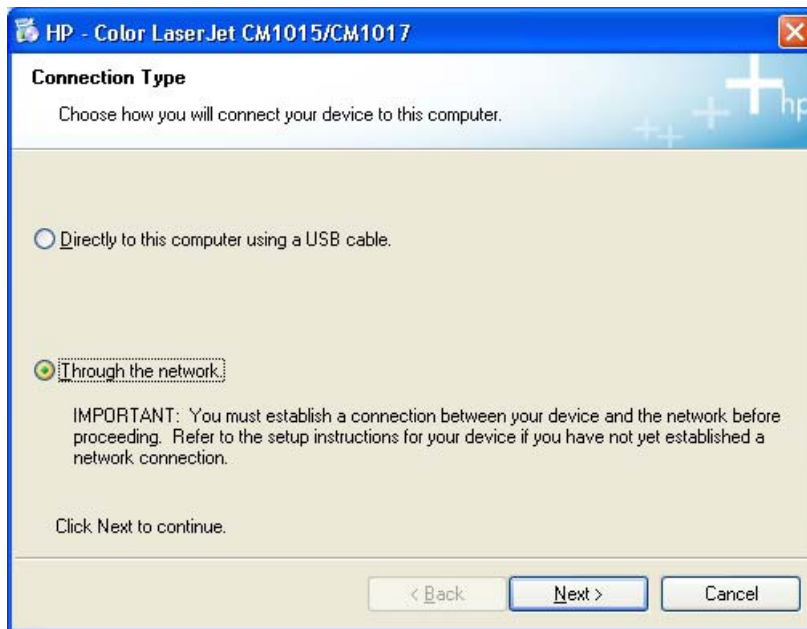
To change the location of the files to be installed, click the **Change** button and navigate to the new location, and then click **OK**.

Click **Next** to go to the **Ready to Install** dialog box.



**Figure 3-31** Network install – **Ready to Install** dialog box

Click **Next** to continue. The **Connection Type** dialog box appears.

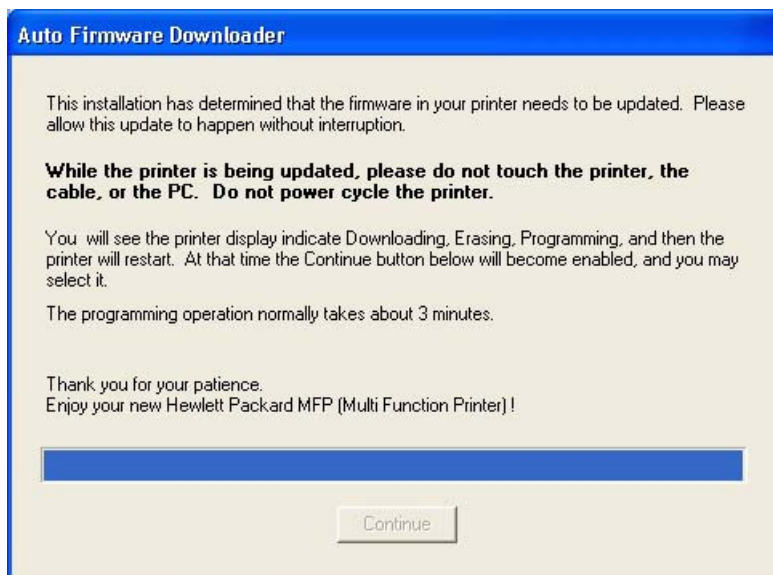


**Figure 3-32** Network install – **Connection Type** dialog box

Select **Through the Network** option, and then click **Next** to continue the installation.

The Auto Firmware Downloader feature of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software installer checks the device firmware at this point in the installation. If the firmware on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software CD is newer than the firmware on the MFP, the **Auto Firmware Downloader** dialog box appears.

If the firmware on the MFP is already up-to-date, the **Identify Printer** dialog box appears.



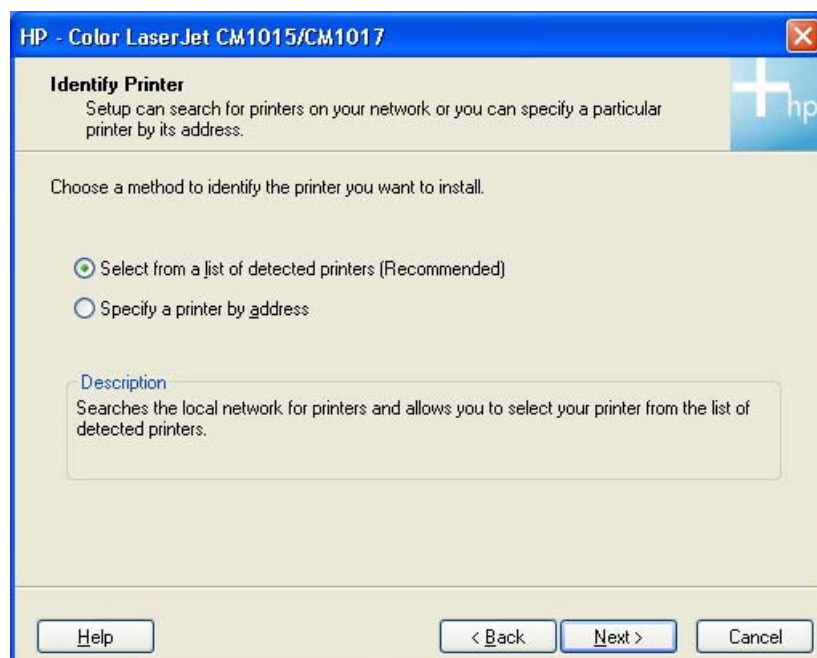
**Figure 3-33** Network install – **Auto Firmware Downloader** dialog box



**WARNING!** Do not touch the printer, the printer cable, or the computer during the firmware update.

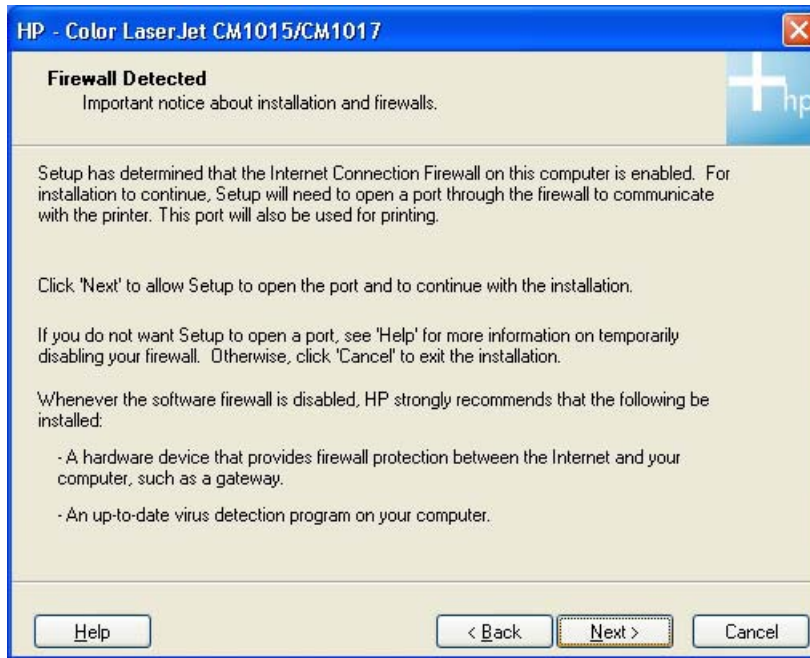
The firmware update process takes about 3 minutes. During this time, the MFP control panel displays several messages and then restarts the MFP.

When the firmware update process is complete, the **Continue** button becomes available. Click it to go to the **Identify Printer** dialog box.



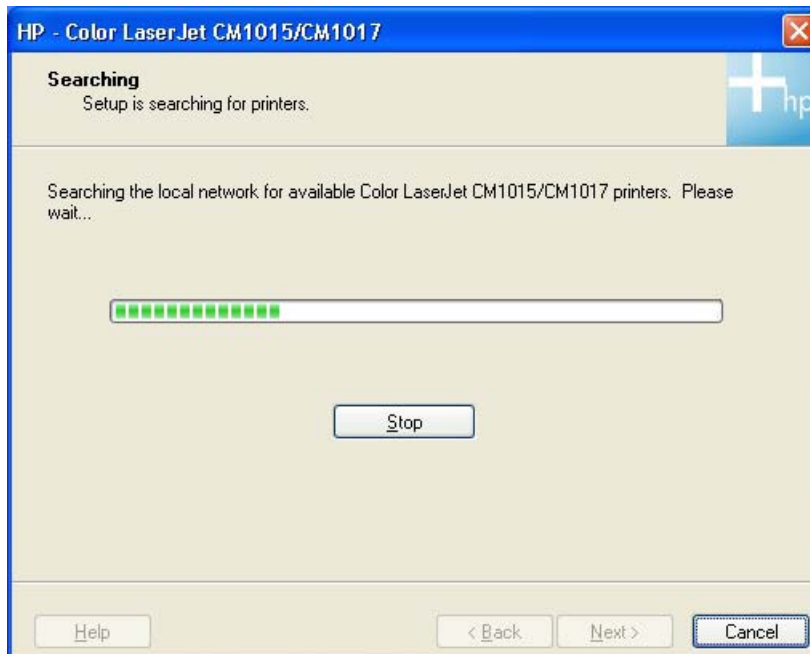
**Figure 3-34** Network install – **Identify Printer** dialog box

If you select **Search from a list of detected printers (Recommended)** and the computer has a firewall installed, the **Firewall Detected** dialog box appears.



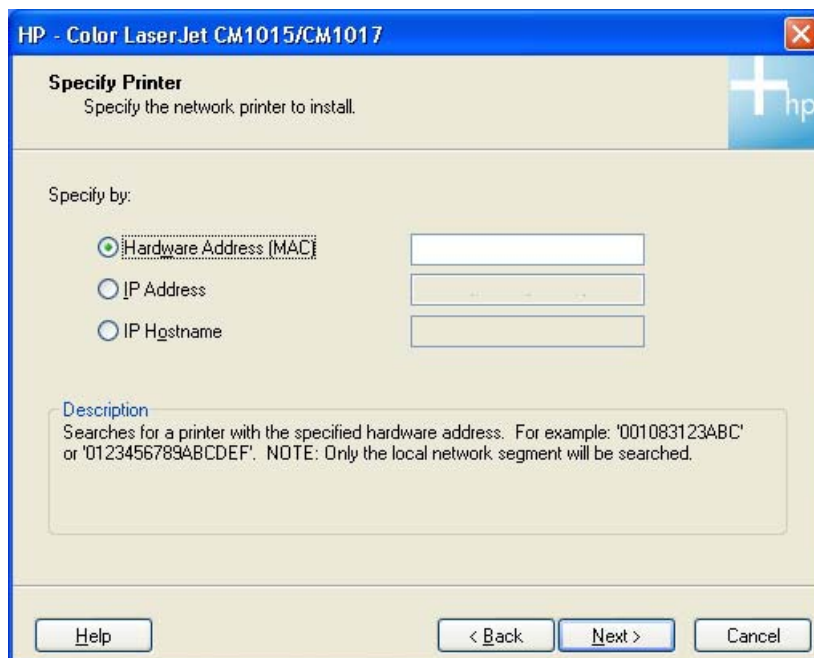
**Figure 3-35** Network install – **Firewall Detected** dialog box

Click **Next** to continue the installation. The installer searches the network for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP, and the **Searching** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-36** Network install – **Searching** dialog box

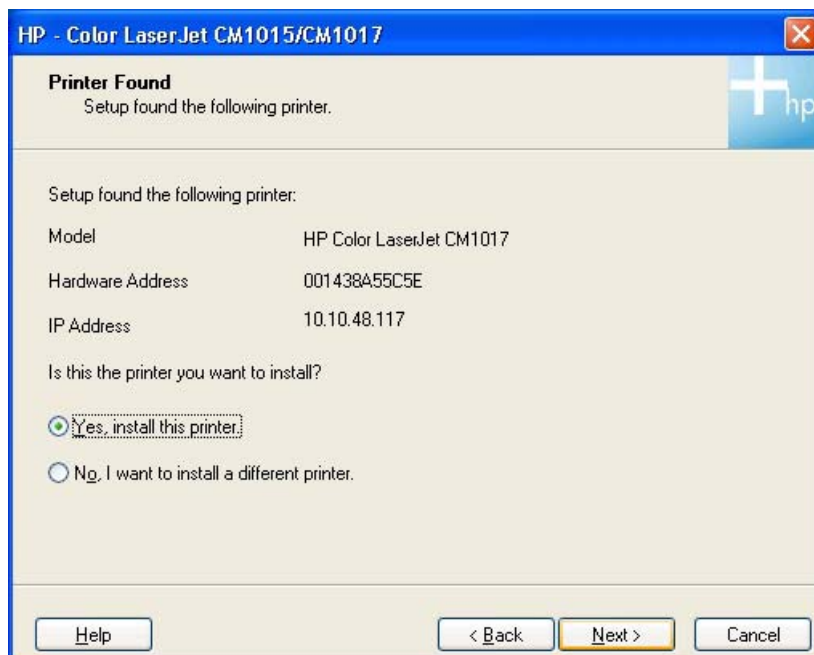
If you select the **Specify a printer by address** option on the **Identify Printer** dialog box, the **Specify Printer** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-37** Network install – **Specify Printer** dialog box

Specify the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP by hardware address (MAC), TCP/IP address, or IP Hostname. After typing one of these options in the appropriate field, click **Next** to continue.

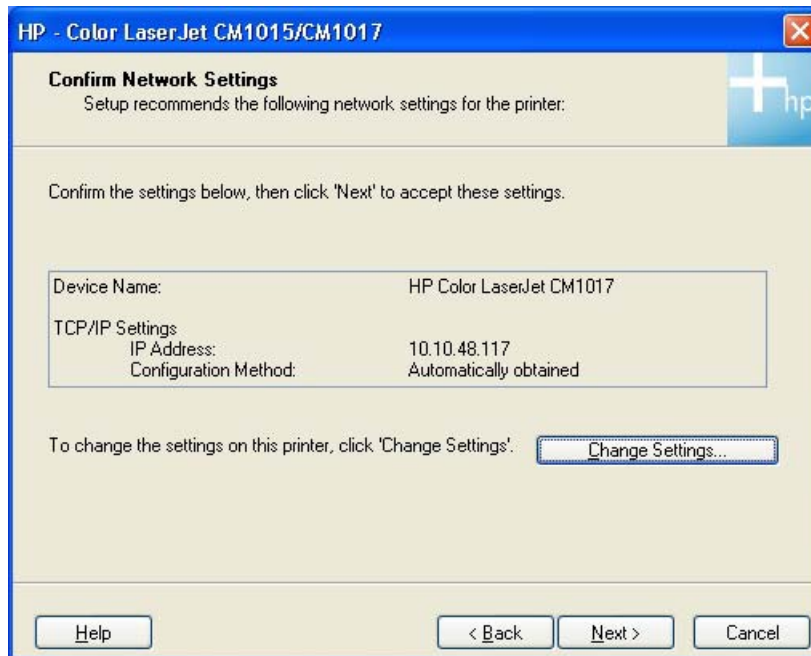
The **Printer Found** dialog box appears either after the system completes its search for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP, or after specifying the product.



**Figure 3-38** Network install – **Printer Found** dialog box



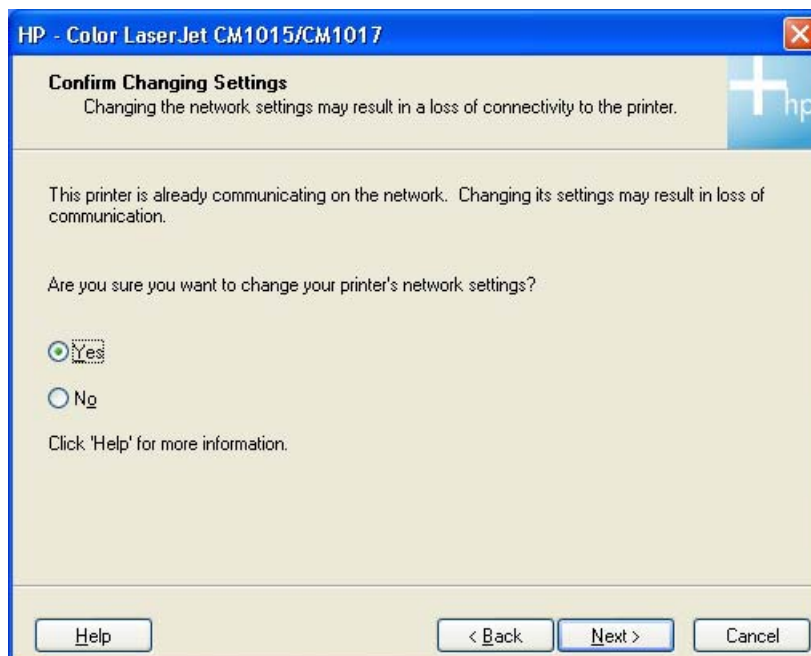
The **Yes, install this printer** option is selected by default. To install a different printer, select the **No, install a different printer** option. To continue installing the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP, click **Next**. The **Confirm Settings** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-39** Network install – **Confirm Settings** dialog box

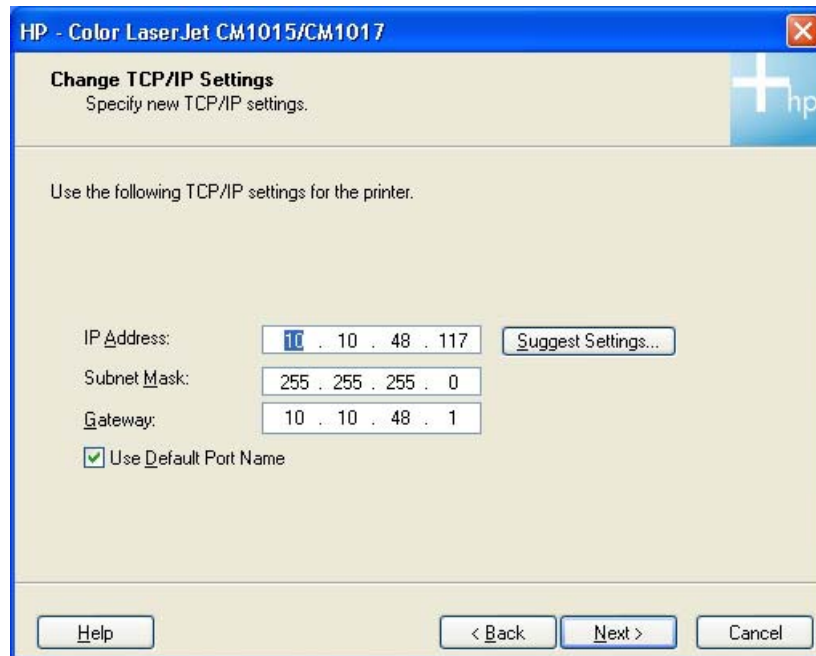
To accept the settings (recommended), click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Congratulations! Software installation complete** dialog box appears (see [Figure 3-42 Network install – Congratulations! Software installation complete dialog box](#)).

To change the settings, click **Change Settings**. The **Confirm Changing Settings** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-40** Network install – **Confirm Changing Setting** dialog box

Because the printer is already configured for the existing network, confirm that you want to change the settings. Click **Next** to continue. The **Change TCP/IP Settings** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-41** Network Install – **Change TCP/IP Settings** dialog box

Make the network changes and then click **Next** to continue. The **Confirm Settings** dialog box appears (see [Figure 3-39 Network install – Confirm Settings dialog box](#)).

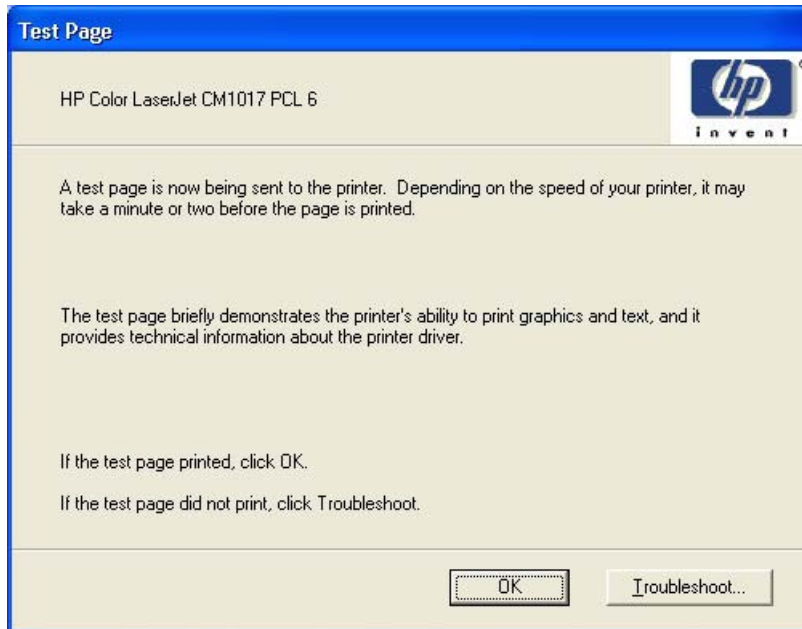
Click **Next** to continue. The **Congratulations! Software installation complete** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-42** Network install – **Congratulations! Software installation complete** dialog box



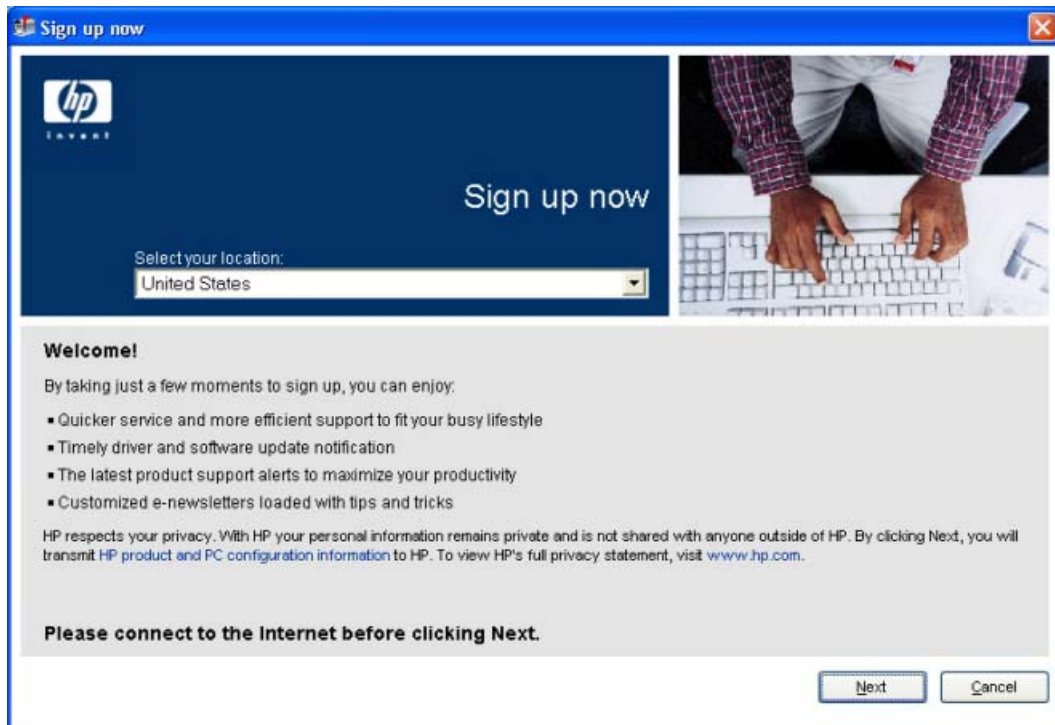
Click **Finish** to continue the installation. The **Test Page** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-43** Network install – **Test Page** dialog box

Click **OK** to print the test page.

The **Sign Up Now** screen appears.



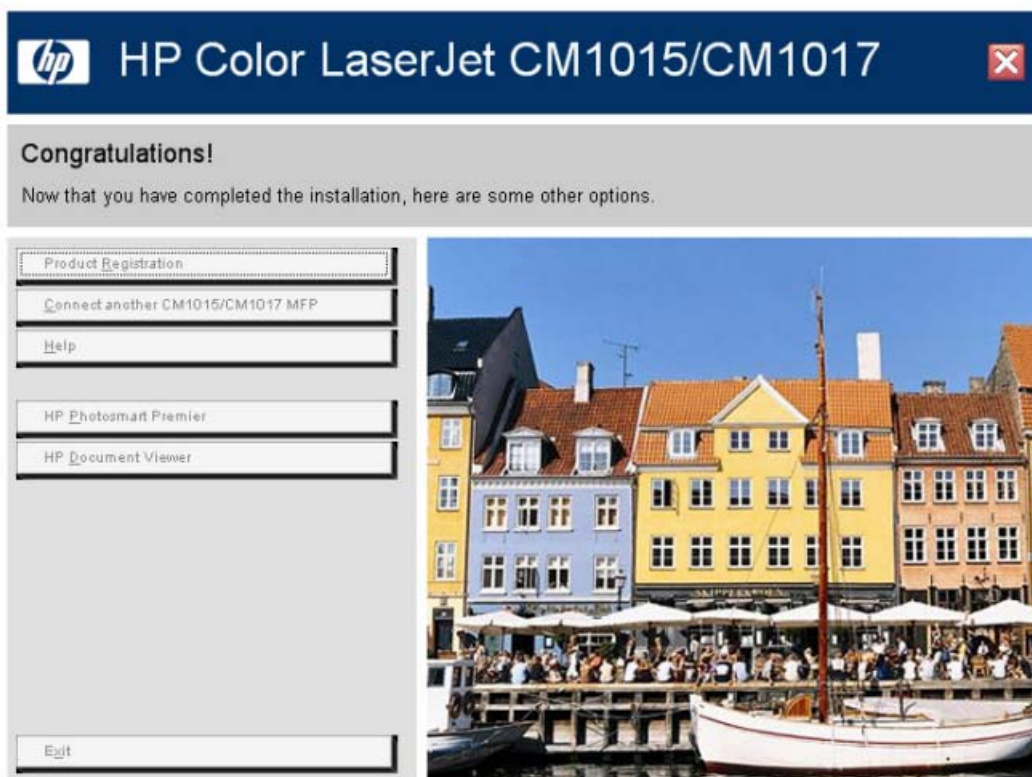
**Figure 3-44** Sign Up Now screen

If Web access is available, sign up to receive information from HP by following instructions on the **Sign Up Now** screen. Clicking **Next** opens the **HP Registration** web page. Follow the onscreen instructions to register.

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Sign up now" with a blue header bar. The address bar shows "United States-English". The page content includes a navigation bar with "HP Home" and "Contact HP" links, a search bar, and the HP logo with the tagline "invent". The main heading is "HP Registration" with a "Welcome" message. A sidebar on the left lists links: "HP Registration", "Your user profile", "Product registration", "Subscriber's Choice", and "Frequently asked questions". The main content area features a photo of a smiling man and a section titled "Register today with HP to" with bullet points: "Access support and services, and get the most out of your HP products", "Manage your profile and register your products", and "Sign up for free support alerts, driver notices, and personalized newsletters". Below this is the "HP registration" section, divided into "I am a new visitor" and "I am a returning visitor". The "new visitor" section has a "Country / Region" dropdown menu set to "UNITED STATES" and a "Register »" button. The "returning visitor" section has "User ID" and "Password" input fields, links for "Forgot your User ID?" and "Forgot your password?", and a "Sign-in »" button. The footer contains links for "Privacy statement", "Using this site means you accept its terms", and "Feedback to the webmaster", along with the copyright notice "© 2006 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P."

**Figure 3-45** HP Registration screen

After completing the registration option, the **Other Options** dialog box appears



**Figure 3-46** Network install – **Other options** dialog box

The **Other Options** dialog box appears after the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP installation has been completed.

Click **Product Registration** to register your product on the HP Web site.

Click **Connect another CM1015/CM1017 MFP** to connect another HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP to the computer.

Click **Help** to launch the online **Help** system.

Click **HP PhotoSmart Premier** or **HP Document Viewer** to install these software packages. For more information about the installation steps for these software packages, see [Installing optional software](#).

Click **Exit** to close the installer window.

## Printing-system software installation for Microsoft Windows Server 2003

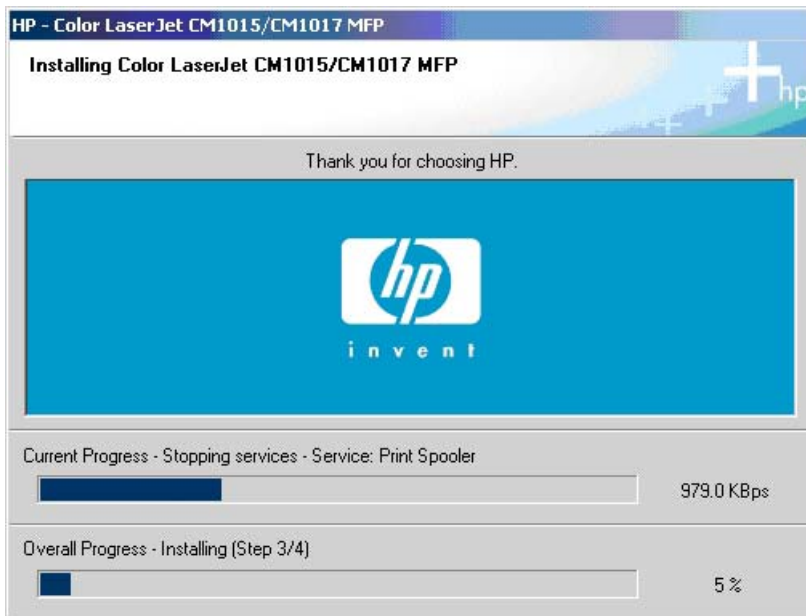
The following sections describe the dialog box options that appear during the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software installation on Microsoft Windows Server 2003 operating systems.

The software installation process begins by viewing the Animated Getting Started Guide from the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software CD. The following installation screens appear after clicking the **Install Software** option. For more information, see [Animated Getting Started Guide](#).

The following steps install the equivalent of a Recommended Minimum installation. For more information, see [Recommended and Custom installations](#).



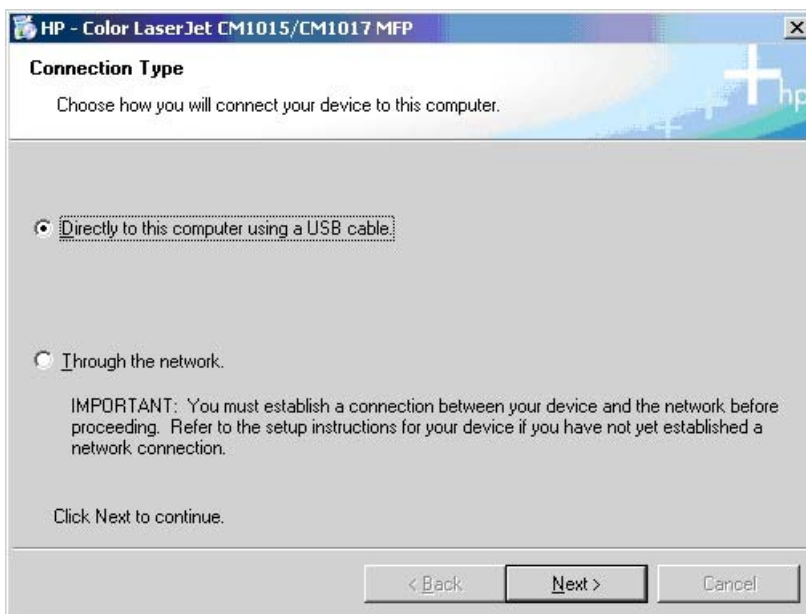
**NOTE** Click **Cancel** on any screen in the installation sequence to stop the installation. Click **Back** to return to the previous screen.



**Figure 3-47** Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install –**Current Progress** dialog box

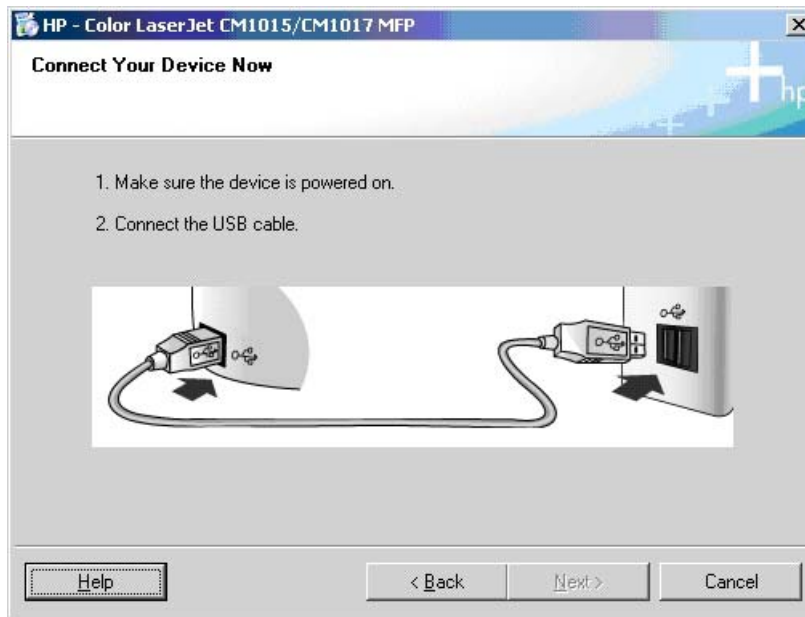
After clicking **Install Software** in the Animated Installation Guide, the **Current Progress** screen appears briefly. This screen shows the progress of the installation and provides information about the number of subtasks that have been completed in each step. This screen also appears between dialog boxes in the installation sequence. The screen disappears without user intervention, and a new dialog box appears giving the next option in the installation sequence.

The **Connection Type** dialog box appears next.



**Figure 3-48** Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – **Connection Type** dialog box

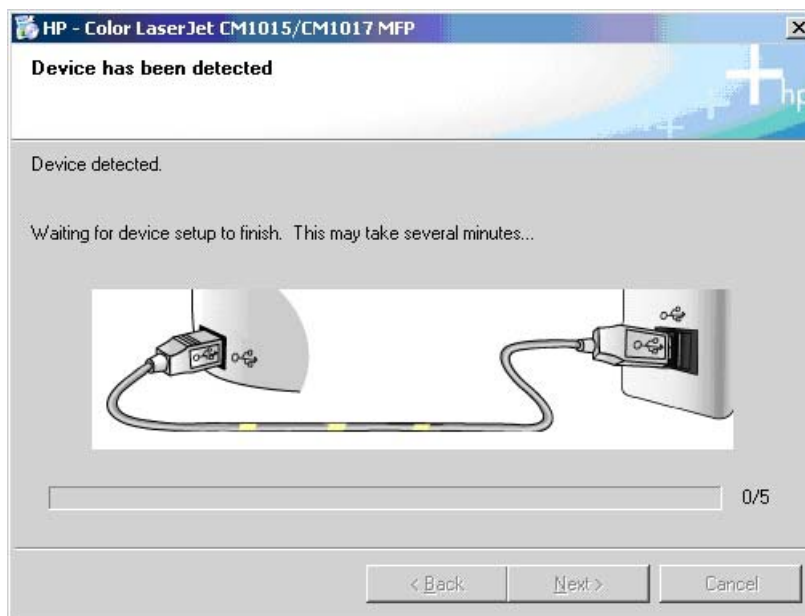
Click **Directly to this computer using a USB cable** (a "direct connection"), and then click **Next**. The **Connect Your Device Now** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-49** Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – **Connect Your Device Now** dialog box

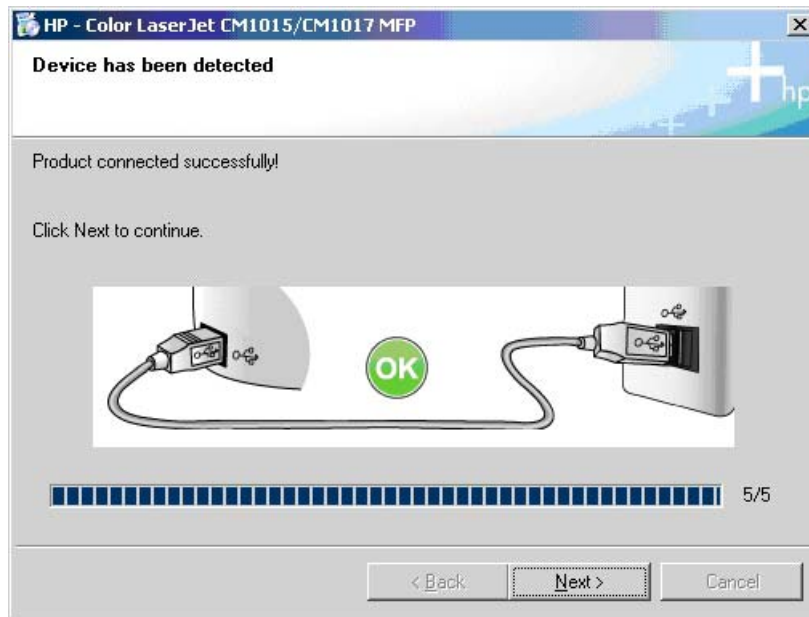
When the **Connect to your Device Now** screen appears, make sure that the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP is turned on. Then attach the USB cable to the computer and to the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

The **Next** button is enabled when the USB connection is complete. Click it to continue the installation.



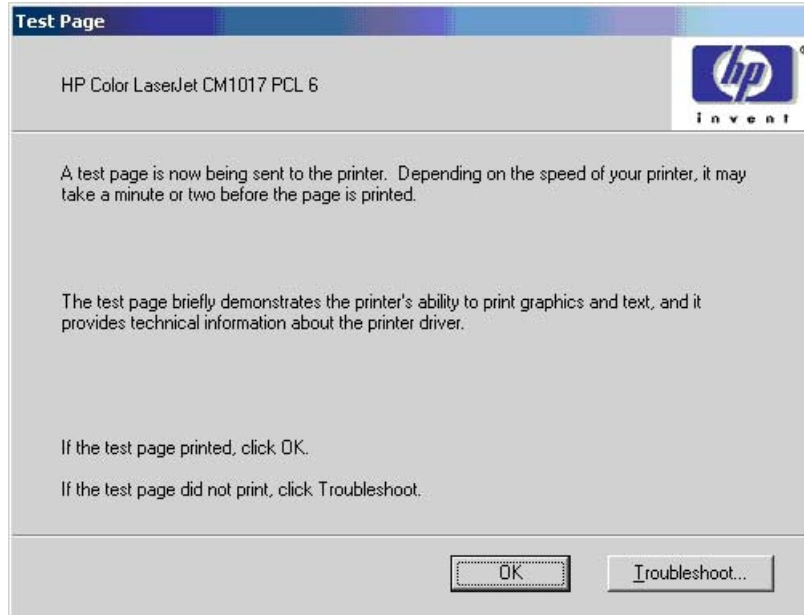
**Figure 3-50** Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – **Device has been detected** dialog box

The **Device has been detected** dialog box appears. After the progress bar fills, the **Next** button is enabled, the dialog box changes to show the product has been successfully connected.



**Figure 3-51** Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – **Device has been detected – Product connected successfully!** dialog box

Click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Test Page** dialog box appears.

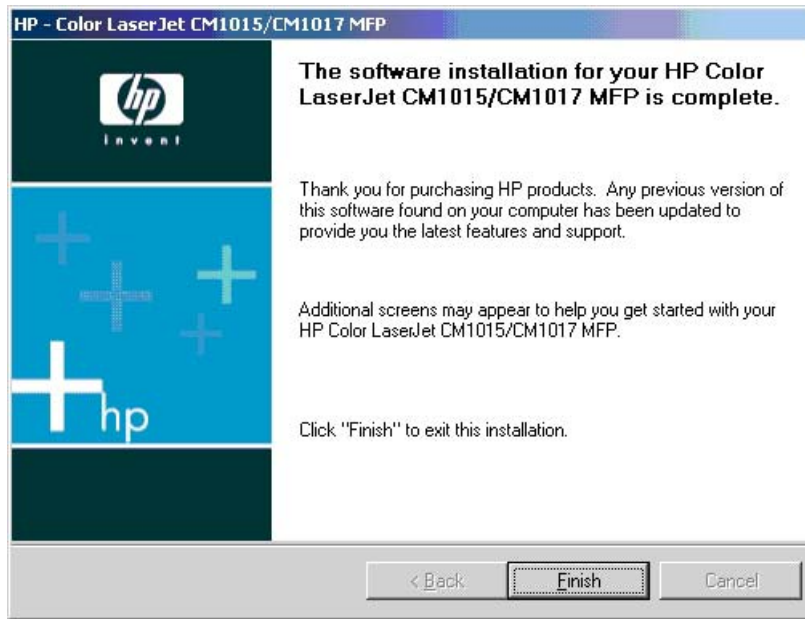


**Figure 3-52** Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – **Test Page** dialog box

The **Test Page** dialog box indicates that a test page is being sent to the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. If the test page prints successfully, click **OK**. If the test page fails to print, click **Troubleshoot** to get help troubleshooting the problem.



The **Congratulations! Software installation complete** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-53** Microsoft Windows Server 2003 install – **Congratulations! Software installation complete** dialog box

Click **Finish** to complete the installation.

# Installing optional software

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP comes with optional software to help you take full advantage of the MFP's capabilities. Install this software immediately after installing the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software, or install it at a later time by relaunching the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system CD.



**NOTE** The optional software can be installed at the same time as the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software through a Custom Installation.

- **Immediate installation.**After installing the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software, the CD Browser appears automatically, as shown in the following illustration.

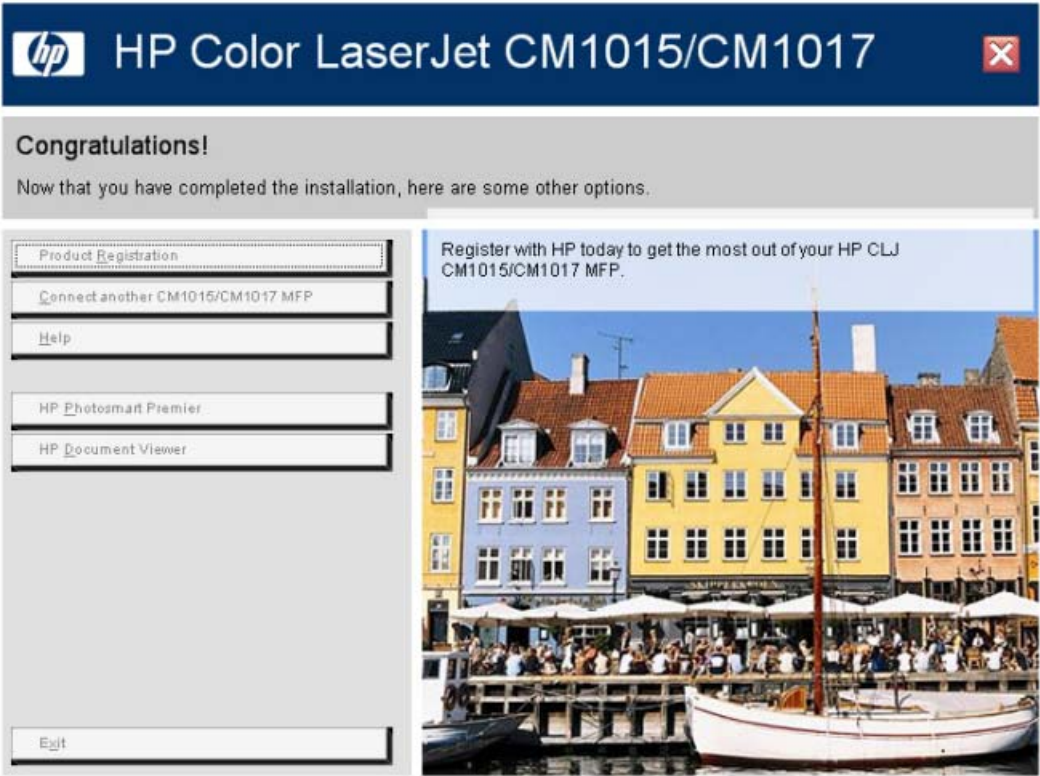


Figure 3-54 CD Browser



- **Later installation.** To install more software at a later time, click **Exit** on the CD Browser to close the installer at the end of the installation sequence.

When ready to install more software, reinsert the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive. The **Welcome Back** dialog box appears, as shown in the following illustration.



**Figure 3-55** Welcome Back dialog box

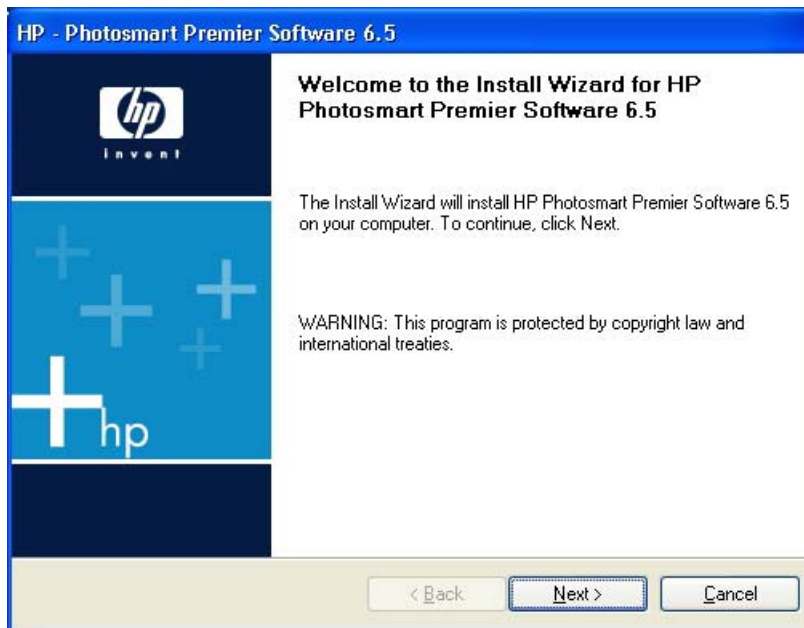
The **Welcome Back** dialog box contains options for installing the following software:

- [HP PhotoSmart Premier](#)
- [HP Document Viewer](#)

## HP PhotoSmart Premier

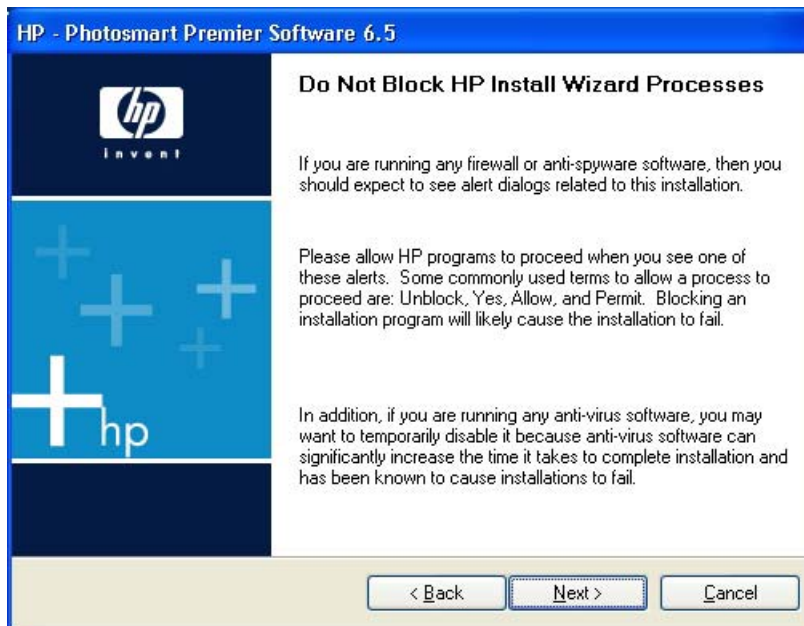
Follow these steps to install the HP PhotoSmart Premier software for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

1. Click **HP PhotoSmart Premier** on the CD Browser to launch the installer. The **Welcome** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue.



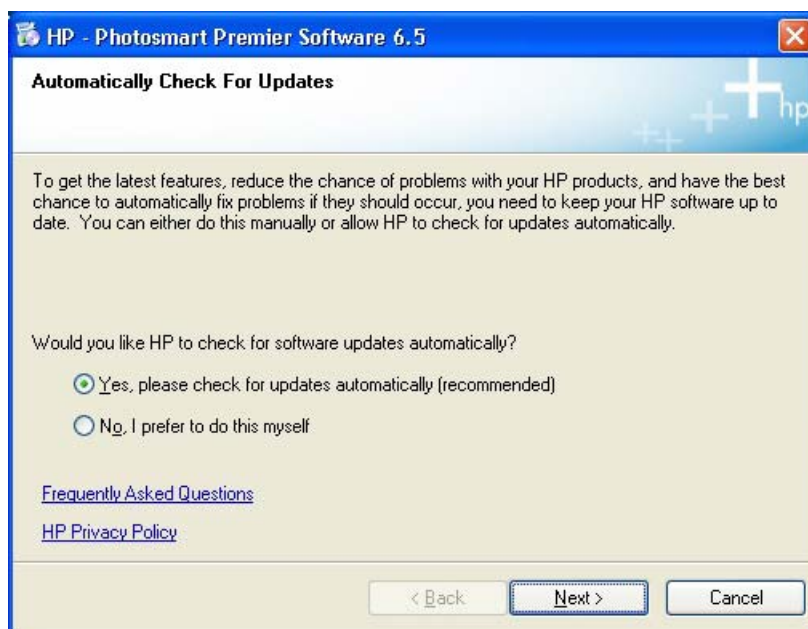
**Figure 3-56** Welcome dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier

2. The **Firewall warning** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue.



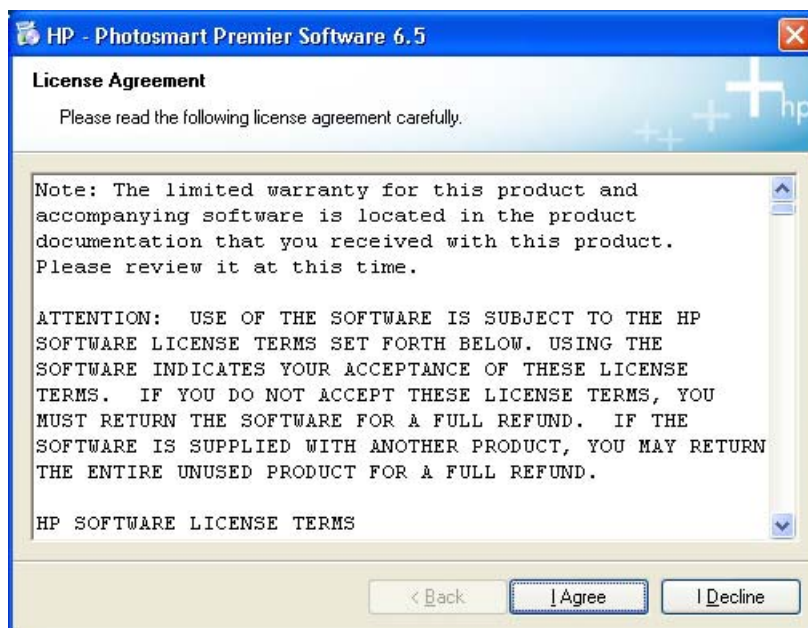
**Figure 3-57** Firewall warning dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier

3. The **Check for recommended installation updates (optional)** dialog box appears. Click **Yes** to check for updates to the software or click **No** to check for updates another time. Click **Next** to continue.



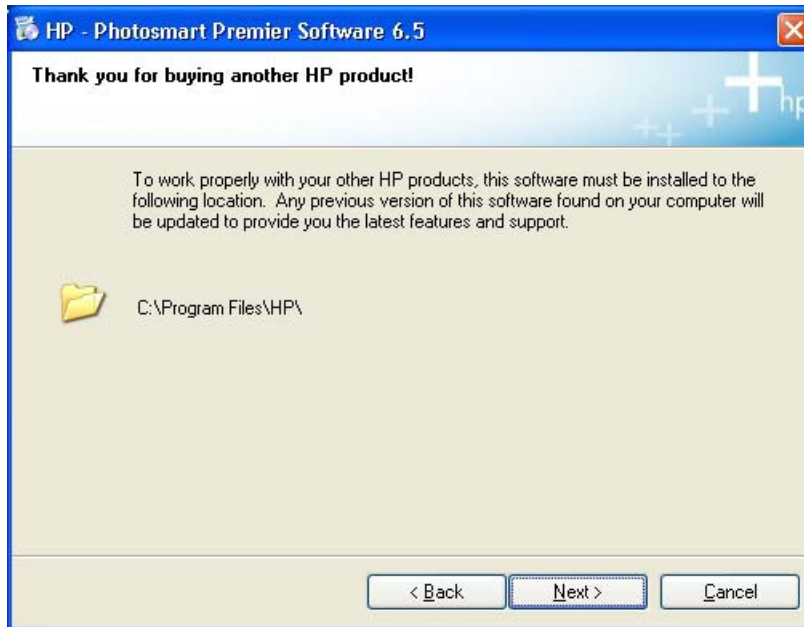
**Figure 3-58** Check for recommended installation updates (optional) dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier

4. The **License Agreement** dialog appears. Click **I accept the terms of this license agreement** and then click **Next** to continue the installation.



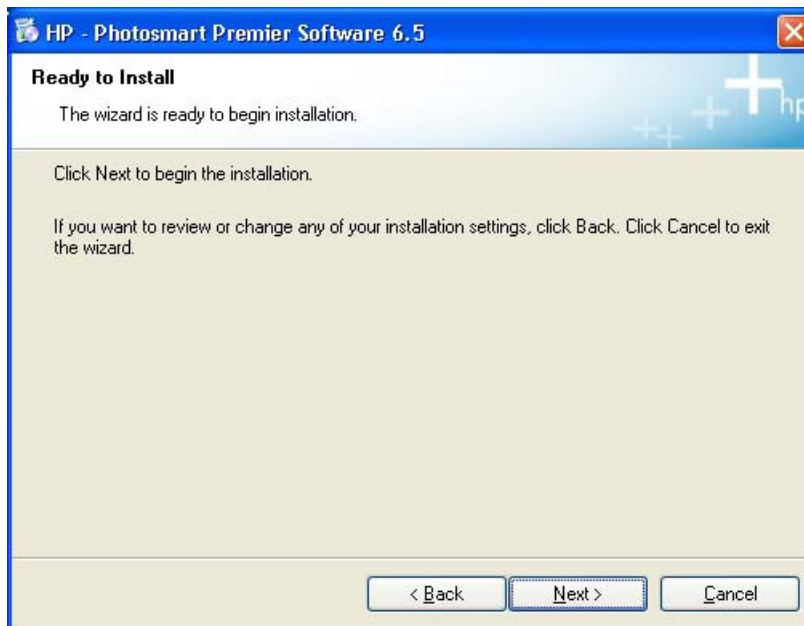
**Figure 3-59** License Agreement dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier

5. The **Thank you** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue.



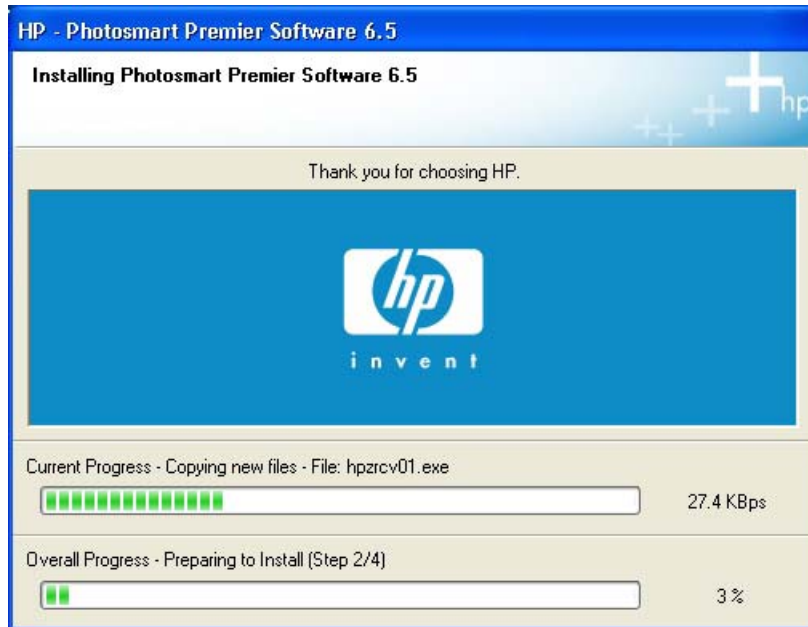
**Figure 3-60** Thank you dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier

6. The **Ready to Install** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue.



**Figure 3-61** Ready to Install dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier

7. The **Installing** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-62** Installing dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier

8. When the installation is completed, the **Finish** dialog box appears. Click **Finish** to close the installer.

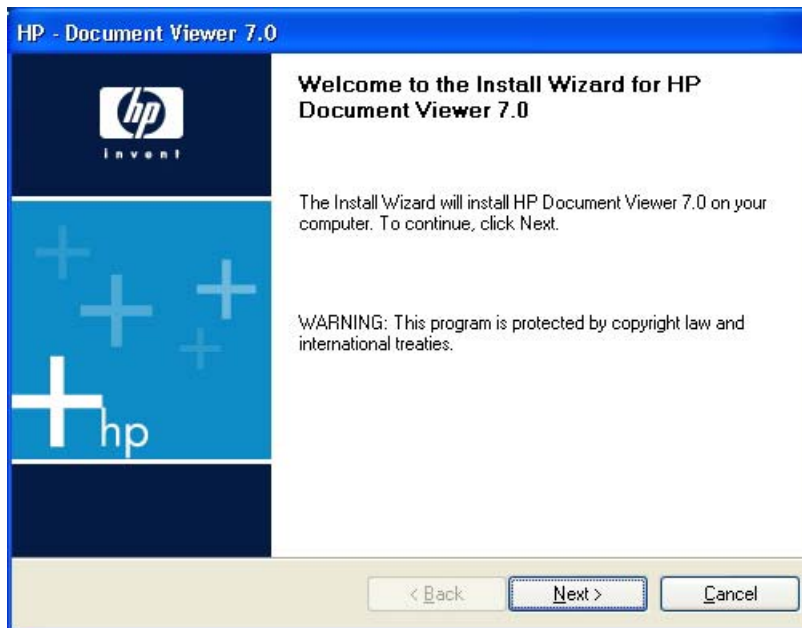


**Figure 3-63** Finish dialog box for HP PhotoSmart Premier

## HP Document Viewer

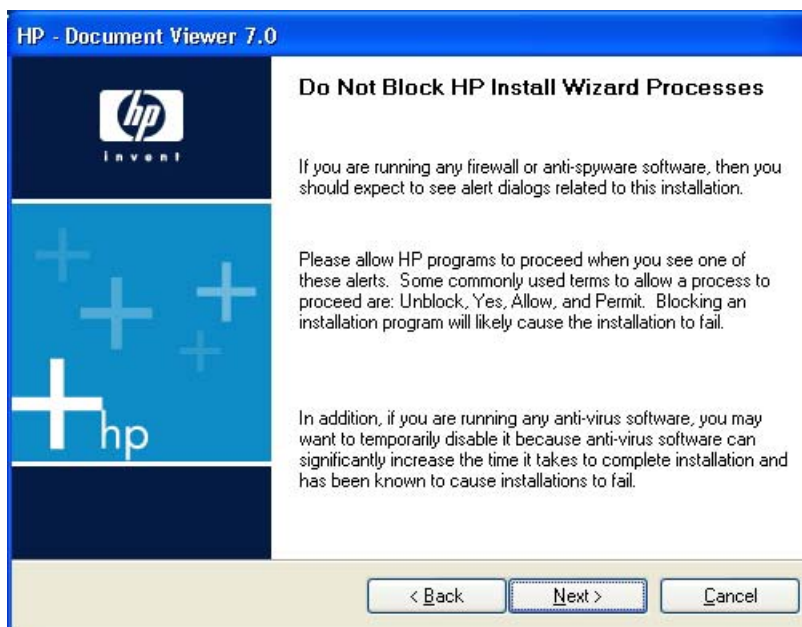
Follow these steps to install the HP Document Viewer software for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/ CM1017 MFP.

1. Click **HP Document Viewer** on the CD Browser to launch the installer. The **Welcome** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue.



**Figure 3-64** Welcome dialog box for HP Document Viewer

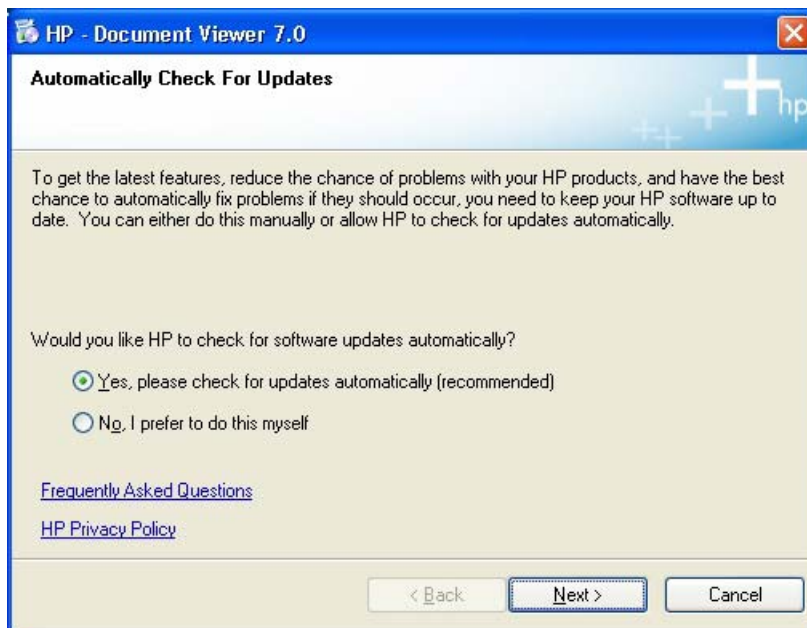
2. The **Do Not Block HP Install Wizard Processes** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue.



**Figure 3-65** Do Not Block HP Install Wizard Processes dialog box for HP Document Viewer

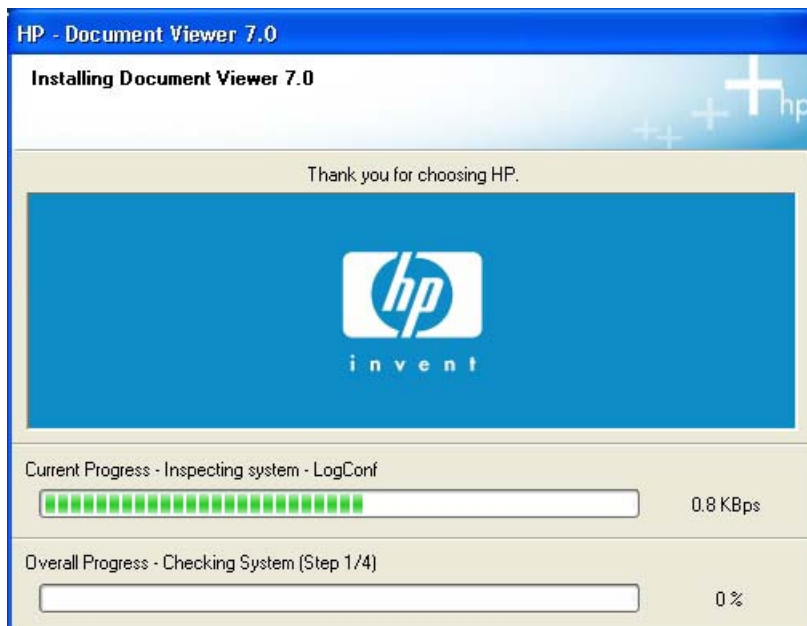


3. The **Automatically check for updates** dialog box appears. Click **Yes** to check for updates to the software or click **No** to check for updates on your own. Click **Next** to continue.



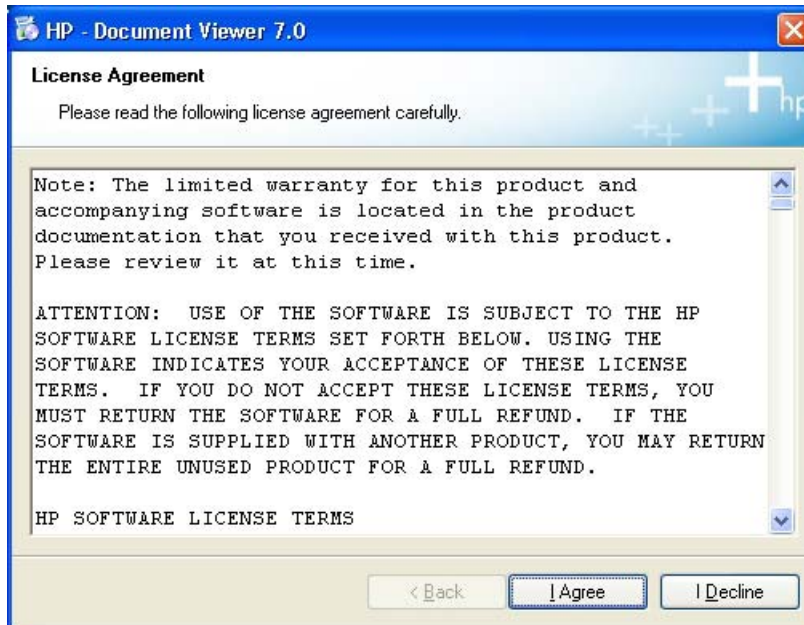
**Figure 3-66** Automatically check for updates dialog box for HP Document Viewer

4. Between dialog boxes, a **Current Progress** screen appears. This screen shows the progress of the installation and provides information about the number of subtasks that have been completed in each step. The screen disappears, and a new dialog box appears that giving the next option in the installation sequence.



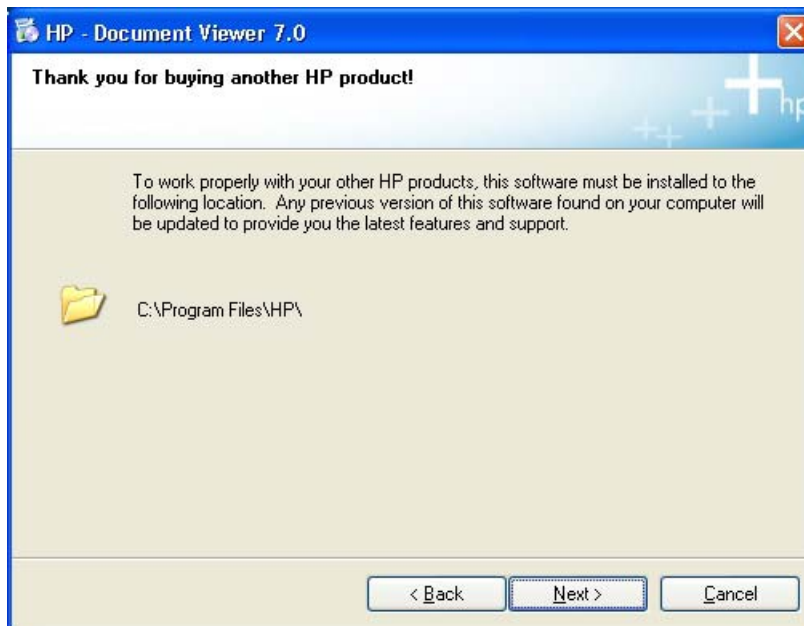
**Figure 3-67** Current progress dialog box for HP Document Viewer

5. The **License Agreement** dialog box appears. Click **Yes** to continue.



**Figure 3-68** License Agreement dialog box for HP Document Viewer

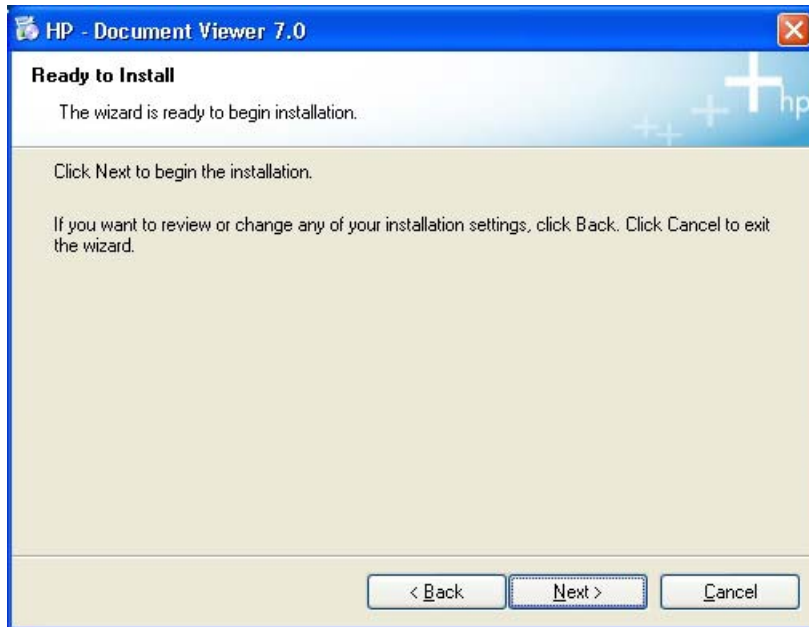
6. The **Thank you for buying another HP product** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue.



**Figure 3-69** Thank you for buying another HP product dialog box for HP Document Viewer

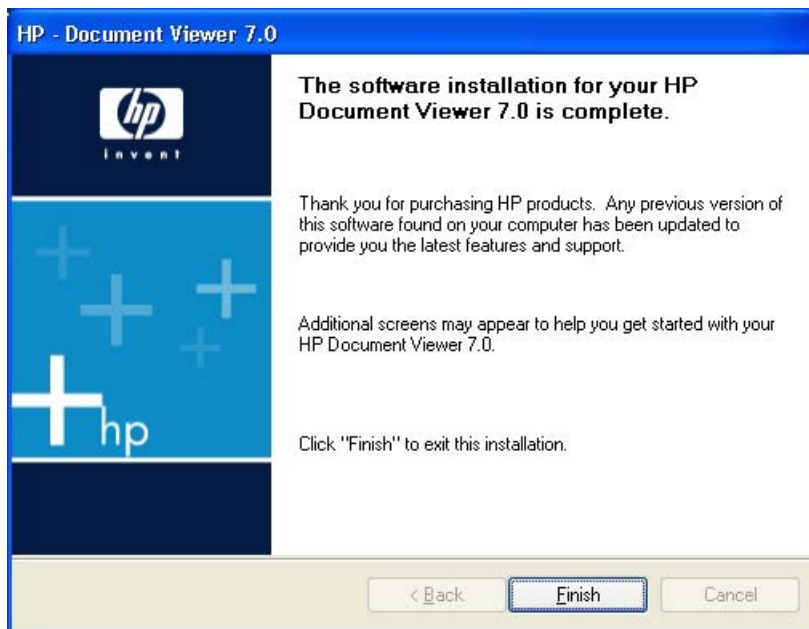


7. The **Ready to Install** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue.



**Figure 3-70** Ready to Install dialog box for HP Document Viewer

8. When the files have finished copying, the **Finish** dialog box appears. Click **Finish** to close the installer.



**Figure 3-71** Finish dialog box for HP Document Viewer

# Uninstall

This section provides information about the following topics:

- [Uninstall component list](#)
- [Uninstall methods](#)

## Uninstall component list

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP uninstaller removes the following components from your computer:

- Drivers
- HP ToolboxFX
- User guides
- HP Solution Center (including the HP Product Assistant and the HP Software Tour)
- HP Customer Participation Program (if installed)
- HP Software Update
- HP Photosmart Premier (if installed)
- HP Imaging Device Functions
- HP Document Viewer (if installed)

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP uninstaller does *not* remove the following components from your computer:

- HP Marketing Assistant
- Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS

You must remove these components through the Microsoft Windows Add/Remove Programs feature. A warning screen appears if any other HP products still require the components you want to remove.

For a full list of the files installed and uninstalled on your computer by using the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP installer and uninstaller, see the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Software Technical Reference Addendum.

## Uninstall methods

The following three methods exist for launching the Uninstaller for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. For instructions for using the Uninstaller to remove the printing-system software components, see [Dialog box options for the Uninstaller](#).

- **Program group.** Click **Uninstall** from the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP program group from **Programs** menu on your computer. This launches the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Uninstaller.



**NOTE** This is the preferred uninstall method. Choosing this method causes all the software associated with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP to be uninstalled at one time.

- **HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system CD.** Reinsert the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system CD into the CD-ROM drive on your computer and then click **Uninstall**.

This launches the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Uninstaller.

- **Add/Remove programs.** Click **Add/Remove Programs** from the Windows Control Panel, click **HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 MFP 1.0**, and then click **Change/Remove**.

This launches the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Uninstaller.

### Dialog box options for the Uninstaller



**NOTE** You must log on with Administrator privileges to uninstall the software.

1. Quit all open programs.
2. Choose one of the uninstall methods and perform the steps to open the Uninstaller.

3. The **Uninstall – Remove programs installed with your HP device** dialog box appears.

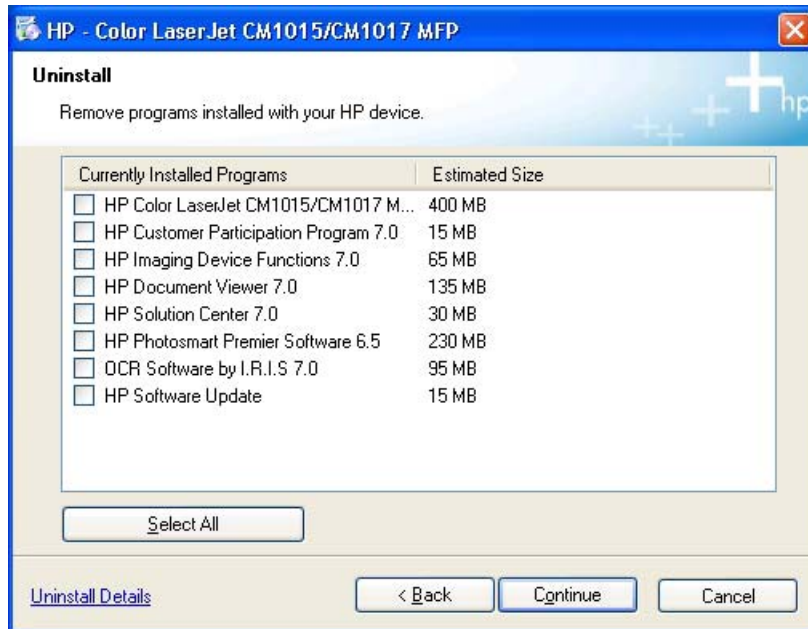


**Figure 3-72** Uninstall – Remove programs installed with your HP device dialog box

Clicking **Uninstall all HP products associated with this device**, and then clicking **Next** opens the **Uninstall – Review uninstall instructions and information** dialog box (step 5).

Clicking **Choose which HP products to uninstall**, and then clicking **Next** opens the **Uninstall – Remove programs installed with your HP device** dialog box (step 4).

4. The **Uninstall – Remove programs installed with your HP device** dialog box appears.



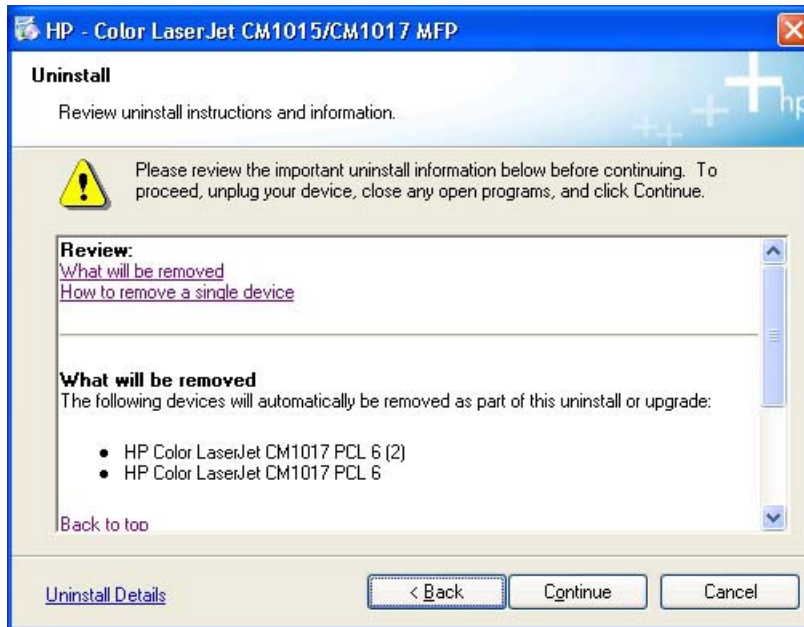
**Figure 3-73** Uninstall – Remove programs installed with your HP device dialog box

Click to select the software components to uninstall, then click **Next** to continue.

Clicking **Select All** selects all the software components at one time.

Clicking **Uninstall Details** shows information about each software component.

5. The **Uninstall – Review uninstall instructions and information** dialog box appears.



**Figure 3-74** Uninstall – Review uninstall instructions and information dialog box

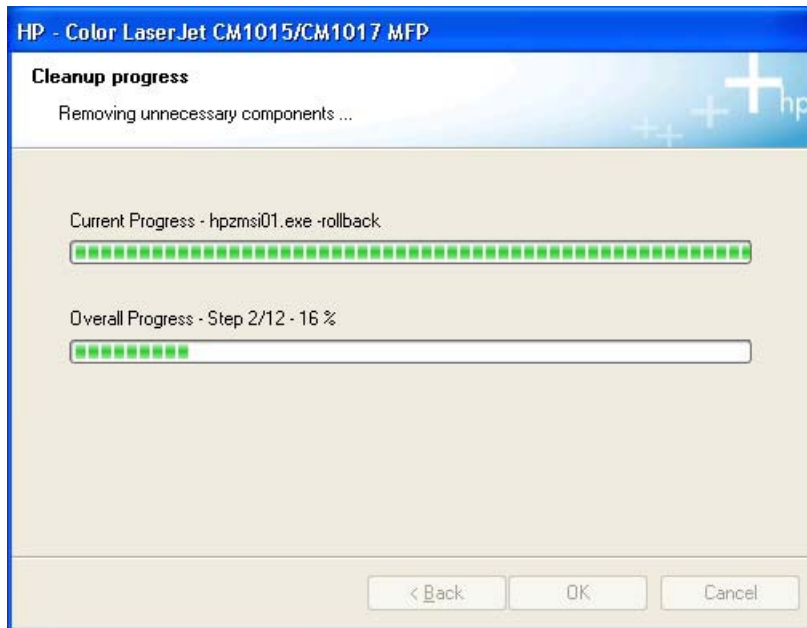
Clicking **What will be removed** shows the list of MFPs to be uninstalled.

Clicking **How to remove a single device** shows instructions for uninstalling only one of the listed MFPs.

Clicking **Uninstall Details** shows information about each software component.

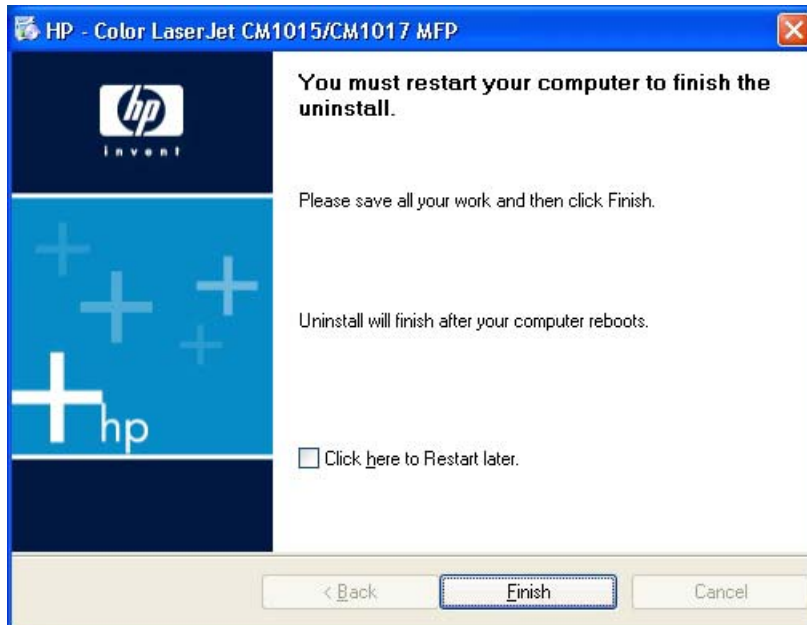
Click **Continue** to start the uninstall.

6. The **Cleanup Progress** dialog box appears. A progress bar reflects the status of the uninstall process.



**Figure 3-75** Cleanup Progress dialog box

7. When the uninstall process is completed, the **Restart** dialog box appears. Select the **Click here to restart later** check box if you want to restart your computer at a later time, and then click **Finish**. Or, click **Finish** to restart your computer and finish the uninstall process.



**Figure 3-76** Restart dialog box





## 4 HP scanning system

This section contains information about the following topics.

- [Scanning methods](#)
- [HP LaserJet Scan software](#)
- [Scan drivers](#)

# Scanning methods

Scan from the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP by using either of the following methods.

- **Open the HP Solution Center.** Double-click the desktop icon or click **Start**, click **Programs**, click **HP**, click **HP Solution Center**, and then click either **Scan Pictures** or **Scan Documents**.
- **From the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP control panel.** On the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP control panel, press the **Scan To** button. Use the **<** or **>** buttons to make a selection from following list, and then press the **Start Scan** or the **Enter** button.



**NOTE** Scanning from the product control panel is possible only after it has first been configured in the HP Solution Center.

See [Scan settings](#) for information about the following options:

- If you select an e-mail address that you had previously added in the HP Solution Center, the scanned item is sent to that e-mail recipient as an attachment.
- If you select a folder location that you had previously added in the HP Solution Center, the scanned item is saved in the folder location you specify.
- If you select **PC:File**, you will save the scanned item to the <current user's home>\My Documents\My Scans directory on the computer.



**CAUTION** If you move the **My Documents** folder, the **PC:File** folder does not follow to the new location. It remains hard-coded to the current-user's home, and scan jobs continue to be stored there.

- **From a TWAIN- or WIA-compliant software program.** Check the Help system in the software program to learn how to scan from a TWAIN- or WIA-compliant scanner from within that program.
- **From the Camera and Scanner Wizard on Windows XP.** In Microsoft Windows XP or Microsoft Windows XP x64, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, double-click **Scanners and Cameras**, and then double-click the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP scanner icon. The **Camera and Scanner Wizard** appears. Follow the onscreen directions to save your scanned item to a file.

# HP LaserJet Scan software

This section contains the following information.

- [Introduction](#)
- [Create a scan](#)
- [User interface](#)
- [E-mail](#)
- [Scan settings](#)

## Introduction

Use the HP LaserJet Scan software to scan from the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP and then complete any of the following tasks with the data:

- Save the scanned item to a file.
- Attach the scanned item to an e-mail.
- Perform text recognition on the scanned item.
- Open the scanned item with any third-party software program that supports the drag-and-drop function.

## Create a scan

Follow these steps to create a scan with the HP LaserJet Scan software.

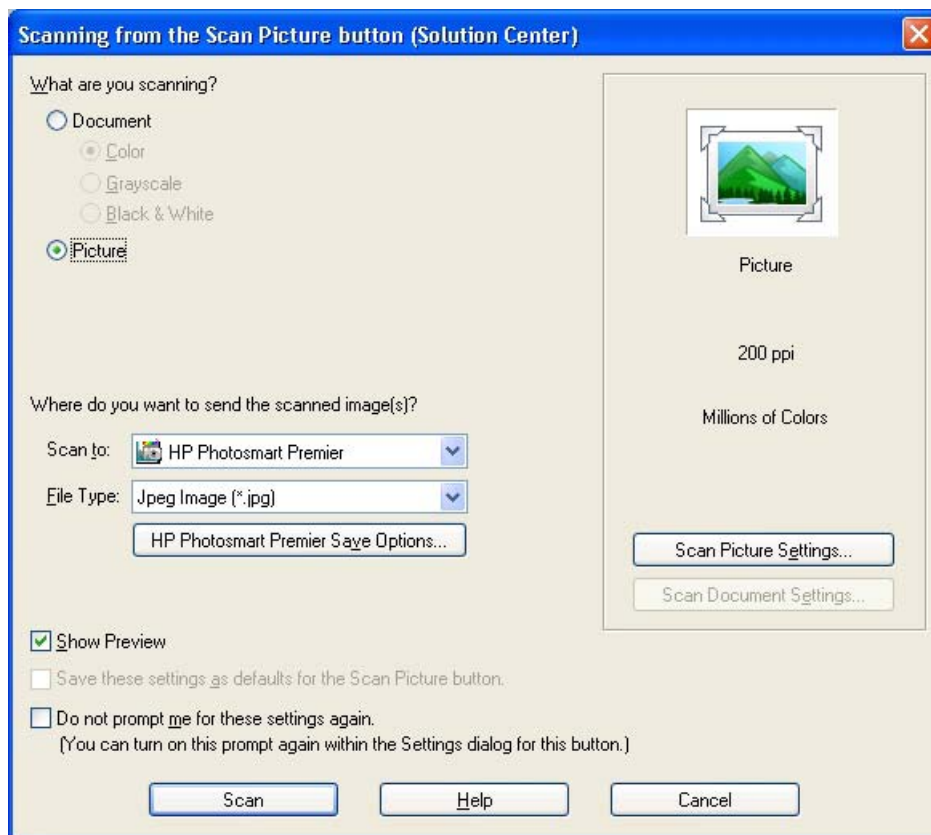
1. Click **Start, Programs**, **HP**, HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, and then click **HP Solution Center**.
2. Click **Scan Picture** or **Scan Document**.
3. Make any changes to settings that you want. If you want to see a preview of your scan, leave the **Show Preview** check box selected. After you have made your changes, click **Scan**.
4. If you clicked to clear the **Show Preview** check box, go to step 5.  
  
If you left the **Show Preview** check box selected, the **hp scanning** dialog box appears. You have the option of making additional changes to the scan here. When you have finished making changes, click **Accept Scan**.
5. The HP LaserJet Scan software scans your item and sends it to the destination you selected in step 3.

## User interface

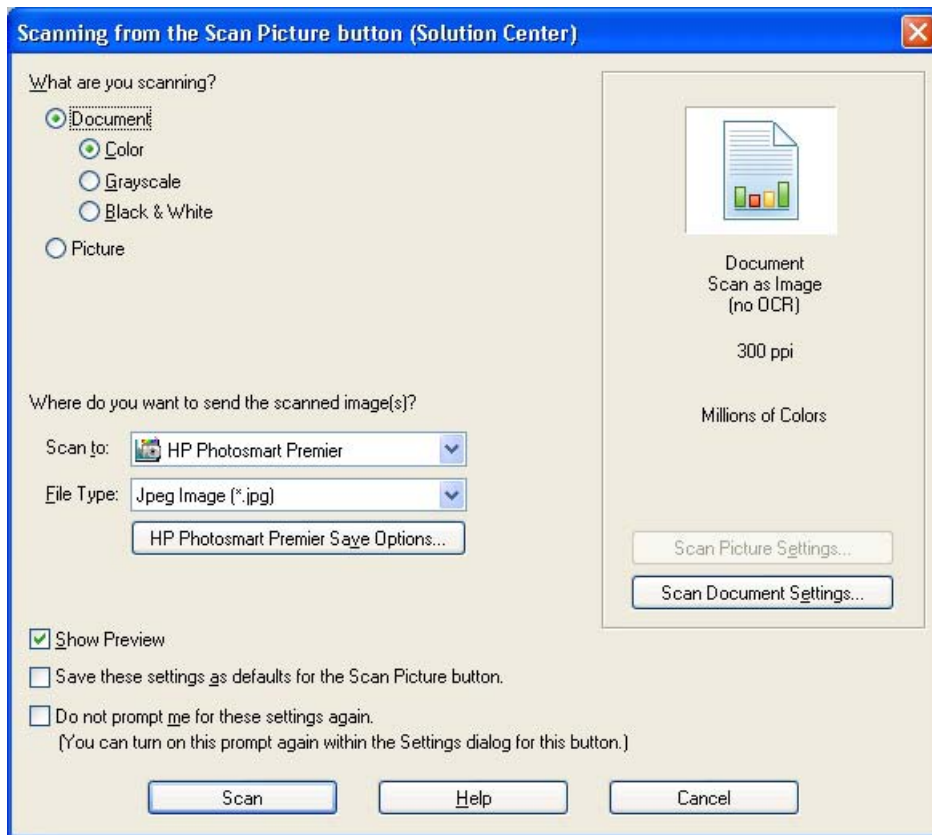
The HP LaserJet Scanning software contains the following dialog boxes, which can all be accessed by clicking the **Scan Picture** or the **Scan Document** buttons in HP Solution Center.

### Scan Picture or Scan Document

When you click **Scan Picture** or **Scan Document** in the HP Solution Center, the **Scanning from the Scan [Picture or Document] button (Solution Center)** dialog box appears.



**Figure 4-1** Scanning from the Scan Picture button (Solution Center) dialog box



**Figure 4-2 Scanning from the Scan Document button (Solution Center)**

The following options are common to both dialog boxes.

- [What are you scanning?](#)
- [Where do you want to send the scanned image?](#)
- [Save Options](#)
- [Additional options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [OK, Help, and Cancel](#)

### What are you scanning?

The options in this section are selected by default according to which Scan button you selected in the HP Solution Center. The following options are available.

- **Document.** This is the default when you select **Scan Document** from the HP Solution Center.
  - **Color**
  - **Grayscale**
  - **Black & White**
- **Picture.** This is the default setting when you select **Scan Picture** from the HP Solution Center.

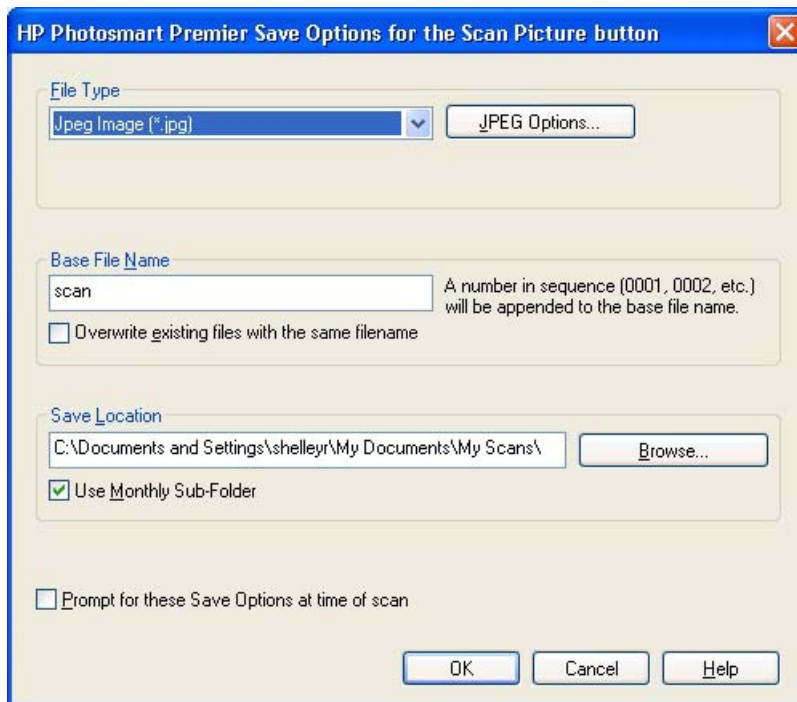
## Where do you want to send the scanned image?

The following options are available.

- **Scan to:** The following options are available from the drop-down menu.
  - **HP Photosmart Premier.** This is the default when you select **Scan Picture** from the HP Solution Center.
  - **Photosmart Express**
  - **Paint**
  - **Printer**
  - **E-mail**
  - **Print Tab in Photosmart Premier**
  - **Copy to clipboard**
  - **Save to File.** This is the default when you select **Scan Document** from the HP Solution Center.
  - **HP Photosmart Share**
  - **Additional options.** Additional programs might be listed here depending on the programs you have installed on your computer. For example, if these programs are installed on the computer, they would also appear in this list: HP Document Viewer, Microsoft Word, and Microsoft Powerpoint.
- **File Type:** The following file types are available.
  - **.BMP.** This is the default when you select **Scan Document** from the HP Solution Center.
  - **.GIF**
  - **.JPG** This is the default when you select **Scan Picture** from the HP Solution Center.
  - **.PDF**
  - **.TIFF** (both regular and compressed)

## Save Options

**Save Options.** The title of this button varies according to the selection made in the **Scan to:** drop-down menu. Clicking this button opens the **Save Options** dialog box.



**Figure 4-3** Save Options for the Scan Picture button dialog box – HP LaserJet Scan software

This dialog box allows you to set default settings for the **Scan Picture** button for the selection you made in the **Scan to:** drop-down menu. The following options are available.

- **File Type.** Choose the file type you want to use from the drop-down menu. This control includes a button you can use to change settings for .jpg images.
- **Base File Name.** Designate a base file name in the text box to which the software will append a number in sequence. This option includes a check box to allow you to overwrite existing files with the same filename.
- **Save Location.** Type the path for the location you want files to be saved, or use the **Browse** button to navigate to the location. The default location for scans is in a folder the software creates called **My Scans** inside the user's **My Documents** folder.

Check the **Use Monthly Sub-Folder** check box if you want the software to create a new subfolder each month in the location you specify.

- **Prompt for these Save Options at time of scan** check box

#### Additional options

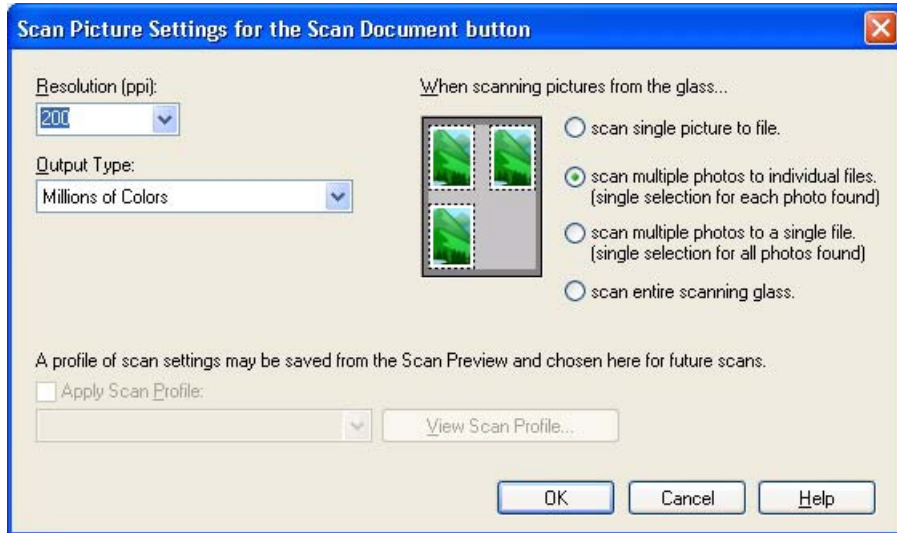
The following additional options appear near the bottom of the dialog box.

- **Show Preview.** Click to select this check box to see a preview of your scan. Selecting this option, then clicking **Scan** opens the **HP Scanning** dialog box. For more information, see [TWAIN driver user interface](#).
- **Save these settings as defaults for the Scan Picture (or Scan Document) button.** Select this check box to save the current settings for the button you used to open the HP Scanning dialog box. If you want to change the default settings at a later time, use the **Button Settings** dialog box.
- **Do not prompt me for these settings again.** Select this check box to use the default settings for each scan and avoid opening the **HP Scanning** dialog box.

## Document preview image

The document preview image section contains a color, grayscale, or black and white representation of the selection you make in the **What are you scanning?** group box. Depending on whether you chose to scan a document or a picture, one of the following options also becomes available.

- **Scan Picture Settings.** Make changes to the default settings for the **Scan Picture** button.

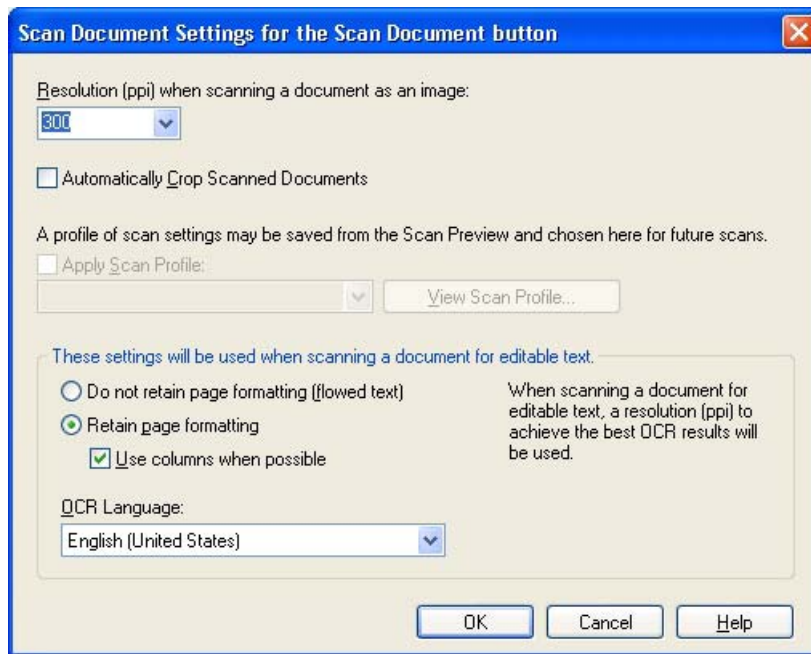


**Figure 4-4** Scan Picture settings – HP LaserJet Scan software

The following options are available.

- **Resolution**
- **Output type**
- **When scanning pictures from the glass** options
- Saving selected settings as a **Scan Profile**.
- **Scan Document Settings.** Make changes to the default settings for the **Scan Document** button.





**Figure 4-5 Scan Document settings – HP LaserJet Scan software**

The following options are available.

- **Resolution**
- **Automatically crop scanned documents**
- Saving selected settings as a **Scan Profile**.
- Settings for scanning a document for editable text

#### OK, Help, and Cancel

- **OK.** Click this option to confirm selected settings.
- **Help.** Click here for help with scanning issues.
- **Cancel.** Click here to cancel the scan.

## E-mail

The HP LaserJet Scan software for Windows supports any 32-bit, messaging application programming interface (MAPI)-compliant e-mail program. The HP LaserJet Scan software does *not* support Internet-based e-mail programs such as Hotmail, Yahoo, or MSN.

Follow these steps to determine if your e-mail program is MAPI-compliant;

1. Open Windows Explorer.
2. Right-click on any file, select **Send To**, and then **Mail Recipient**.
3. If your e-mail application launches with the selected file as an attachment, your e-mail application is MAPI-compliant.

The following table lists examples of supported e-mail programs.

**Table 4-1** Examples of supported e-mail programs

Program Name	Windows OS
Microsoft Outlook	Yes: Outlook 97, Outlook 98, Outlook 2003, Outlook XP
Microsoft Outlook Express	Yes
Lotus Notes	Yes: V5.1.0 and V6.5.4

E-mail is always sent through your default e-mail client. To see your default e-mail client in Microsoft Windows XP or Microsoft Windows XP x64(the path varies for other Windows operating system), click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Network and Internet Options, Internet Options, Programs** tab, and review the **E-mail** setting.

## Scan settings

The following table shows the available scan settings.

**Table 4-2** Available scan settings

Option	Scan settings
Resolution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>75 dpi</li><li>100 dpi</li><li>150 dpi</li><li>200 dpi</li><li>300 dpi</li><li>600 dpi</li><li>1200 dpi</li><li>2400 dpi</li><li>3600 dpi</li><li>4800 dpi</li><li>7200 dpi</li><li>9600 dpi</li><li>19200 dpi</li></ul>
Image type (bit depth)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Automatically choose output type</li><li>Millions of colors</li><li>256 Colors</li><li>256 Colors Web Palette</li><li>256 Colors System Palette</li><li>256 Gray Shades (Grayscale)</li><li>Black and White (1 bit)</li></ul>

**Table 4-2** Available scan settings (continued)

Option	Scan settings
File type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Adobe PDF (*.pdf)</li><li>• Adobe PDF – searchable (*.pdf)</li><li>• JPEG (*.jpg, *.jpeg)</li><li>• Windows Bitmap (*.bmp)</li><li>• TIFF (*.tiff, *.tif)</li><li>• TIFF – compressed (*.tiff, *.tif)</li><li>• PNG Image (*.png)</li><li>• PCX Image (*.pcx)</li><li>• Flashpix (*.fpx)</li><li>• Rich text file (*.rtf)</li><li>• HTML (*.htm)</li><li>• TEXT file (*.txt)</li></ul>
When scanning pictures from the glass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Scan single picture to file</li><li>• Scan multiple photos to individual files (single selection for each photo found)</li><li>• Scan multiple photos to a single file (single selection for all photos found)</li><li>• Scan entire scanning glass</li></ul>

# Scan drivers

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software includes the following integrated scan drivers.

- TWAIN driver
- Microsoft Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver (Microsoft Windows XP and Microsoft Windows Server 2003 only)



**NOTE** A network administrator must initiate the scan features.

## TWAIN driver

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software includes a TWAIN driver user interface that provides great flexibility and a wide range of image-quality options. TWAIN is an industry standard scanning protocol, and you can initiate scans from the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP by using any TWAIN-compliant program.

The current supported scan language is Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP).



**NOTE** The TWAIN driver does not support duplex scanning.

## TWAIN compatibility

TWAIN-compliant programs can acquire documents directly from the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. Programs that follow the TWAIN standards should work. (HP LaserJet MFPs support the required core functions for TWAIN compliance, but have only limited support for extended TWAIN options.)



**NOTE** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP products are 1.9 TWAIN compliant.

## TWAIN scanning does not work with some programs

For programs that are not TWAIN-compliant, use the following process as a workaround.

1. Use the HP Solution Center to scan the document in .TIFF format (or any other file type that the software supports) into a folder.
2. Import the .TIFF file into the program.

## Additional information about TWAIN

For more information about TWAIN, visit the following Web site:

[www.twain.org](http://www.twain.org)

## TWAIN driver user interface

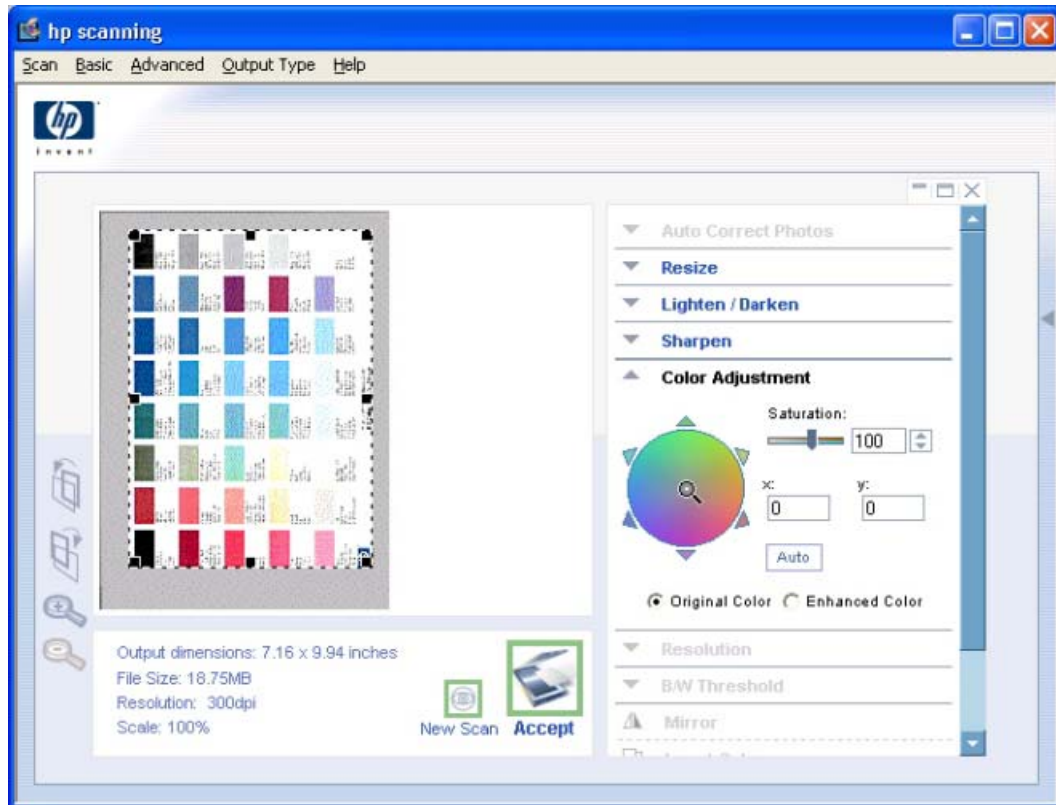


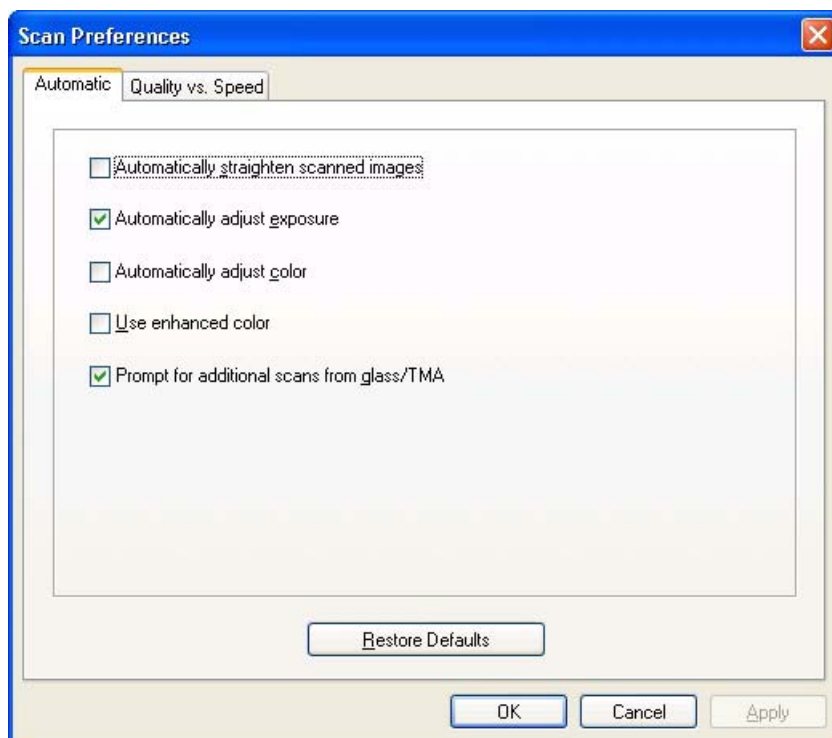
Figure 4-6 TWAIN driver user interface

The TWAIN user interface contains the following options:

- **New Scan.** Use this control to rescan the image. Flatbed previews are always at 75 dpi and in color:
- **Accept.** Use this control to rescan the image if the original is on a flatbed scanner and then to send the image back to program with the specified settings.
- **Resize.** Use this control to change the selection area for final scan. The final scan is performed within this selection area.
- **Lighten/Darken.** Use this control to lighten or darken the scanned image.
- **Color Adjustment.** Use this control to adjust the color on the scanned image.
- **Resolution.** Use this option to designate the final resolution for the image. The software interpolates resolutions that are above 1200 dpi.
- **Mirror.** Use this option to flip the scanned image horizontally.
- **Invert Colors.** Use this control to invert the colors in the scanned image.
- **Descreen.** Use this control to apply a special algorithm that detects and removes undesirable patterns from the scanned image. Choosing this option automatically triggers a rescan because the descreen operation must take place as the image data is flowing in from the scanner.
- **Rotate.** Use this control to rotate the scanned image 90°.

- **Zoom.** Use this control to zoom in on the selected area of the scan. This automatically starts a rescan if one is needed to obtain a clear image.
- **Reset Tools.** Use this option to reset all the controls to their default values.

To set additional scan settings, on the **Scan** menu, click **Scan preferences**.



**Figure 4-7 Scan Preferences**

The **Scan Preferences** dialog box contains three tabs: **Automatic**, **Quality vs. Speed**, and **Preview**. However, the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software supports only the options on the **Automatic** tab. The following options are available on the **Automatic** tab.

- **Automatically straighten scanned images**
- **Automatically adjust exposure**
- **Automatically adjust color**
- **Use enhanced color**
- **Prompt for additional scans from glass/TMA.**
- **Restore Defaults**

## WIA driver

Use any of the following methods to open the Microsoft Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) scanning feature for Microsoft Windows XP.

- Start WIA scanning through a WIA-compliant software program.
- Right-click on the scanner icon in the **My Computer** folder, and click **Scan**.

- Right-click on the scanner icon in the **My Computer** folder, and click **Scanner Wizard**.
- Right-click on the scanner icon in the **Scanners and Cameras** folder in the **Control Panel**, and click **Scan**.
- Right-click on the scanner icon in the **Scanners and Cameras** folder in the **Control Panel**, and click **Scanner Wizard**.

WIA has its own user interface. It is relatively simple and does not contain the wide range of image-quality options that are available in the TWAIN driver user interface.

When you use the WIA scan driver, you must modify the brightness and contrast after you perform the scan. Contrast or brightness modifications cannot be set on the device. Only native device resolutions are supported and software interpolation is not performed. The WIA scan driver supports flatbed scanning, but it does not support duplex scanning. The WIA scan driver supports the following compression types:

- None
- .JPG
- .GIF
- .TIFF





# 5 HP PCL 6 and PS emulation unidrivers for Microsoft Windows

## Introduction



**NOTE** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP includes two HP PCL 6 unidrivers: the HP PCL 6 Unidriver, HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver, and the PS Emulation Unidriver.

This chapter includes the following information.

- [Access to drivers](#)
- [Help system](#)
- [HP Postscript level 3 emulation support](#)
- [Advanced tab features](#)
- [Paper/Quality tab features](#)
- [Effects tab features](#)
- [Finishing tab features](#)
- [Color tab features \(HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver only\)](#)
- [Services tab features](#)
- [Device Settings tab features](#)
- [About tab features](#)



**NOTE** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP drivers send print jobs in reverse order to accommodate the face-up output bin. Printing with any other print driver, such as a PCL 5 driver, will result in the print job being out of order. The last page will be face up on the top of the print job in the output bin.

## Access to drivers

To access driver settings from within most software programs, click **File**, **Print**, and **Properties**. The appearance and names of the driver tabs that appear can vary, depending on the operating system. These settings apply only while the software program is open.

You can also control the drivers directly from the **Printers** folder. These settings change the default settings used across all software programs.

- In Microsoft Windows 2000, click **Start**, **Settings**, **Printers**, right-click the MFP name, and then click **Printing Preferences** to access the same set of driver tabs that the software program controls.
- In Microsoft Windows XP or Microsoft Windows XP x64, click **Start**, **Printers and Faxes** (Microsoft Windows XP Professional and Microsoft Windows XP Media Center) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Microsoft Windows XP Home) to access the same set of driver tabs that the software program controls.

If, after right-clicking the MFP name, you click **Properties**, you access a different set of tabs that control the driver behavior and driver connections. For information about the **Properties** tabs, see the following sections.

### Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. Follow these steps to access the **Printing Preferences** tabs.

1. Click **Start**, **Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Microsoft Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Microsoft Windows XP Professional, Microsoft Windows XP Media Center, Microsoft Windows XP x64, and Microsoft Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.
  - for Microsoft Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Printing Preferences**.

The following **Printing Preferences** tabs are available:

- **Advanced**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**
- **Services**

## Properties driver tabs

The **Properties** driver tabs control the driver behavior and driver connections. Follow these steps to access the **Properties** tabs.

1. Click **Start, Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Microsoft Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Microsoft Windows XP Professional, Microsoft Windows XP Media Center, Microsoft Windows XP x64, and Microsoft Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.
  - for Microsoft Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Properties**

The following **Properties** tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Color Management**
- **Security**
- **Device Settings**
- **About**

The **Device Settings** and **About** tabs are HP driver tabs and are described in this guide. The other **Properties** tabs are Microsoft Windows tabs. For information about those tabs, see the documentation that came with your computer.

## Help system

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP HP PCL 6 Unidriver, HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver, and PS Emulation Unidriver each include a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options. The following Help options are available.

- [“What's this?” Help](#)
- [Context-sensitive Help](#)
- [Constraint messages](#)

### “What's this?” Help

“What's this?” Help is supported in Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, and Microsoft Windows XP x64. You can access “What's this?” Help messages in any of the following ways:

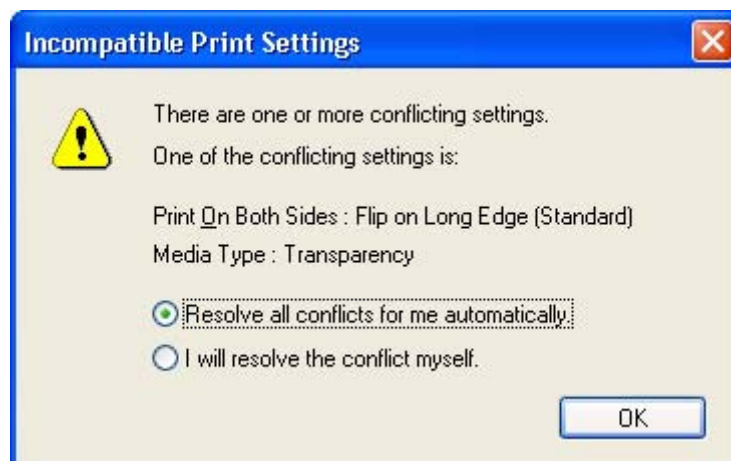
- Right-click a control and click **What's this?**, and a pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the ? button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the X, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. Use this special cursor to select a control, and the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Press the **F1** key, and the Help window for the currently selected control appears.

### Context-sensitive Help

Click the **Help** button on a driver tab or in a dialog box, and context-sensitive Help appears.

### Constraint messages

Constraint messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific actions you take. These messages alert you to selections that are illogical or impossible given the capabilities of the MFP or the current settings of other controls. For example, if you click **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** and then change the paper type to **Transparency**, a message appears asking you to resolve this conflict.



**Figure 5-1** A typical constraint message

Whenever a constraint message appears with **Resolve all conflicts for me automatically** or **I will resolve the conflict myself** buttons, the action of the buttons is as follows:

- To reject the change that was just made, returning the control to its previous value, click **Resolve all conflicts for me automatically** and then click **OK**.
- To accept the change that was just made, allowing you to go back into the driver settings to resolve the conflict, click **I will resolve the conflict myself** and then click **OK**.

## HP Postscript level 3 emulation support

The HP Postscript level 3 emulation maintains full compatibility with Adobe PS level 3 when PS level 3 soft fonts are purchased from Adobe.

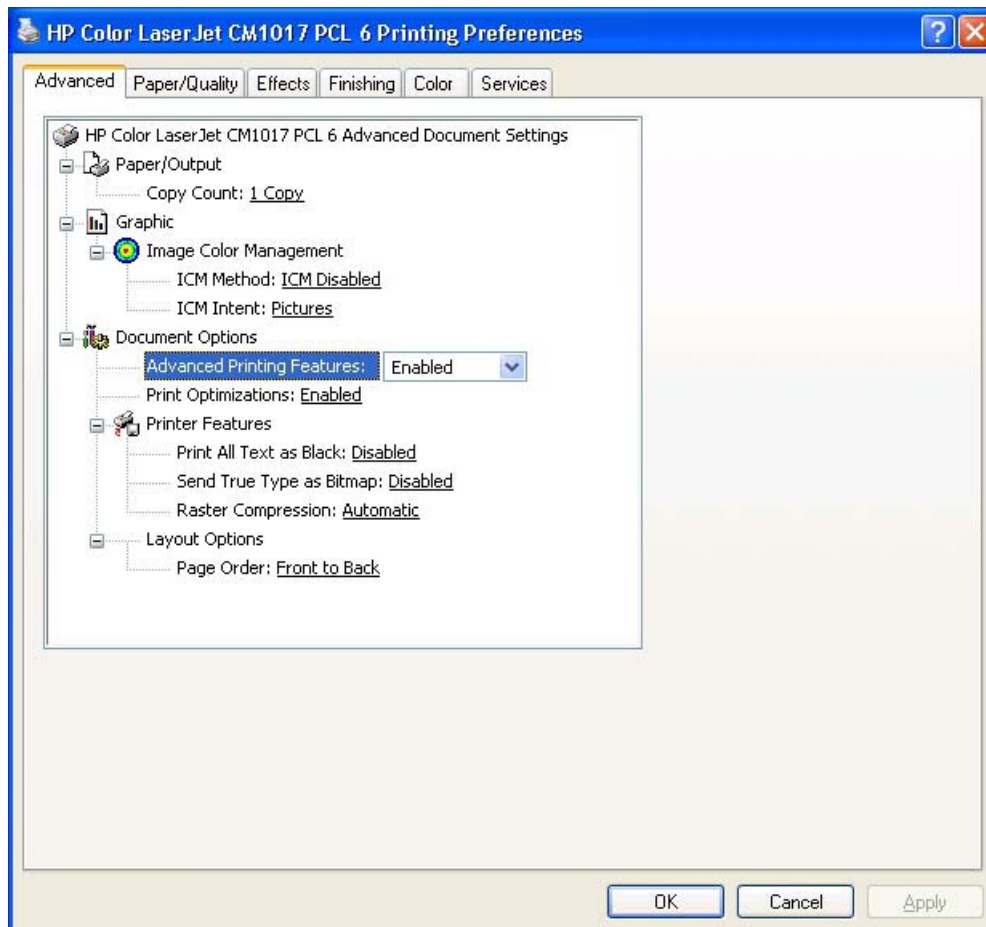
Users of Adobe-licensed applications might also have the right to use the Adobe PS level 3 print drivers from Adobe with the HP LaserJet printer Postscript level 3 emulation PPD, available on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software CD or from the HP Web site. When using the Adobe PS level 3 print driver, users must comply with all Adobe licensing agreements, as stated on the Adobe Web site at [www.adobe.com/support/downloads/license.html](http://www.adobe.com/support/downloads/license.html).

## Advanced tab features

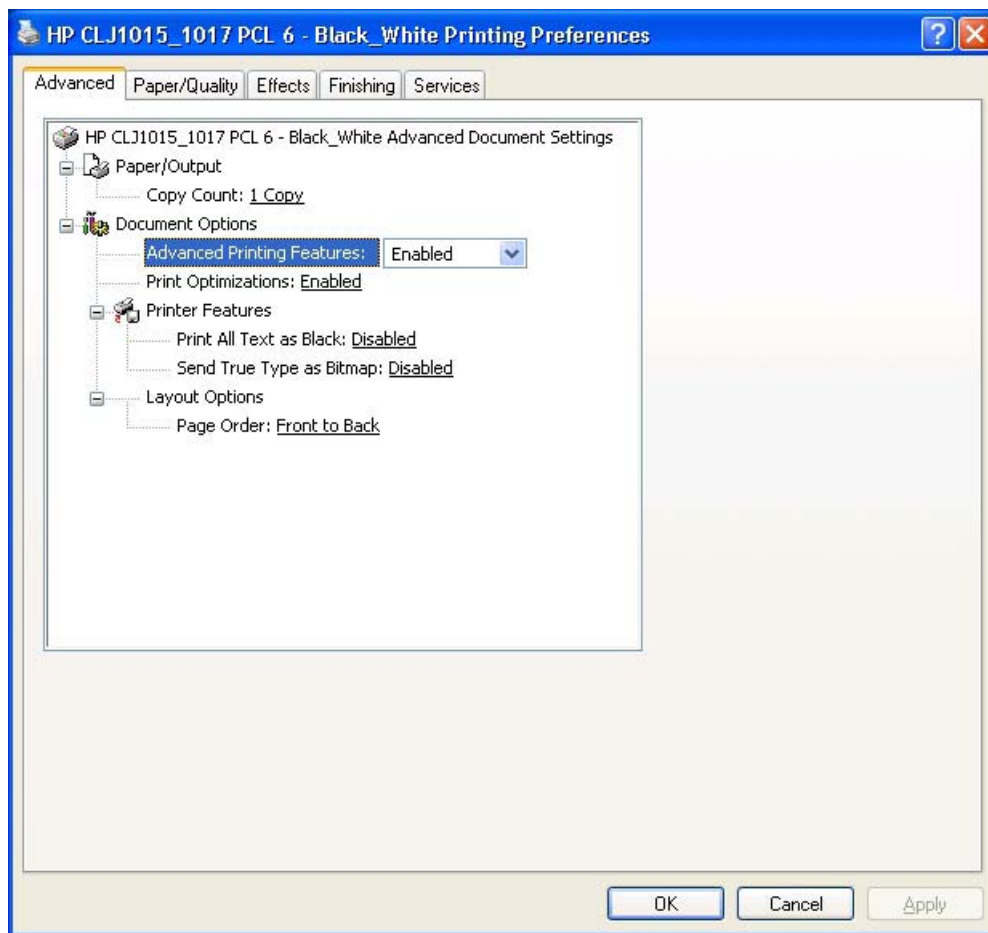
Follow these steps to access the **Advanced** tab.

1. Click **Start, Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Microsoft Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Microsoft Windows XP Professional, Microsoft Windows XP Media Center, Microsoft Windows XP x64, and Microsoft Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.
  - for Microsoft Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click **Advanced**.

You can use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages. Use this tab to configure special controls that are not commonly used, as well as features such as paper size and copies, in the driver.

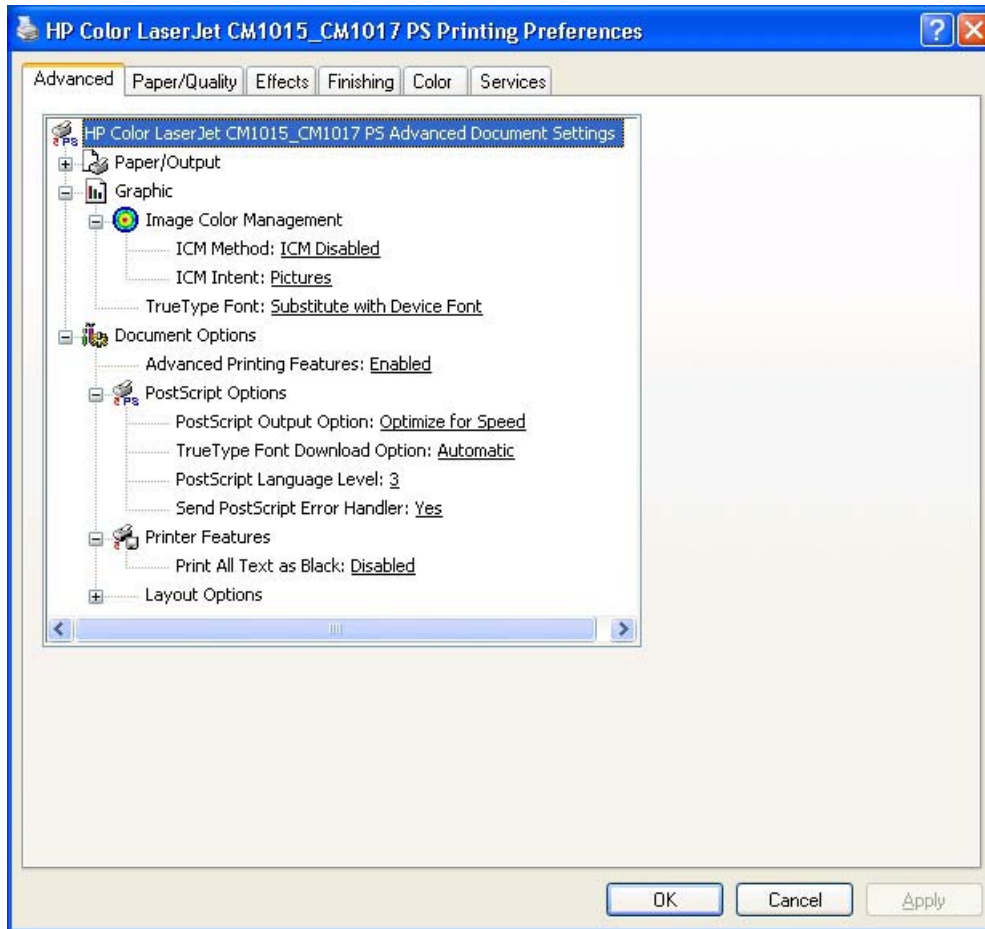


**Figure 5-2** Advanced tab – HP PCL 6 Unidriver



**Figure 5-3** Advanced tab – HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver





**Figure 5-4** Advanced tab – PS Emulation Unidriver

The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls:

- [Paper/Output settings](#)
- [Graphic settings \(HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver only\)](#)
- [Document Options](#)

## Paper/Output settings

The **Paper/Output** setting contains the **Copy Count** settings.

### Copy Count setting

This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program. **Copy Count** specifies the number of copies to print.

The number of copies that you request appears in the **Copy Count** option. You can select the number by typing in the box or by using the up and down arrows on the right side of the text box. For the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used. When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the edit box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1,

or numbers greater than 9999) change to the last valid value that appeared in the box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because you can set the number of copies you want from some software programs, conflicts can arise between the software program you are using and the driver. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some software programs, this communication does not happen and the copies values are treated independently. For example, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. Set the number of copies in the software program, wherever possible.

## Graphic settings (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver only)

The **Graphic** settings contain the following controls.

- [Image Color Management settings](#)
- [TrueType Font settings \(PS Emulation Unidriver only\)](#)

### Image Color Management settings

This control lists the available Image Color Management (ICM) options used for printing color graphics. ICM, a set of calculations for color matching, makes it possible for programs to adjust colors before printing so that the color of images displayed on the screen more closely match the color of images when printed. The following options are available:

- **ICM Method.** The ICM Method setting specifies how to print your color graphics. The default setting for **ICM Method** is **ICM Disabled**. The drop-down menu beside this setting contains the following options:
  - **ICM Handled by Host System.** Click this option if you want the calculations for color matching to be performed on the host computer before it sends the document to the MFP.
  - **ICM Handled by Printer.** Click this option if you want the calculations for color matching to be performed on your MFP. In this case, a set of rules for mapping the colors will be created and downloaded to the MFP (which must be Postscript language level 2 or higher). The MFP will use these rules to adjust colors in the document.
  - **ICM Handed by Printer using printer calibration. (PS Emulation Unidriver only)** If you want the calculations for color matching to be performed on your printer, click **ICM Handled by Printer using printer calibration**. In this case, the set of rules for mapping the colors has already been downloaded to the printer (which must be PostScript language level 2 or higher), so they will not be created or downloaded again.
- **ICM Intent.** The ICM Intent setting specifies how color images are created to produce the best-looking image on the printed page.
  - If you are printing a document that uses fully saturated, bright colors, click **Graphics** to achieve the best quality.
  - For photographs or pictures where the colors blend together, click **Pictures** to maximize the contrast.

- If your document uses a color that you need to match exactly, and you are sending the document to a MFP that has that specific color of ink, click **Proof**.
- If you want to preview the color settings from another product, click **Match**.

## TrueType Font settings (PS Emulation Unidriver only)

This option specifies the TrueType font settings. The following settings are available.

- **Substitute with Device Font.** This setting causes the MFP to use equivalent fonts for printing documents that contain TrueType fonts. This permits faster printing; however, you might lose special characters that the MFP font does not support. This is the default setting.
- **Download as Softfont.** This setting causes TrueType fonts to be downloaded and used for printing, instead of the fonts resident on the MFP.

## Document Options

The **Document Options** settings contain the following controls:

- [Advanced Printing Features](#)
- [Print Optimizations \(HP PCL 6 Unidriver and HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver only\)](#)
- [PostScript Options \(PS Emulation Unidriver only\)](#)
- [Printer Features](#)
- [Layout Options](#)

## Advanced Printing Features

When the **Advanced Printing Features** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and the **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available, depending on your MFP. For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, you can disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still be available in the print driver, even though they have been disabled. If you select an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab, the feature is automatically turned on again.

## Print Optimizations (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver only)

The default setting for **Print Optimizations** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and your document contains overlapping text and graphics, text placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, you can disable this feature. When disabled, print optimization features, such as substituting device fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

## PostScript Options (PS Emulation Unidriver only)

The following PostScript options appear in the PS Emulation Unidriver:

- [PostScript Output option](#)
- [TrueType Font Download option](#)
- [PostScript Language Level](#)

- [Send PostScript Error Handler](#)
- **PostScript Output Option**
- **TrueType Font Download Option**
- **PostScript Language Level**
- **Send PostScript Error Handler**

### PostScript Output option

The **PostScript Output Option** specifies the output format for PS files. Generally, you use the default setting, **Optimize for Speed**, to print your documents.

To create a file that conforms to the Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC), click **Optimize for Portability**. Each page of the document will be a self-contained object. This is useful if you want to create a PS file and print it on a different printer. If you want to include the file as an image in another document that is printed from a different software program, click **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)**. The **Archive Format** creates a PS file that you can use later.

### TrueType Font Download option

The **TrueType Font Download Option** specifies how TrueType fonts are downloaded. The default setting of **Automatic** allows the PS driver to decide which format is best.

- If you want to download the TrueType font as a scalable outline font, click **Outline**.
- To download the TrueType font as a bitmap font, click **Bitmap**.
- If your MFP is a TrueType rasterizer printer, click **Native TrueType** to download the TrueType font as an outline font.

### PostScript Language Level

The **PostScript Language Level** option specifies which PS language level to use, from 1 to 3. The highest level supported by the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP is 3, and this is the default setting. Some MFPs support multiple levels.

It is usually best to select the highest number available, because a higher language level provides more features. In some instances you should use level 1, such as when you are printing a file to disk, and that file will be printed by someone who uses a level-1 printer.

### Send PostScript Error Handler

The **Send PostScript Error Handler** setting specifies whether a PS error-handler message is sent. If you want the MFP to print an error page when an error occurs in the print job, click **Yes**. The default setting is **Yes**.

## Printer Features

The following **Printer Features** are available:

- [Print All Text as Black](#)
- [Send TrueType as Bitmap \(HP PCL 6 Unidriver and HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver only\)](#)
- [Raster Compression \(HP PCL 6 Unidriver only\)](#)

## Print All Text as Black

The **Print All Text as Black** feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic. **Print All Text as Black** remains enabled only for the current print job. When the current print job is completed, **Print All Text as Black** is automatically disabled.

## Send TrueType as Bitmap (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver only)

**Send TrueType as Bitmap** provides an alternative for those software programs that encounter problems when using TrueType fonts for special graphic purposes such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are first converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. The **Enabled** setting causes the driver to send TrueType fonts to the MFP as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

## Raster Compression (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)

Use the **Raster Compression** feature to select the graphics compression method:

- **Automatic.** The software determines the best compression method to use.
- **Best Quality.** Forces the software to use a lossless compression method. (Lossless means that no data is lost during compression.)
- **Maximum Compression.** Where applicable, requires the software to always use a lossy compression method (some data is lost). Choosing this option increases the print speed performance, but does decrease print image quality.

## Layout Options

The **Layout Options** contains the **Page Order** control.

### Page Order

**Page Order** specifies the order in which the pages of your document are printed. **Front to Back** prints the document so that the first page of the print job ends up on top of the stack in the output bin. **Back to Front** prints the document so that the last page of the print job ends up on top of the stack in the output bin. The **Back to Front** setting is useful if you are printing to a face-up output bin to achieve output in the correct order.



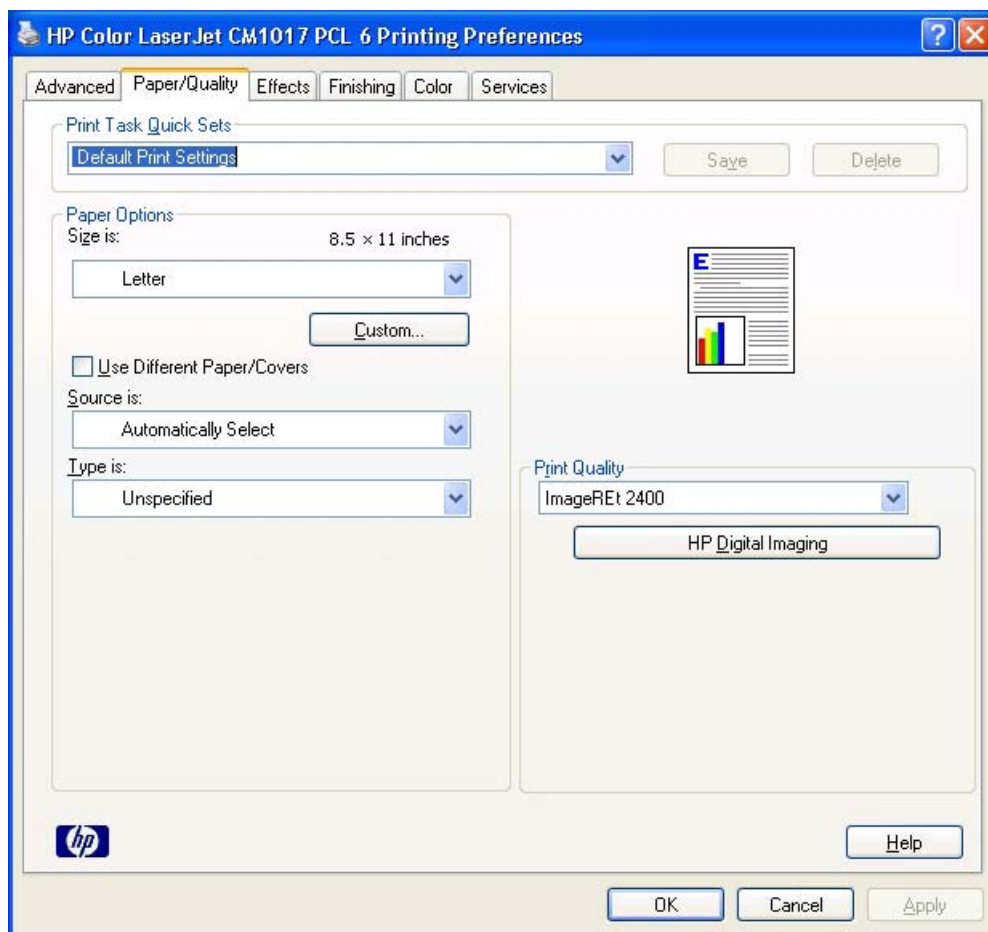
**NOTE** The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if you set **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) to be greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

## Paper/Quality tab features

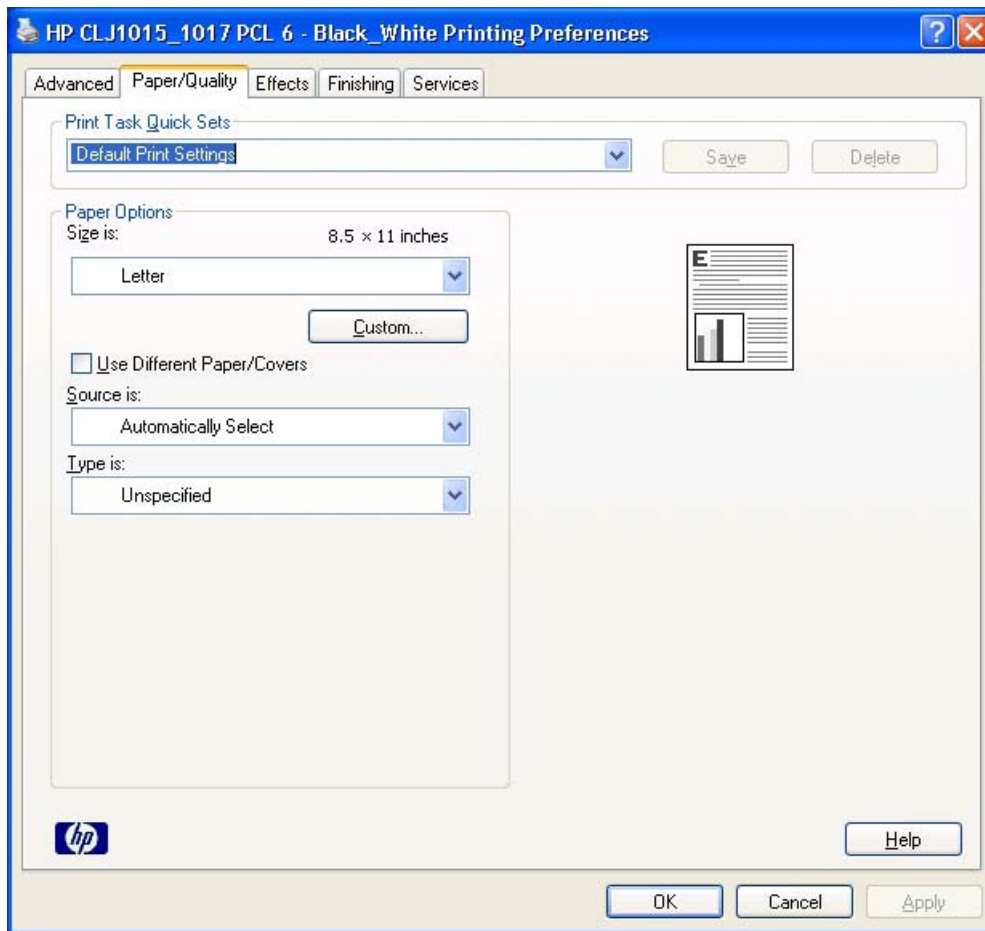
Follow these steps to access the **Paper/Quality** tab.

1. Click **Start**, **Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Microsoft Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Microsoft Windows XP Professional, Microsoft Windows XP x64, and Microsoft Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.
  - for Microsoft Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click **Paper/Quality**.

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify the size, type, and source of the media for your HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. You can also use this tab to indicate different paper-selection choices for the first page, other pages, and back cover of the document.

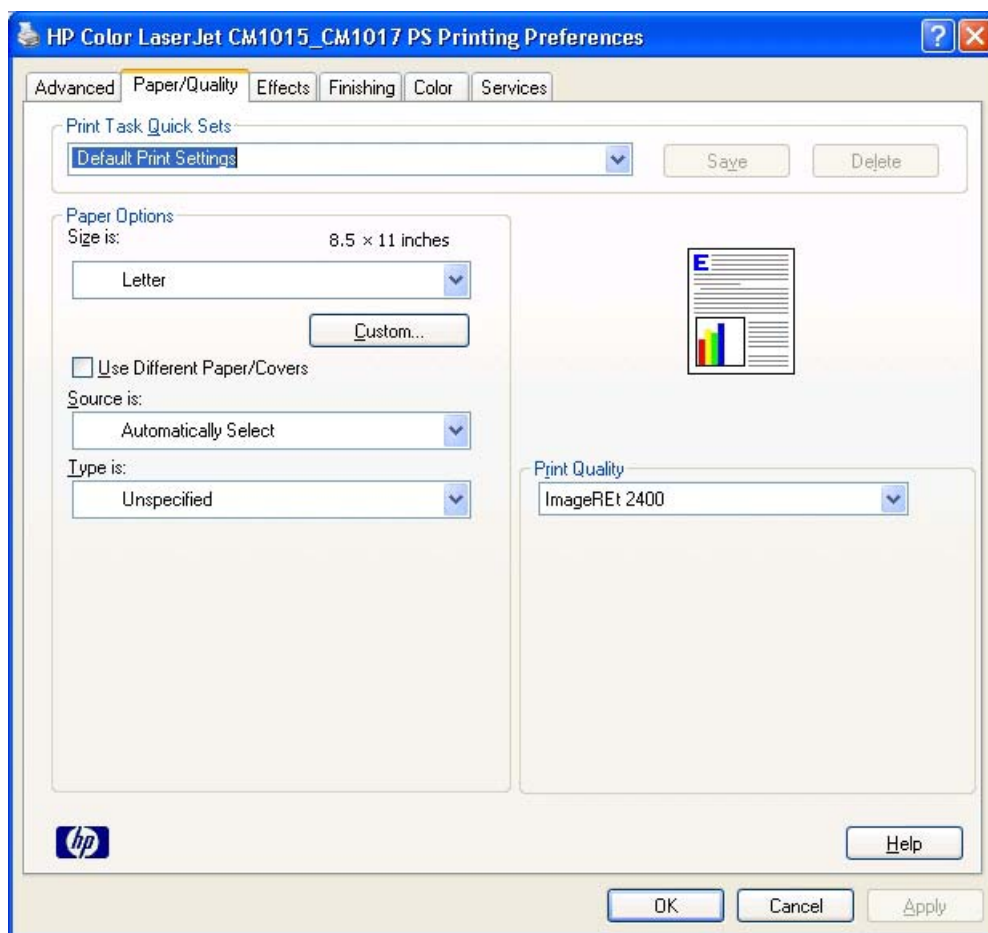


**Figure 5-5** Paper/Quality tab – HP PCL 6 Unidriver



**Figure 5-6 Paper/Quality tab – HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver**





**Figure 5-7** Paper/Quality tab – PS Emulation Unidriver

The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following controls:

- [Print Task Quick Sets](#)
- [Paper Options group box](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Print Quality group box \(HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver only\)](#)

## Print Task Quick Sets

The first group box in the upper portion of the **Paper/Quality** tab is **Print Task Quick Sets**. Because they are all the same control, any change to the **Print Task Quick Sets** group box that is made on the **Paper/Quality** tab affects all the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs that have the **Print Task Quick Sets** setting:

- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**



Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** setting to store the current combination of driver settings (except the settings on the **Advanced** and **Services** tabs, where the setting is not available). **Print Task Quick Sets** are either preset by network-administrator settings or user-defined printing specifications (such as media size, pages per sheet, and so on). The **Print Task Quick Sets** setting does *not* appear on the driver **Properties** tabs.

The following selections are available in the **Print Task Quick Sets** drop-down menu:

- **Default Print Settings**
- **User Guide Print Settings**
- **Type a new Quick Set name here**

## Default Print Settings

When you select **Default Print Settings**, nearly all of the settings are restored to the combination that existed after the driver was installed (the original settings). However, if the attribute combinations that are associated with watermark definitions, custom paper sizes, or the **User Guide Print Settings** quick set have been changed or deleted, the original settings are not restored.

**Type a new Quick Set name here** appears in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu automatically if no other driver settings have been changed since the driver was installed, or if all of the driver settings match the original settings. Otherwise, the setting in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu is the same label that appeared when you last closed the printing **Properties** dialog box by clicking **OK**.

## User Guide Print Settings

The **User Guide Print Settings** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of the *HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide*.

## Type new Quick Set name here

By default, the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu is set to **Type new Quick Set name here**. When you change any of the default settings on any of the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs and you want to save the configuration as a Print Task Quick Set, highlight the words **Type new Quick Set name here**, type the name you want for your new Print Task Quick Set, and then click **Save**. Print Task Quick Sets are saved in the system registry. To delete a Print Task Quick Set, select it from the drop-down menu and click **Delete**.

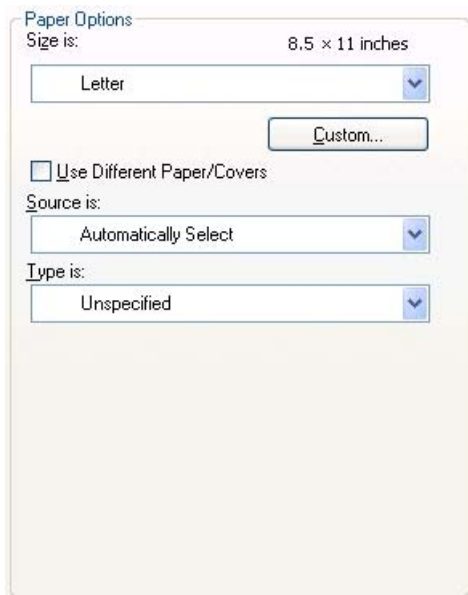


**NOTE** Administrators can predefine Print Task Quick Sets for their users. These administrator Print Task Quick Sets are defined on the server and are available to users, but usually cannot be modified by users. Users can also define Print Task Quick Sets for their own use. User-defined Print Task Quick Sets are described later in this section.

You can store a maximum of 25 **Print Task Quick Sets** on a particular system. If you attempt to save too many, a message box appears that reads, "There are too many Print Task Quick Sets defined. Please delete some before adding new ones."

## Paper Options group box

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections available by default.



**Figure 5-8** Paper Options group box

The appearance of the **Paper Options** group box changes when the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected. The following settings in the **Paper Options** group box are available:

- [Size is: drop-down menu](#)
- [Source Is: drop-down menu](#)
- [Type is: drop-down menu](#)
- [Use Different Paper/Covers options](#)

### Size is: drop-down menu

The **Size is:** drop-down menu lists all of the supported media sizes.

You can specify size for all the settings in the **Paper Options** group box. Use the same size of media for the entire print job. That is, if the print job uses Letter-size media, any option that you select from the available **Use Different Paper** options must also use Letter-size media.



**NOTE** Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different media sizes within a single document.

For the **Other Pages** and **Back Cover** settings, you can select a source (tray) and media type that differ from the settings selected for **First Page**. If a conflict exists among media source, media size, and/or media type, and you choose to keep the conflicting settings, the settings are processed in the following order: media size, media type, and then media source.

Because driver settings are overridden by media-size settings in most software programs, it is generally best to use the driver to set media size only for software programs that lack a media-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different media sizes.



**NOTE** When you use a software program with a media-size setting, you can specify different media sizes within a single document by using the **Use Different Paper/Covers** options. For more information, see [Use Different Paper/Covers options](#).

Follow these steps to create a custom paper size.

1. Click **Start, Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Microsoft Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows XP x64, and Microsoft Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**
  - for Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Click the **File** menu, **Server Properties**, and then the **Create a new form** check box.
3. Specify a name and dimensions for your paper size, and then click **Save Form**.

This new paper size will be included in any list of paper sizes in the driver and application tabs. The print dialogs for various software programs also often have settings that allow you to create custom paper sizes.

## Use Different Paper/Covers check box

When the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected and different options are configured, the **Size is:**, **Source is:**, and **Type is:** menus change, offering a variety of options. For more information, see [Use Different Paper/Covers check box](#).

## Source Is: drop-down menu

Use the **Source is:** drop-down menu to specify the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Source is:** drop-down menu can contain the following options:

- **Automatically select**
- **Printer Auto Select**
- **Manual feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1**
- **Tray 2** (250-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 3** (optional 250-sheet tray)

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the MFP uses the source tray that supports the media size that you have selected. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically select**, make sure that the correct media size is loaded in the source tray.

## Type is: drop-down menu

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP supports. When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the MFP uses the default media type, which is usually **Plain**.

The following standard paper types appear in the lists.

**Table 5-1** Standard paper types and engine speeds

Paper type	Engine speed
Unspecified	Full
Plain	Full
Preprinted	Full
Letterhead	Full
Transparency	Half speed
Prepunched	Full
Labels	Half speed
Bond	Half speed
Recycled	Full
Color	Full
Light (60 to 70 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Full
Heavy (90 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Half speed
Cardstock (106 to 177 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Half speed
Light Glossy (75 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Half speed
Glossy (106 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Half speed
Heavy Glossy (121 to 163 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Half speed
Tough Paper	Half speed
Envelope	Full
Heavy Envelope	Half speed
HP Premium Cover (200 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Half speed
HP Color Laser Photo Paper, Glossy	Half speed

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the media type. If you select a different setting, make sure the correct media type is loaded in the tray that you selected in the **Source is:** setting.

## Use Different Paper/Covers options

You can print books that include different media types by using the **Use Different Paper/Covers** options.

When you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box, the following settings can appear in the group box, along with associated options:

- **Front Cover**
- **First Page**
- **Other Pages**

- **Last Page**
- **Back Cover**

To use **Use Different Paper/Covers** options, you must configure the setting for the print job. Each option for the **Use Different Paper/Covers** setting is described in the sections that follow this procedure. Use the following instructions to configure the setting.

### To configure the Use Different Paper/Covers options for a print job

For each option, select a different tray from the **Source Is:** drop-down menu. For some options, the **Type is:** drop-down menu is also available.

1. To use different paper or cover stock, select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box. A list of options appears in the dialog box. The full set of selections is visible when you use the down arrow button to the right of the list to scroll.
2. To use different media for the pages within the print job, select the appropriate option (**Front Cover**, **First Page**, **Other Pages**, **Last Page**, or **Back Cover**) in the dialog box. A check mark appears to the left of the option when you change a setting in the **Source is:** or **Type is:** drop-down menus.
3. Click **OK** to print.



**NOTE** Use the same size of media for the entire print job. All options that you select from the available **Use Different Paper/Covers** options use the size selected in the **First Page** settings.

When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the application software.

Each option for the **Use Different Paper/Covers** setting is described in the following sections, in the order they appear in the pane below the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box.

### Front Cover and Back Cover options

Use these options to include a blank or preprinted front cover or back cover on a document.

The following figure shows the **Front Cover** setting and options. These options are the same for the **Back Cover** setting.



**Figure 5-9** Front Cover setting

The **Front Cover** and **Back Cover** options are as follows:

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

When you select **Front Cover** or **Back Cover**, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** and **Type is:** drop-down menus become available and a check mark appears next to the **Back Cover** option.



**NOTE** The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. For two-page-per-sheet (2-up) booklet printing, you can obtain a cover by selecting different media for the first page only. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would otherwise be printed in the middle of a booklet.

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the [Source is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the MFP supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the [Type is: drop-down menu](#) section of this chapter.

### Using the First Page option for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP drivers send print jobs in reverse order to accommodate the face-up output. To compensate for this feature, follow these instructions when using the **First Page** option with the **Use Different Paper/Covers** feature.

1. Click to select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box.
2. Click to select the **First Page** option.
3. In the **Source is:** drop-down menu, select **Manual Feed in Tray 1**.

4. Select the media type from the **Type is:** drop-down menu.
5. Click the **Advanced** tab.
6. Under **Document Options**, make sure that the **Advanced Printing Features** are set to **Enabled**.
7. Under **Layout Options**, make sure the **Page Order** option is set to **Front to Back**.



**NOTE** Do not load your first-page media into the priority feed slot until you are prompted to do so by the software or by the MFP control panel.

8. Click **OK**, and then print your document.
9. The print job prints, then the software or the MFP control panel prompts you to load the first-page media into the priority feed slot.
10. Load the first-page media into the priority feed slot to finish the print job.

### Other Pages and Last Page options

Use these options to select an alternative media size, type, or source for the first page, other pages, or last page of a document. The following figure shows the appearance of the **Paper Options** group box when you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box.



**Figure 5-10** First Page, Other Pages, and Last Page options

The **First Page**, **Other Pages**, and **Last Page** options are as follows:

- **Size is:** drop-down menu
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Size is:** driver setting for the first page applies to the entire print job. When this is set, the setting becomes unavailable for all the other **Use Different Paper/Covers** options.

## Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When the cursor moves over the document preview image, the cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

## Print Quality group box (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver only)

The **Print Quality** group box provides options that control resolution and digital imaging settings. The group box includes the following options:

- [Print Quality drop-down menu](#)
- [HP Digital Imaging \(PCL 6 unidriver only\)](#)

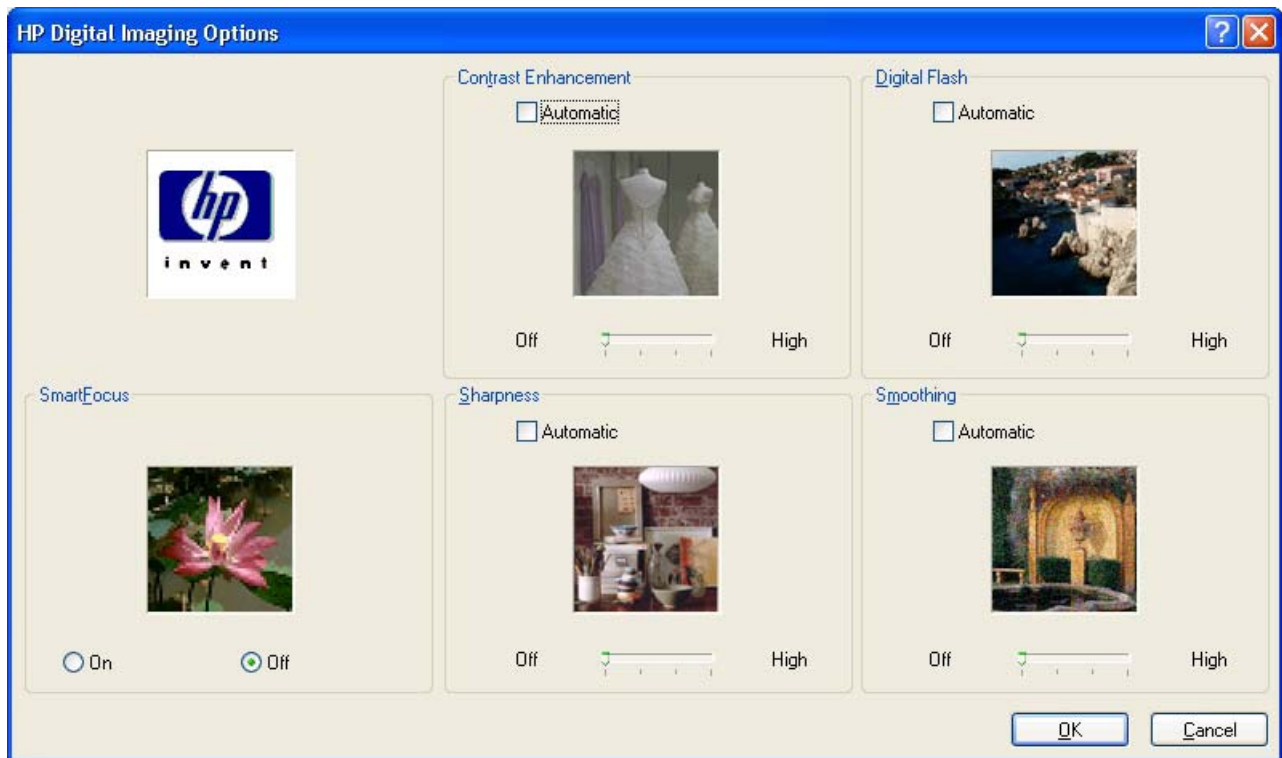
### Print Quality drop-down menu

The **Print Quality** drop-down menu contains the ImageREt 2400 resolution option. This setting produces 2400 dpi color output quality through HP Image Resolution Enhancement Technology (ImageREt) 2400. This setting is selected by default.

### HP Digital Imaging (PCL 6 unidriver only)

Click the **HP Digital Imaging** button to open the **HP Digital Imaging Options** dialog box.





**Figure 5-11** HP Digital Imaging Options dialog box

The HP Digital Imaging settings should be used only on high-resolution images (600 dpi or higher) that are printed on photograph-quality paper. These settings are not recommended for text.

The following settings can be adjusted on the **HP Digital Imaging Options** dialog box:

- **Contrast Enhancement.** This setting has an **Automatic** check box and a slide bar ranging from **Off** to **High**. Use the **Contrast Enhancement** setting to increase image contrast for a more visually pleasing result. This filter is useful with flat images (images in which much of the image content is compressed into a small dynamic range of pixel values). Flat images can result from low lighting, environmental haze, or camera or scanner limitations.
- **Digital Flash.** This setting has an **Automatic** check box and a slide bar ranging from **Off** to **High**. Use the **Digital Flash** setting to adjust lighting levels to reveal areas in shadow. The filter locates dark areas in an image and brings out detail without degrading other features in the image.
- **SmartFocus.** This setting has settings are **Off** and **On** options. Use the **SmartFocus** setting to increase the apparent resolution of lower resolution images. Many images that are downloaded from the Internet or from digital cameras can be compressed because of size restrictions, and might exhibit pixilation artifacts when printed. **SmartFocus** upscales the image to the printer resolution without accentuating these artifacts.
- **Sharpness.** This setting has an **Automatic** check box and a slide bar ranging from **Off** to **High**. Many images are improved by increasing their sharpness. Use the **Sharpness** feature locates edge detail and makes it more prominent. The filter detects regions that contain significant variations in pixel value along a number of different vectors (which denotes edges) and then applies a filter to enhance detail.
- **Smoothing.** This setting has an **Automatic** check box and a slide bar ranging from **Off** to **High**. Just as many images benefit increased sharpness, many images are improved by smoothing, which decreases noise artifacts that are often created by digital cameras or scanners. When you

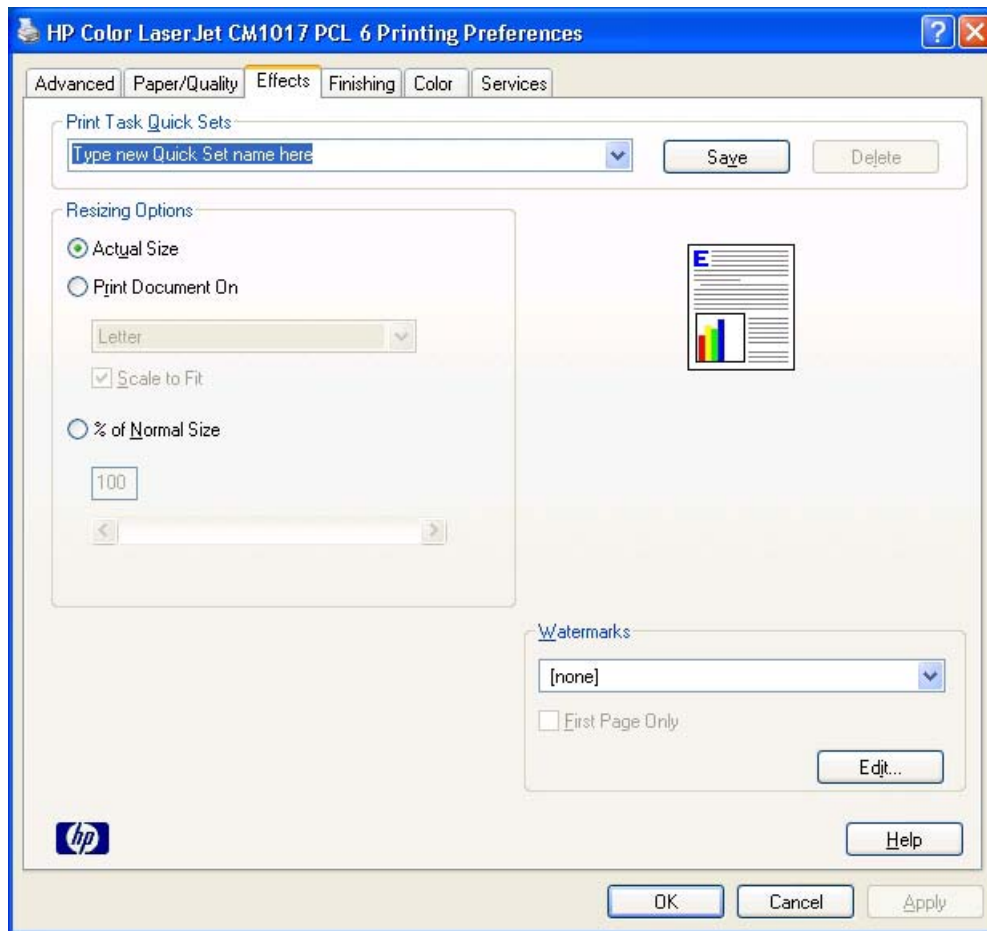
select **Smoothing**, the filter locates areas that contain abrupt changes in pixel value by comparison with surrounding pixels (which denotes noise) and then applies a filter to smooth the output.

## Effects tab features

Follow these steps to access the **Effects** tab.

1. Click **Start, Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.
  - for Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click **Effects**.

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks.



**Figure 5-12** Effects tab

The **Effects** tab contains the following controls:

- [Print Task Quick Sets](#)
- [Resizing Options group box](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

- [Watermarks group box](#)

## Print Task Quick Sets

Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** control to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see [Print Task Quick Sets](#) in the **Paper/Quality** tab section of this guide.

## Resizing Options group box

The **Resizing Options** group box consists of the following controls:

- **Actual Size** (default)
- **Print Document On** setting
- **Scale to Fit** option
- **% of Normal Size** setting

### Actual Size setting

**Actual Size** is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

### Print Document On setting

Select the **Print Document On** option button to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

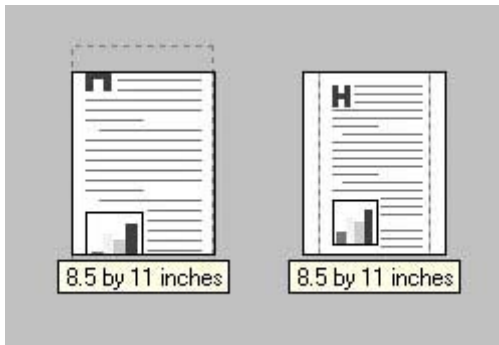
The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

- The **% of Normal Size** value is not 100.
- The **Pages per Sheet** value (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the media sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard media sizes that are supported by the selected media source and any custom sizes that you have created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected.

### Scale to Fit option

The **Scale to Fit** option box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following illustration shows preview images for a document that is formatted for legal-size paper and where the **Print Document On** check box is selected, and the target size is specified as **Letter**.



**Figure 5-13** Preview images - Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)

When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target page size.

### % of Normal Size option

The **% of Normal Size** option provides a slider bar to use for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is 100% of normal size. Normal size is defined as the paper size that is selected within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the MFP.

The limits of the range are from 25 to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the scroll bar indicator is dragged, and the preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the scroll bar arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

You cannot achieve an exact value by dragging the scroll bar indicator at the default Windows resolution; use the scroll bar indicator to approximate the appropriate value, and then use the scroll bar arrows to refine the value.

The following settings disable **% of Normal Size**:

- **Print Document On** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1

### Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**

- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When the cursor moves over the document preview image, the cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

## Watermarks group box

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create your own custom watermarks (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

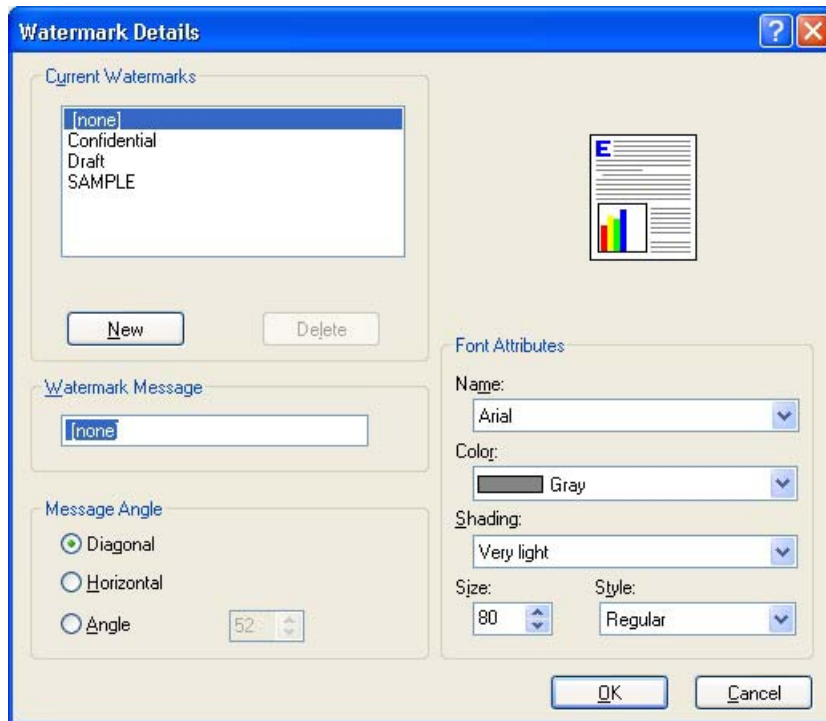
- **(none)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus the string "(none)", which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)".

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears.



**Figure 5-14** Watermark Details dialog box

The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes made to the previous watermark are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

## Current watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that you have created.

### Creating a new watermark

1. Click **New**.

The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as "Untitled" until you name it.

2. To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** edit box.

The name that you type in the **Watermark Message** field appears in the following locations:

- in the **Current Watermarks** group box in the **Watermark Details** dialog box
- in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab



**NOTE** You can have no more than 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks, the **New** button is disabled. The **(none)** setting is one of the 30 definable watermarks; you can customize names for the other 29 watermarks.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

### Deleting a watermark

1. Select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list.
2. Click **Delete**.
3. A warning appears asking whether you are sure you want to delete the selected item.
  - Click **Cancel** if you want to keep the watermark.
  - Click **OK** to delete the selected watermark.

## Watermark message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

# Message angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations on the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. The following settings are available:

- **Diagonal**. This is the default setting . Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.
- **Horizontal**. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page.
- **Angle**. Select this setting to place the text at the specified angle across the page. Use the numeric spin box to select the angle.

# Font attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls:

- **Name** drop-down menu
- **Color** drop-down menu
- **Shading** drop-down menu
- **Size** spin box
- **Style** drop-down menu

## Name drop-down menu

The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

## Color drop-down menu

The **Color** drop-down menu provides a fixed, unalterable set of color choices, in palette/color name-pair form, for the watermark. The triplet values for these colors are shown in the following table.

**Table 5-2** Watermark color values

Setting	Gray	Red	Yellow	Green	Cyan	Blue	Magenta
Lightest	255	255	255	232	232	232	255
	255	232	255	255	255	232	232
	255	232	232	232	255	255	255
Very Light	224	255	255	224	224	224	255
	224	224	255	255	255	224	224
	224	224	224	224	255	255	255
Light	192	255	255	192	192	192	255
	192	192	255	255	255	192	192



**Table 5-2** Watermark color values (continued)

Setting	Gray	Red	Yellow	Green	Cyan	Blue	Magenta
	192	192	192	192	255	255	255
Med Light	160	255	255	160	160	160	255
	160	160	255	255	255	160	160
	160	160	160	160	255	255	255
Medium	128	255	255	128	128	128	255
	128	128	255	255	255	128	128
	128	128	128	128	255	255	255
Med Dark	96	255	255	96	96	96	255
	96	96	255	255	255	96	96
	96	96	96	96	255	255	255
Dark	64	255	255	64	64	64	255
	64	64	255	255	255	64	64
	64	64	64	64	255	255	255
Very Dark	32	255	255	32	32	32	255
	32	32	255	255	255	32	32
	32	32	32	32	255	255	255
Darkest	0	255	255	0	0	0	255
	0	0	255	255	255	0	0
	0	0	0	0	255	255	255

### Shading drop-down menu

The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu.

- **Lightest**
- **Very Light** (default)
- **Light**
- **Medium Light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. A choice of **Light** produces a lightly saturated gray watermark. A choice of **Lightest** produces the lightest shade of watermark; **Darkest** produces a black watermark.

### Size spin box

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language-dependent. The choice of **Regular**, **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Bold Italic** is available from the **Style** drop-down menu.

### Style drop-down menu

The choice of **Regular**, **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Bold Italic** is available from the **Style** drop-down menu. The default **Style** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Regular**.

### Default settings

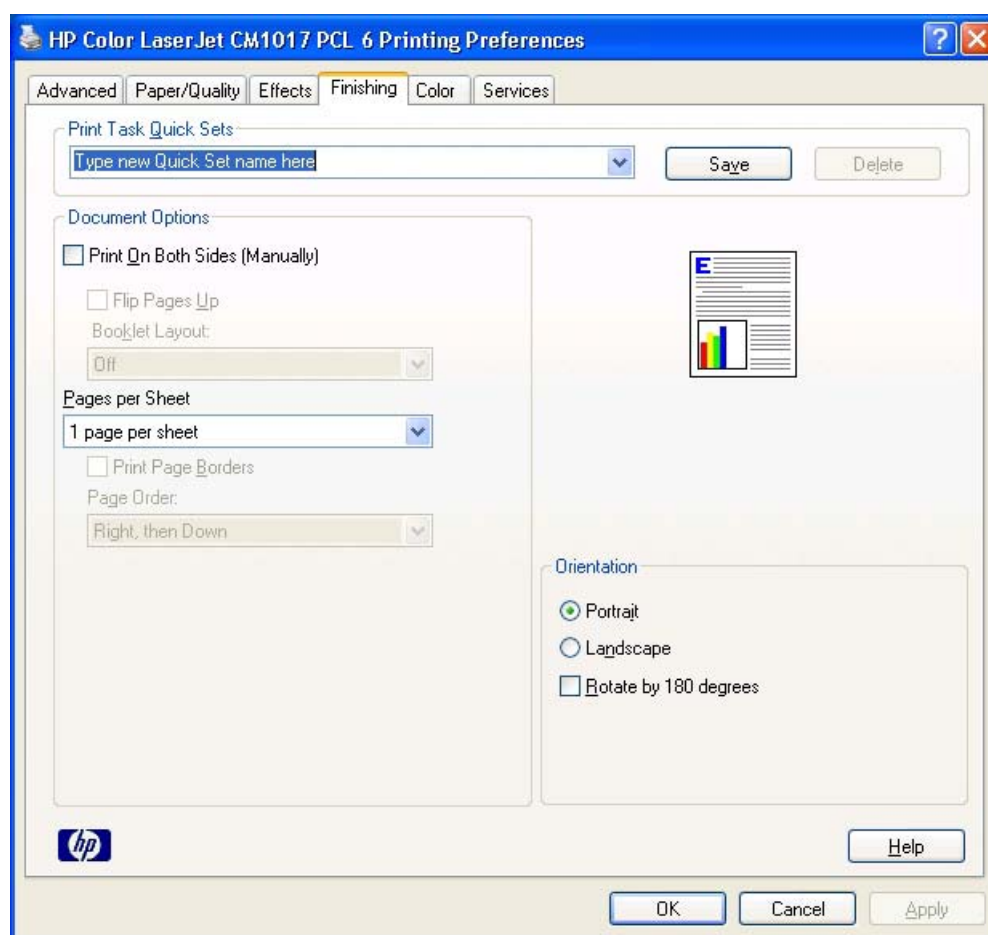
The default settings for new watermarks are **Arial** font, **Gray** color, **Very Light** shading, **80** points, and **Regular** style. The default settings for preset watermarks are **Arial** font, **Very Light** shading, and **Bold** style. The default point size for preset watermarks is language-dependent, and varies.

## Finishing tab features

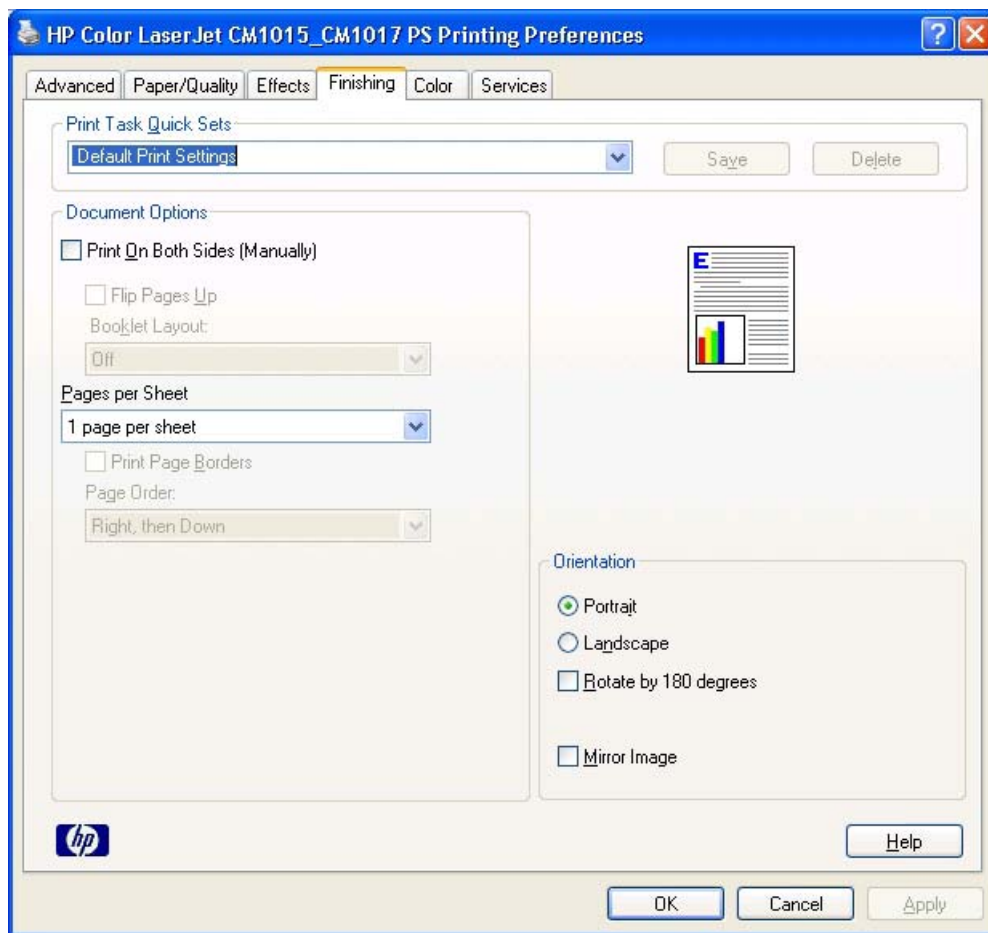
Follow these steps to access the **Finishing** tab.

1. Click **Start, Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.
  - for Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click **Finishing**.

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the media output.



**Figure 5-15** Finishing tab - HP PCL 6 Unidriver



**Figure 5-16** Finishing tab – PS Emulation Unidriver

The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls:

- [Print Task Quick Sets](#)
- [Document Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Orientation group box](#)

## Print Task Quick Sets

Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** control to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see [Print Task Quick Sets](#) in the **Paper/Quality** tab section of this guide.

## Document Options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls.

- **Print on Both Sides** or **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box
- **Flip Pages Up** option

- **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu
- **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu
- **Print Page Borders** check box
- **Page Order** drop-down menu

## **Print on Both Sides and Print on Both Sides (Manually) check box**

The **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** option controls the manual duplexing function of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

### **Manually printing on both sides**

Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box to print on the second side of the media.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the MFP makes adjustments to its print modes. When you select a media type, you are, in effect, instructing the MFP to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the media with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. A different print mode is used with each media type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

Select the media type that corresponds to the media you are using for the print job. The following media types have a different print mode when you manually print on the second side:

- **Plain**
- **Preprinted**
- **Letterhead**
- **Prepunched**
- **Bond**
- **Recycled**
- **Color**
- **Light 60-75 g/m2**
- **Heavy 90-105 g/m2**
- **Light Glossy 75-105 g/m2**
- **Glossy 106-120 g/m2**
- **Heavy Glossy 121-163 g/m2**
- **Tough Paper**
- **HP Premium Cover 200 g/m2**
- **HP Color Laser Photo Paper, Glossy**

**Cardstock** media can be manually printed on the second side, but there is no change to the print mode. **Transparencies** and **Labels** should not be manually printed on the second side.

Follow these steps to manually print on both sides.

1. Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box.
2. Click **OK**. The even-number pages of the document print.
3. When the **Print on Both Sides Instructions** dialog box appears on the computer screen, follow the directions in the dialog box to insert the stack of media (on which the even-numbered pages have been printed). The MFP control panel shows the **Load Tray** message for the tray from which you printed the even-numbered pages.

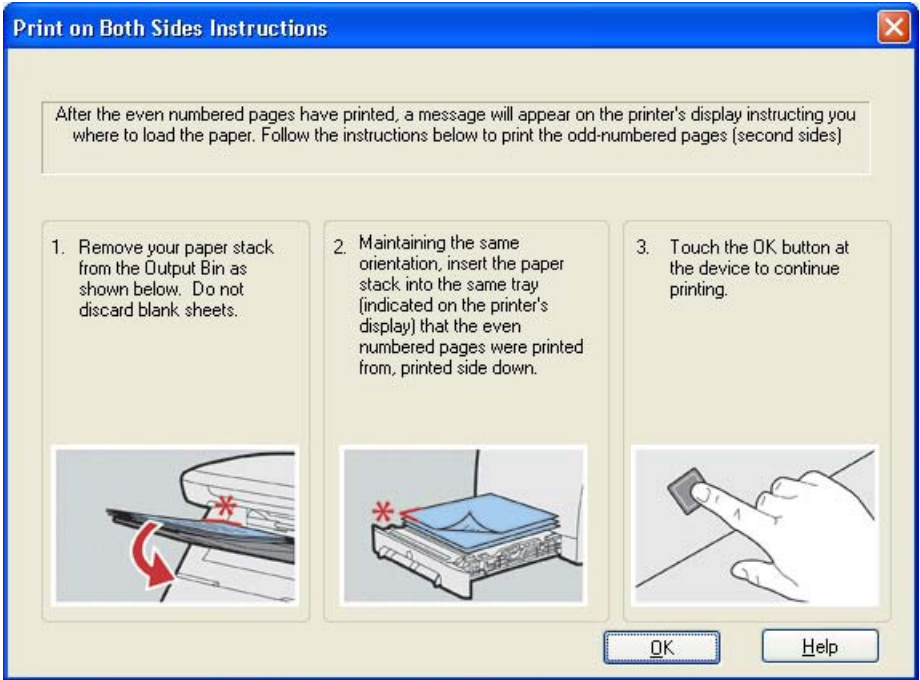


Figure 5-17 Print on Both Sides Instructions

When you have completed the steps that appear in the dialog box, the second half of the print job prints on the back side of the stack of media. The driver does not require the program to specifically support odd- and even-page printing, because the driver coordinates this function.

### Flip Pages Up option

Select the **Flip Pages Up** check box, which is enabled only when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip Pages Up** check box is *not* selected. The following table shows the results of selecting this box, depending on the paper orientation that you select on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 5-3 Page orientation

Orientation (Finishing tab)	Flip Pages Up selected	Flip Pages Up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

## Booklet layout drop-down menu

The **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is **Off**.

- **Left Edge Binding**
- **Right Edge Binding**

When you select **Left Edge Binding** or **Right Edge Binding**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per Sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. If you change the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the booklet setting is disabled. See the [Printing a booklet](#) section of this chapter for more information.

The **Booklet Layout** setting is disabled when A6 or B6 (JIS) is selected as the media size, and an incompatibility error message appears when you click **OK** to close the driver.

## Book and booklet printing

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP supports book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job consisting of at least two pages that can have a different media type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the **Front Cover**, **First Page**, **Other Pages**, **Last Page**, and **Back Cover** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab (available when you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box) to select different media for these pages.

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the media type. Use the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

## Printing a booklet

Complete the following steps to print a booklet.

1. Click **File**, **Print**, and then **Properties**.
2. Click the **Finishing** tab and select the **Print on Both Sides** check box.
3. In the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, select the type of booklet printing that you want (for example, **Right Edge Binding**).
4. Click **OK** in the print driver.
5. Click **OK** in the **Print** dialog box to print.

## Printing a book

You can print a book in which the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover are printed on different media types. For more information, see the [Paper/Quality tab features](#) section of this chapter.

### Pages per Sheet drop-down menu

Use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages that you want to print on a single sheet of media. If you choose to print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- 1 page per sheet (this is the default)
- 2 pages per sheet
- 4 pages per sheet
- 6 pages per sheet
- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet



**NOTE** Selecting an option other than **2 pages per sheet** makes booklet printing unavailable.

### Print Page Borders check box

Related controls indented beneath the **Pages per Sheet** edit box are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

**Print Page Borders** sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

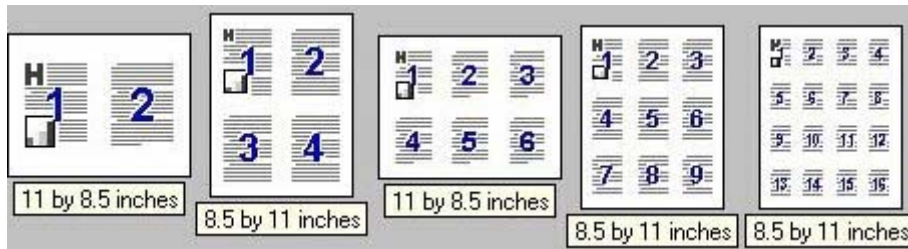
### Page Order drop-down menu

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following illustration.





**Figure 5-18** Page-order preview images

- 2 pages per sheet
- 4 pages per sheet
- 6 pages per sheet
- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet

## Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When the cursor moves over the document preview image, the cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

## Orientation group box

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- [Portrait option button](#)
- [Landscape option button](#)
- [Rotate by 180 degrees check box](#)
- [Mirror Image check box \(PS Emulation Unidriver only\)](#)

### Portrait option button

Select this feature to print your document in **Portrait** orientation. This is the default setting.

### Landscape option button

Select this feature to print your document in **Landscape** orientation.

### **Rotate by 180 degrees check box**

Select this feature to rotate the document image on the paper 180°. For example: If the return address on an envelope is smudged, use this setting and feed the envelope so that the return address area is fed into the MFP first.

### **Mirror Image check box (PS Emulation Unidriver only)**

Click the **Mirror Image** check box to reverse the horizontal coordinates of the printed document.

## Color tab features (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and PS Emulation Unidriver only)

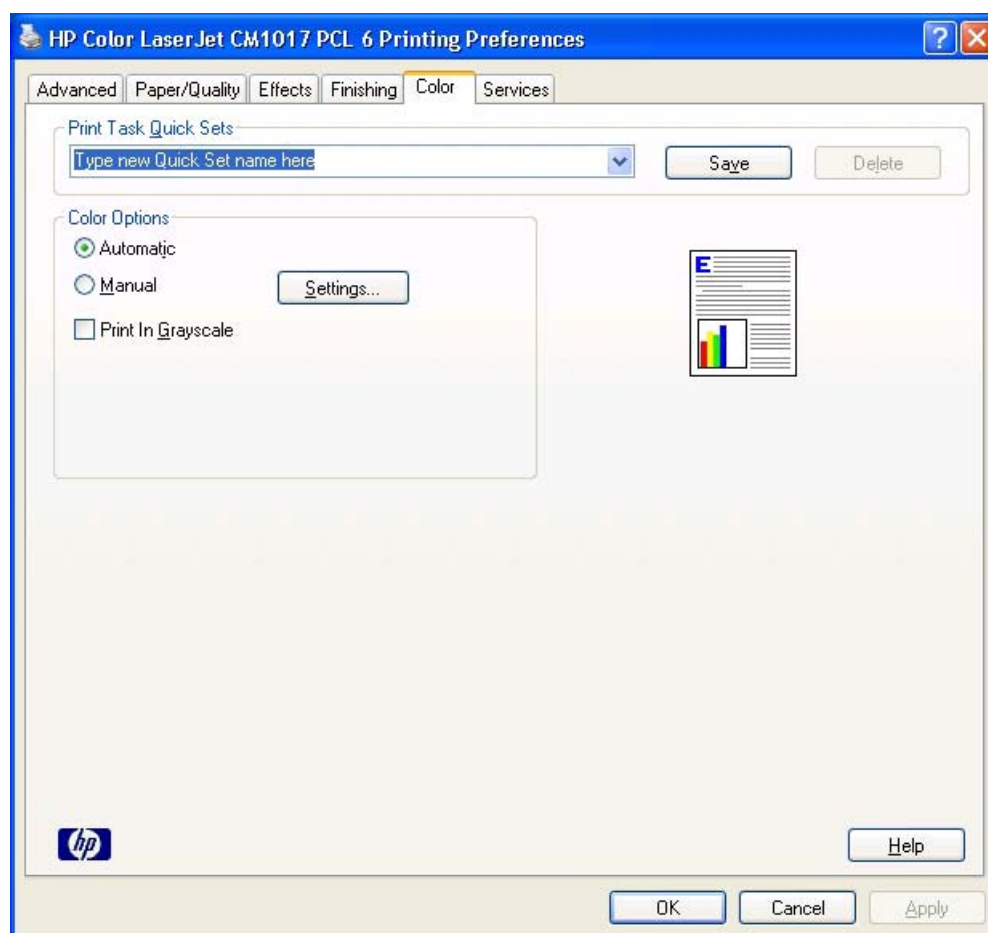
Follow these steps to access the **Color** tab.

1. Click **Start**, **Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.
  - for Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click **Color**.



**NOTE** The **Color** tab does not appear in the HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver.

Use the **Color** tab to specify predefined color-option settings or to fine-tune the color treatments and half-toning. Color output can also be converted to grayscale.



**Figure 5-19** Color tab

The **Color** tab contains the following controls:

- [Print Task Quick Sets](#)
- [Color options](#)
- [Print in Grayscale](#)

## Print Task Quick Sets

The **Print Task Quick Sets** control is available on each Printing Preference tab, and is used to store the current combination of driver settings found on all of the other tabs. **Print Task Quick Sets** are either preset or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pagers per sheet. For more information, see [Print Task Quick Sets](#) in the **Paper/Quality** tab section of this guide.

## Color options

Use the **Color Options** group box to adjust the independent color controls. The settings affect the print job color rendering and print quality. The **Color Options** group box contains the following controls:

- [Automatic color settings](#)
- [Manual color settings](#)

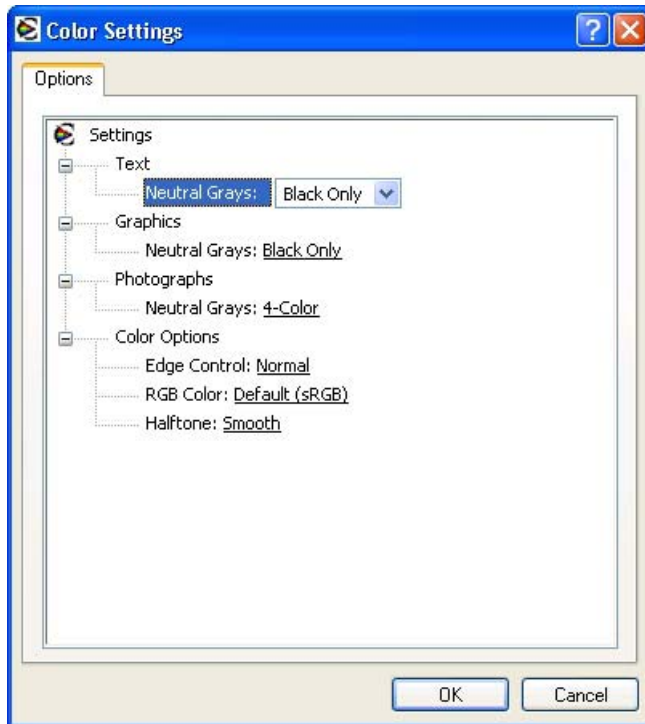
### Automatic color settings

Use the **Automatic** option for default coloration settings that automatically fine-tune your color MFP output. The HP **Automatic** default color settings provide high-quality output for most color printing needs.

### Manual color settings

To change the default coloration settings, select the **Manual** option, and then click the **Settings** button. The **Color Settings** dialog box appears.

To change the settings, make your selections from the drop-down menus in the **Color Settings** dialog box, and then click **OK**. The following figure shows the **Color Settings** dialog box:



**Figure 5-20** Color Settings dialog box

The **Color Settings** dialog box gives you independent control of the following settings:

- [Text, Graphics, and Photographs settings](#)

### Text, Graphics, and Photographs settings

Use these sections to adjust the **Neutral Grays** setting for each control.

#### Neutral Grays setting

The **Neutral Grays** drop-down menu controls the selection of a device-dependent color table that is embedded in the MFP firmware. The options are **Black Only** or **4-Color**. You can adjust the **Neutral Grays** setting independently for **Text**, **Graphics**, or **Photographs**.

- **Black Only.** This option generates neutral colors (grays and black) by using only black toner. This option guarantees that neutral colors do not have a color cast. **Black Only** is the default setting for the **Text** and **Graphics** components.
- **4-Color.** This option generates neutral colors by combining all four colors of toner, which produces smoother gradients and transitions to non-neutral colors. It also produces the darkest possible black. The default setting for **Photographs** is **4-Color**.

#### General

Use the **General** setting group to control the **Edge Control**, **RGB Color**, and **Halftone** settings for all color printing.

## Edge Control

**Edge Control** determines how edges are rendered. **Edge Control** consists of Adaptive Halftoning and Trapping. Adaptive Halftoning increases the edge sharpness. Trapping reduces the effect of color-plane misregistration by slightly overlapping the edges of adjacent objects.

The **Edge Control** option contains the following settings:

- **Off.** The **Off** setting turns off Trapping and Adaptive Halftoning.
- **Light.** The **Light** setting provides minimal trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to On .
- **Normal.** The **Normal** setting provides the default trapping settings. Adaptive Halftoning is set to On.
- **Maximum.** The **Maximum** setting provides the most trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to On.

## RGB Color

The **RGB Color** settings affect the color treatment for object types and determines how colors are rendered. The following options are available.

- **Default (sRGB).** This option interprets RGB color space (sRGB), which is the accepted standard for many software companies and organizations such as Microsoft and the World Wide Web Consortium. **Default (sRGB)** is the default setting for all components.
- **Vivid.** This option uses the full range of the MFP's capabilities, producing colors that are more deeply saturated than those on your screen. If you use **Vivid** color, blues and greens will likely appear darker in print than on your monitor. Vivid color is useful for business graphics and other documents that require deep, rich colors.
- **Device.** This option sets the MFP to print RGB data in raw device mode. To render photographs correctly when this option is selected, you must manage color in the software program in which you are working or in the operating system.
- **AdobeRGB (1998).** Select **AdobeRGB (1998)** for documents that use the Adobe RGB color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in Adobe RGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe Photoshop® use the Adobe RGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses Adobe RGB , turn off the color management in the software program and allow the MFP software to manage the color space.
- **Photo/Image.** Photo/Image interprets the RGB color as if it was printed as a photograph in a digital mini-lab, rendering the deeper, more saturated colors differently than **Default** mode. Use this setting for printing photos. For best results, use HP Glossy Laser Paper with this setting.



**NOTE** If your software program converts text and graphics to raster, the **Photographs** settings also control the **Text** and **Graphics** settings.

## Halftone

The **Halftone** setting controls the selection of a device-dependent halftone algorithm that is embedded in the MFP firmware. The **Halftone** options, **Smooth** and **Detail**, affect the resolution and clarity of your color output.

- **Smooth.** This option provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas. It also enhances photographs by smoothing out fine color gradations. Select this option for uniform and smooth area fills.
  - Cyan - 155 lines per inch (lpi)
  - Magenta - 155 lpi
  - Yellow - 212 lpi
  - Black - 155 lpi
- **Detail.** This option is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors, or for images that contain a pattern or high level of detail. Select this option for sharp edges and detail.
  - Cyan - 190 lpi
  - Magenta - 190 lpi
  - Yellow - 200 lpi
  - Black - 212 lpi

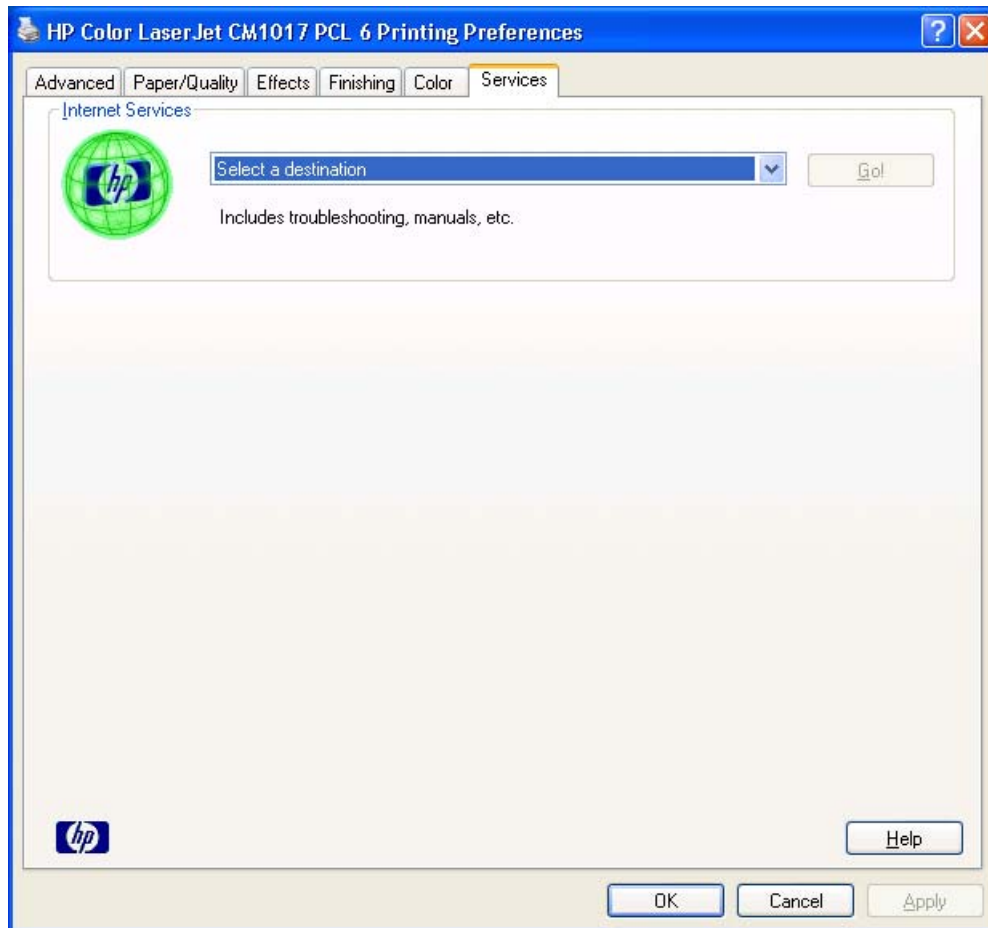
## Print in Grayscale

Select **Print in Grayscale** to print a color document in black and white. This option is useful for previewing preliminary copies of slides and hardcopy output quickly or for color documents that will be photocopied or faxed.

## Services tab features

Follow these steps to access the **Services** tab.

1. Click **Start**, **Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.
  - for Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Right-click the printer name, and then click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click **Services**.



**Figure 5-21** Services tab - HP PCL 6 Unidriver

The **Services** tab contains the **Select a destination** drop-down menu with the following selections:

- **Support and troubleshooting**
- **Product manuals**
- **Check for driver updates**
- **Orders supplies**



If you have Internet access, select any of these items and click **Go!** to open the corresponding HP Web page.

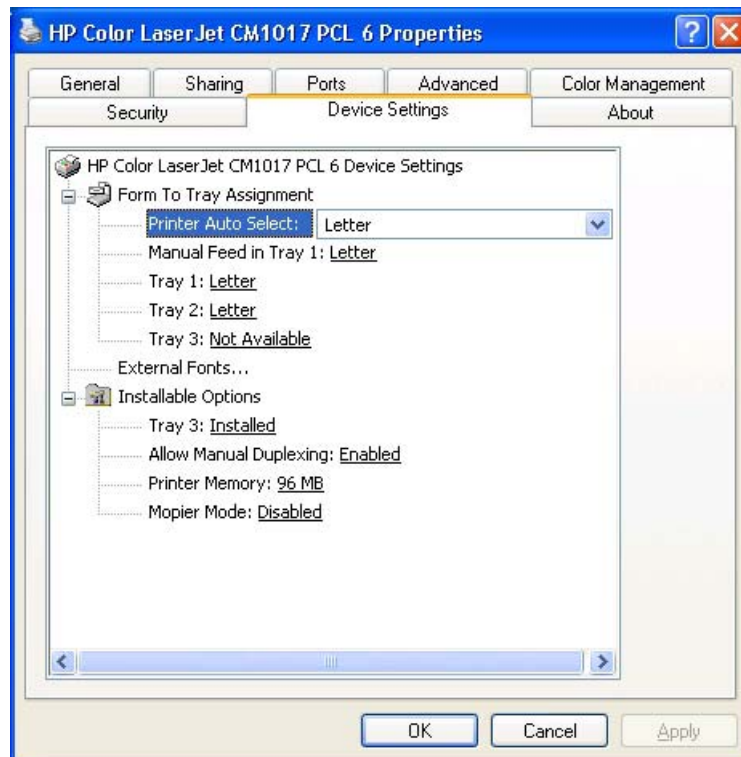
## Device Settings tab features

Follow these steps to access the **Device Settings** tab.

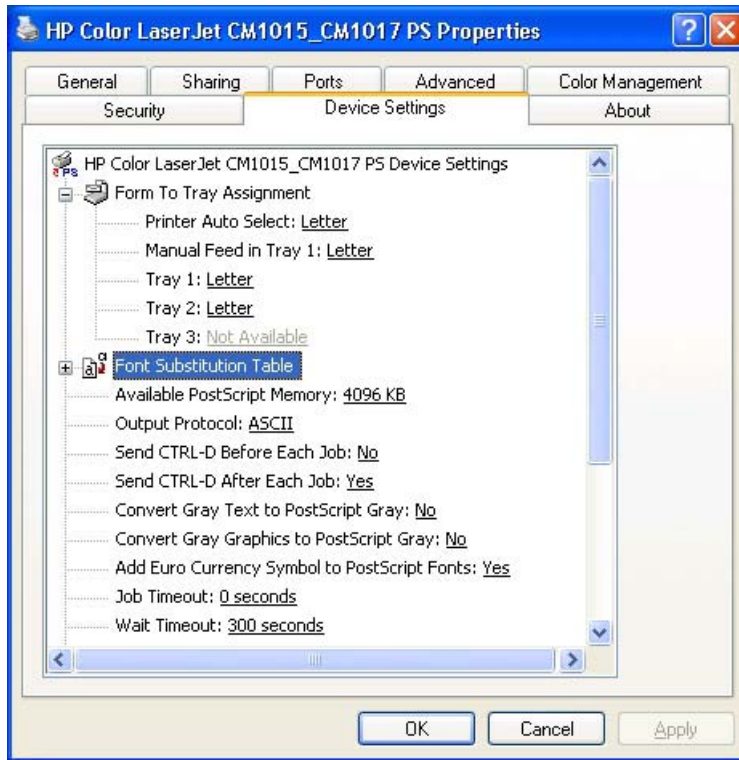
1. Click **Start**, **Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.
  - for Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Properties**.
3. Click **Device Settings**.

The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for media-handling devices and controls for managing the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

Various options are available on the **Device Settings** tab depending on whether you are using the HP PCL 6 Unidriver or the PS Emulation Unidriver. The following figures show the **Device Settings** tab for each of these drivers.



**Figure 5-22** Device Settings tab - HP PCL 6 Unidriver



**Figure 5-23** Device Settings tab - PS Emulation Unidriver

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- **Form to Tray Assignment** options
- **Font Substitution Table** options
- **External Fonts** option (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)
- **Installable Options** options
- Additional Device Settings for the PS Emulation Unidriver

## Form to Tray Assignment

A network administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the media size in each input tray.

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP supports more than one source of media. You can assign a form (which defines the media size and margins) to each of your MFP media sources. When a form is matched to a source, you can select the form when you print. The MFP prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the media size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the media-size list on the **Advanced** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tab set. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the MFP with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays.

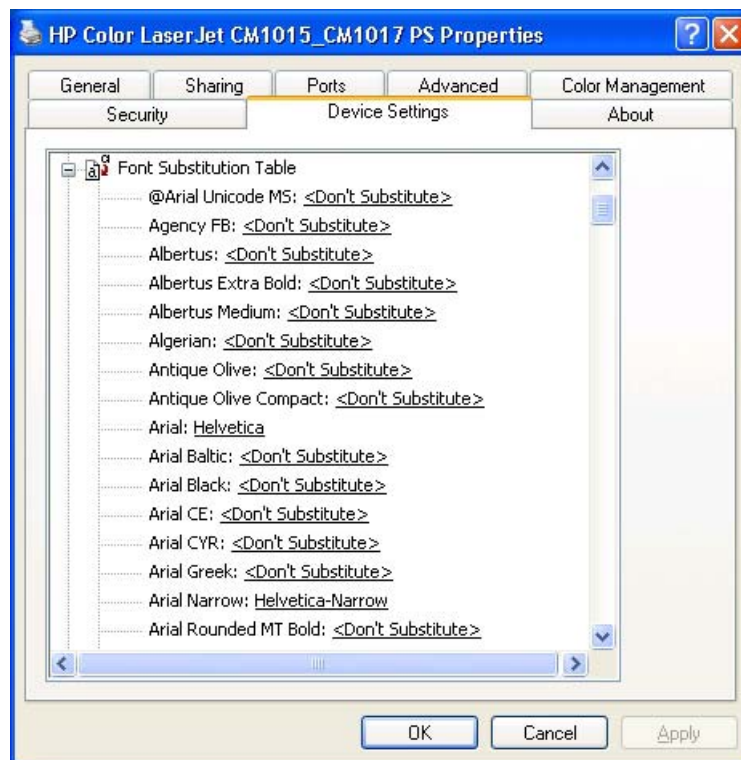
The input trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting are also listed as media sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

### Configuring the trays

1. Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the media size (form) that is loaded in that tray.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
4. Click **OK** to enable your settings, or, if necessary, click the **Cancel** button to reconfigure all the trays, and remove the size and type constraints that you have specified on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

## Font Substitution Table

Clicking this option opens the **Font Substitution Table** and makes available the options for changing the TrueType-to-PostScript font mapping. The following figure shows the **Device Settings** tab with the **Font Substitution Table** open.

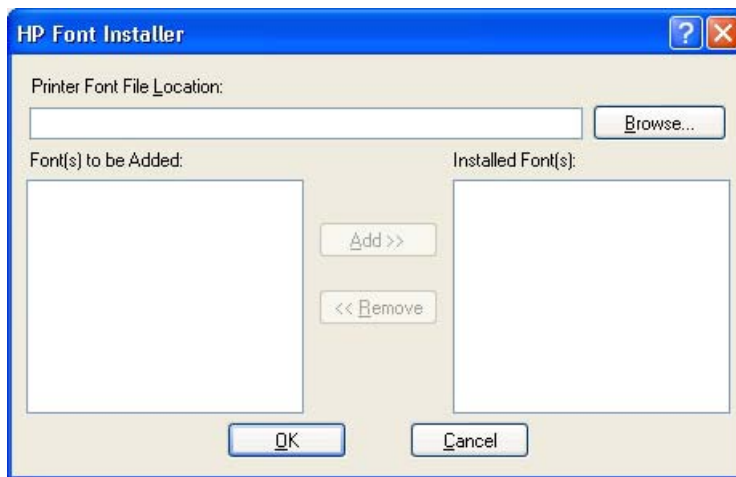


**Figure 5-24** Font Substitution Table – PS Emulation Unidriver

## External Fonts (HP PCL 6 Unidriver and HP PCL 6 Black and White Driver only)

Use the **External Fonts** option to install and remove external fonts for the MFP. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Clicking the **External Fonts** option causes the **Properties** button to appear. Clicking the **Properties** button opens the **Font Installer** dialog box.



**Figure 5-25** Font Installer dialog box

## Installing external fonts

Follow these steps to install external fonts.

1. Click **Start**, **Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - in Microsoft Windows 2000, click **Printers**
  - in Microsoft Windows XP and Microsoft Windows XP x64, click **Printers and Faxes**
2. Right-click the name of the MFP, and then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
4. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
5. Click the **Properties** button. The **Font Installer** dialog box appears.
6. Type the name and path of the font metric file in the **Printer Font File Location** text box, or click **Browse** to locate the file on your computer. The font file names appear in the **Font(s) to be Added** window.
7. Select the fonts that you want to add, and then click **Add**. The fonts are installed and the file names appear in the **Installed Font(s)** window.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Font Installer** dialog box.

## Removing external fonts

1. Click **Start, Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - in Microsoft Windows 2000, click **Printers**
  - in Microsoft Windows XP and Microsoft Windows XP x64, click **Printers and Faxes**
2. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
3. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
4. Click the **Properties** button. The **Font Installer** dialog box appears.
5. The external fonts that are installed appear in the **Installed Fonts** window. Select the fonts that you want to remove, and then click **Remove**. The fonts are removed.
6. Click **OK** to close the **Font Installer** dialog box.

## Installable Options

This section provides information to configure the printing options that you can install for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. The following controls are available:

- **Tray 3**
- **Allow Manual Duplexing**
- **Printer Memory**
- **Mopier Mode**
- **PostScript Passthrough** (PS Emulation Unidriver only)
- **JPEG Passthrough** (PS Emulation Unidriver only)

### Tray 3

The default for this control is **Not Installed**. If you purchase the optional Tray 3, you can use the drop-down menu to configure the tray.

### Allow Manual Duplexing

Use this setting to allow printing on both sides of a page by using manual two-sided printing.

### Printer Memory

This option matches the setting to the amount of memory that is installed in the MFP. The driver generates ranges of memory that can be selected, up to the maximum that the MFP can accept. The driver can use this information to manage how the print driver uses the MFP memory.

## Mopier Mode



**NOTE** This feature requires at least 128 MB of RAM.

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the MFP once. The remainder of the copies are printed at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, without requiring the use of a photocopier.

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP supports the transmit-once mopying feature when the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab is **Enabled**.

When you use the HP PCL 6 Unidriver or the PS Emulation Unidriver, mopying is performed in one of two ways: either through the software or through the MFP hardware. When the mopier is enabled, mopying takes place through the MFP hardware by default. One copy of a multiplepage print job is transmitted once through the network to the MFP, together with a printer job language (PJM) command directing the MFP to make the specified number of copies.

When you disable the mopier, you are not necessarily disabling mopying, which the driver can still perform through the software rather than the MFP hardware (the mopying path that is disabled when you change the **Mopier Mode** setting to **Enabled**). However, a multiple-copy print job that is sent when the mopier is disabled loses the advantage of transmitting the print job once, because the job is sent through the network for each copy.

### Mopier Mode and Collation

Mopying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. Mopying, the ability to send original print jobs to the MFP, is performed by the print driver. Collating can be controlled by either the print driver or the document software program. The mopying mode is selected by default in the driver, and can be disabled by changing the Mopier Mode setting on the Device Settings tab to Disabled.

You can control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the Collated check box on the Advanced tab. You can clear the check box, which is available only when the Copy Count option is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software program to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the Collated check box and make sure that the software program collation feature is not selected.

## Additional Device Settings options (PS Emulation Unidriver only)

The **Device Settings** tab for the PS Emulation Unidriver also includes the following additional options.

- [Available PostScript Memory](#)
- [Output Protocol](#)
- [Send CTRL-D Before Each Job](#)
- [Send CTRL-D After Each Job](#)
- [Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray](#)
- [Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray](#)
- [Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts](#)

- [Job Timeout](#)
- [Wait Timeout](#)
- [Minimum font size to download as outline](#)
- [Maximum font size to download as bitmap](#)

## Available PostScript Memory

This option specifies the amount of available PS memory. The available PS memory is a subset of the MFP's total physical memory. It is usually best to use the default setting, which is determined by your MFP manufacturer.

## Output Protocol

This option specifies the protocol that the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP uses for print jobs. The following options are available.

- **ASCII.** (default) When you click **ASCII**, data is sent in ASCII format (7-bit), which might take longer to print but can be sent through any I/O channel, such as a USB or network port.
- **TBCP.** When you click **TBCP** (Tagged Binary Communications Protocol), all data except special control characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over USB or serial communications ports at a faster rate than by sending data in ASCII format.
- **Binary.** When you click **Binary**, all data except special control characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over USB communications ports at a faster rate than by sending data in ASCII format.

## Send CTRL-D Before Each Job

This option specifies whether the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP will be reset at the beginning of every .PS document. The default setting is **No**. Ctrl-D resets the MFP to its default setting to ensure that previous print jobs do not affect the current print job. Ctrl-D might cause a print job to fail if the MFP is connected through a network. If your document fails to print when sent to a MFP connected through a USB port, change **No** to **Yes**.

## Send CTRL-D After Each Job

This option specifies whether the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP will be reset at the end of every .PS document. The default setting is **Yes**. Ctrl-D resets the MFP to its default setting to ensure that future print jobs are not affected by the current print job. Ctrl-D might cause a print job to fail if the MFP is connected through a network. If your document fails to print when sent to a network MFP, change **Yes** to **No**.

## Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray

This option specifies whether to convert the true gray (RGB value) in text to the gray that the PS Emulation Unidriver provides. The default setting is **No**.

## Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray

This option specifies whether to convert the true gray (RGB value) in graphics to the gray that the PS Emulation Unidriver provides. The default setting is **No**.



## Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts

This option specifies whether to augment the device fonts with the euro character. The default setting is **Yes**.

## Job Timeout

This option specifies how long the document can take to get from the computer to the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP before the MFP stops trying to print the document. If you specify 0 seconds, the MFP continues trying to print indefinitely. The default setting is **0 seconds**. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

## Wait Timeout

This option specifies how long the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP waits to get more PS information from the computer. After the specified time passes, the MFP stops trying to print the document and prints an error message. If you are trying to print a very complicated document, you might want to increase this value. If you specify **0 seconds**, the MFP waits indefinitely. The default setting is **300 seconds**. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

## Minimum font size to download as outline

Specifies the minimum font size (in pixels) for which the PostScript driver will download TrueType fonts as outline (Type 1) fonts. A font smaller than the minimum setting will be downloaded as a bitmap (Type 3) font. This option lets you fine-tune the Automatic setting for the TrueType Font Download option on the Advanced Options dialog box of the Printing Preferences dialog box.

## Maximum font size to download as bitmap

Specifies the maximum font size (in pixels) for which the PostScript driver will download TrueType fonts as bitmap (Type 3) fonts. A font larger than the maximum setting will be downloaded as an outline (Type 1) font. This option lets you fine-tune the Automatic setting or override the Bitmap setting for the TrueType Font Download option on the Advanced Options dialog box of the Printing Preferences dialog box.

## About tab features

Follow these steps to access the **About** tab.

1. Click **Start**, **Settings**, and then click one of the following:
  - for Windows 2000, click **Printers**.
  - for Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Printers and Faxes**.
  - for Windows XP Home, click **Printers and Other Hardware Devices**.
2. Right-click the MFP name, and then click **Properties**.
3. Click **About**.

The **About** tab provides detailed information about the driver. It contains an overall build number (in parentheses after the model name) along with specific information about each of the components. The information varies according to the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP model number, driver, date, and version numbers.

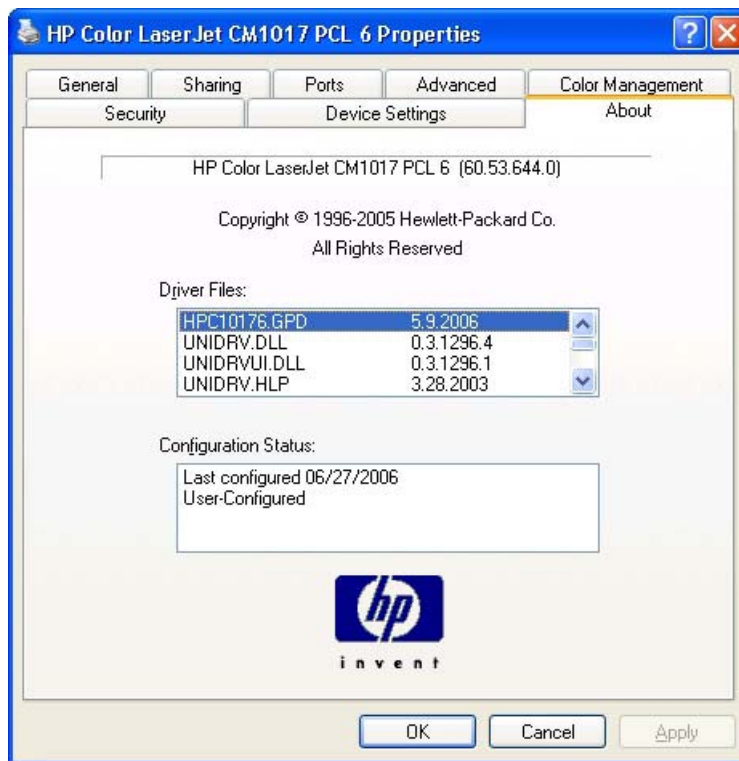


Figure 5-26 About tab

The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is default or user-defined.

## 6 Macintosh

### Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP comes with printing software and installers for Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh operating systems.

Topics:

- [Macintosh printing-system software](#)
- [Macintosh install instructions](#)
- [Macintosh uninstall instructions](#)



---

**NOTE** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP drivers send print jobs in reverse order to accommodate the face-up output bin. Printing with any other print driver, such as a PCL 5 driver, will result in the print job being out of order. The last page will be face up on the top of the print job in the output bin.

---

## Macintosh printing-system software

This section provides information about the following topics:

- [Software components for Macintosh](#)
- [System requirements](#)
- [Operating-system support](#)
- [Availability](#)

### Software components for Macintosh

The following table outlines the software components for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP that are available for computers running the Macintosh operating system .

**Table 6-1** Software components for Macintosh

Component	Description
Installer software	Installs the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP driver.
Driver software	Allows you to print from your HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.
HP EWS Device Configuration	Provides a user interface that you use to configure your HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.
HP LaserJet Director	<p>This software program is installed automatically with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software under Applications in the HP LaserJet MFP/ Director folder.</p> <p>This program provided access to the print, copy, scan, and scan-to-e-mail functions.</p>
Readiris Professional V11.0 text-recognition software by IRIS	<p>This optional software program comes on a separate CD.</p> <p>Convert scanned images into text that can be edited in word-processing programs.</p>
Scan to e-mail	<p>This feature is installed automatically with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software and can be accessed through the HP LaserJet Director and through the buttons on the MFP control panel.</p> <p>During installation, the installer detects supported e-mail programs on the computer and integrates them into the HP LaserJet Scan software. Each time the computer restarts, the software updates the list of available e-mail programs.</p>
HP PhotoSmart Studio	Use the HP PhotoSmart Studio to work with photos, scanned images, and video clips. You can edit images, create printing projects, and send images.
Online Documentation	<p>The user documentation for these products is included on the installation CD in Adobe Acrobat .PDF format. You must have Adobe Acrobat Reader installed on your computer to read the .PDF files. Go to the following Web site to download Adobe Acrobat Reader.</p> <p><a href="http://www.adobe.com">www.adobe.com</a></p>

## HP EWS Device Configuration utility

The HP EWS Device Configuration utility allows you to control your MFP from your computer through the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS).

To access the HP EWS Device Configuration utility, click **Maintain Device** in the HP LaserJet Director, or follow these steps:

1. Open the Finder.
2. Click **Applications**.
3. Double-click the **HP EWS Device Configuration** folder.
4. Double-click the **HP Device Configuration** icon.
5. Select the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP from the list. This opens the default web browser whether your computer is connected over the network or through a USB connection.

For more information about the HP Embedded Web Server, see the [HP Embedded Web Server](#) section of this document.

## HP LaserJet Director

Use the HP Director to gain access to product-specific software, default settings, status, and onscreen Help. By using the HP Director, you can scan various types of originals (pictures, documents, and slides), make copies, view and print images or video clips, configure and maintain the device, and see user documentation.

To open the HP LaserJet Director, go to the Applications folder, open the HP LaserJet MFP folder, then open the Director folder, and double-click the HP LaserJet Director icon.



**Figure 6-1 HP LaserJet Director – Macintosh**

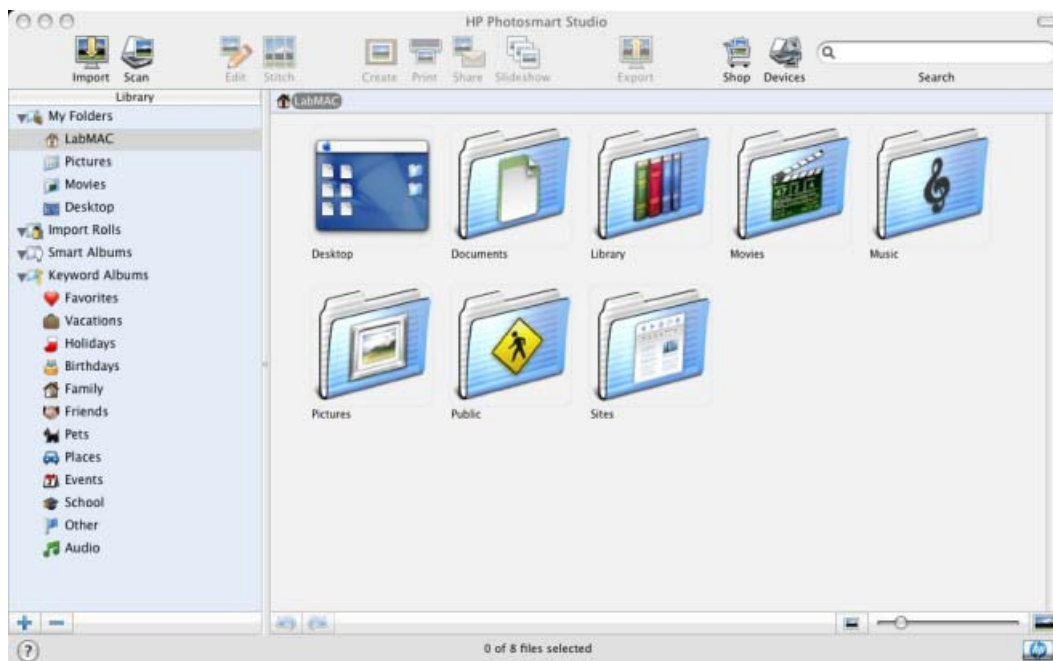
The following options are available when you open the HP LaserJet Director.

- **Scan.** Click this button to open the HP LaserJet Scan software.
- **E-mail.** Click this button to use the scan-to-e-mail feature.
- **Photo.** Click this option to open HP PhotoSmart Studio.
- **Maintain Device.** Click this option to open the HP EWS.
- **Remove Device.** Click this option to remove the MFP from the printer list.
- **User Guide.** Click this button to open the online version of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide.

## HP Photosmart Studio for Macintosh

HP Image Zone is an easy, full-featured software application that helps you view, organize, edit, print, and share your digital photos, and use them in creative projects.

Access HP Image Zone by clicking the **Photo** button in the HP Director, or by going to the Hewlett-Packard folder on your computer and double-clicking the HP Photosmart Studio icon.



**Figure 6-2** HP Photosmart Studio – Macintosh

The following options are available from the main toolbar of the HP Photosmart Studio.

- **Import.** Click this option to begin importing photos or images.
- **Scan.** Click this button to start the HP LaserJet Scan software.
- **Edit.** This option become available after a photo or image has been selected. Click this button to edit the image.
- **Stitch.** This option become available after a photo or image has been selected. Click this button to append smaller images into one large image.
- **Create.** This option become available after a photo or image has been selected. Click this button to use the image in a variety of creative projects.
- **Print.** This option become available after a photo or image has been selected. Click this button to print the image.
- **Share.** This option become available after a photo or image has been selected. Click this button to see options for sharing the image with others.
- **Slideshow.** This option become available after a photo or image has been selected. Click this button to see images in slideshow mode.
- **Export.** This option become available after a photo or image has been selected. Click this button to export images to another software program or another device.

- **Shop.** Click this button to shop for HP products.
- **Devices.** Click this button to choose the device to work with.

### Accessing Memory Cards through the Macintosh (HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP only)

Follow these steps to access the memory cards on the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.

1. On the **Finder** menu, click **Go**.
2. Click **Connect to Server**.
3. Type `smb://[IPAddress]`, where `[IPAddress]` stands for the IP address of your MFP. Click **Connect**.
4. The following screen appears. Click **OK**.



**Figure 6-3** System Authentication screen – Mac Memory Card Access

5. The following screen appears. Click **OK**.



**Figure 6-4** Authenticate Again – Mac Memory Card Access

6. The memory card contents appear in a window on your screen and an icon is added to your desktop.



**NOTE** The Control Panel only prints images that are in .JPG format.

## System requirements

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software has the following minimum system requirements:

- Macintosh OS X (Version 10.3 or later)
- Macintosh computer (Power PC and Intel Core processors), such as an iMac, Power Macintosh G3 or higher (Power Macintosh G4 233 MHz recommended)
- Minimum 256 MB system memory.
- 100 MB or more of available hard-disk space
- A USB port, or an ethernet connection that uses on-board networking
- A CD-ROM drive (required for installation)

## Operating-system support

The Macintosh printing-system software for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP supports Macintosh OS X, version 10.3 and later.

## Availability

This document provides information about the availability of the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software and related software and firmware. Printing-system software on a CD is available from HP fulfillment centers.

Topics:

- [Software component localization](#)
- [Ordering software for Macintosh](#)



## Software component localization

The following table presents the part numbers and language groups for Macintosh components on the software CD for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

**Table 6-2** CD part numbers for the HP LaserJet software

Part Number	Contents	Languages
CB394-60116	Macintosh software CD for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dutch</li> <li>• English</li> <li>• French</li> <li>• German</li> <li>• Italian</li> <li>• Spanish</li> </ul>

## Ordering software for Macintosh

To order the software, contact Hewlett-Packard Support at the following Web site:

[www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)

Click **CD Order Page** to order, or click **Download drivers and software** to get the software update.

To request the software CD by phone, see the following Web site for the correct contact number for your country/region:

[www.hp.com/support](http://www.hp.com/support)

## Macintosh install instructions

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP comes with software and installers for Microsoft Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX systems support the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, and software is available on the Web. This document provides procedures for installing the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software for Macintosh operating systems.

Topics:

- [Installation overview](#)
- [Installation options](#)
- [Installation dialog-box options for Macintosh](#)

### Installation overview

The printing-system software for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP comes on one CD. The CD includes print drivers and everything you need to print with your HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP uses the HP Installer. The Installer installs only the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software on the current system startup drive that contains the active System folder. By default, the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software folder is installed in the Library folder.

The HP LaserJet Director software is also installed by the HP Installer. The HP LaserJet Director is installed automatically when the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software is installed. The HP LaserJet Director software components are installed under the Applications directory, in the HP LaserJet MFP/Director folder.

The HP Photosmart Studio has its own installer and installs automatically when the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software is installed. The HP Photosmart Studio components are installed in the Hewlett-Packard directory.

### Installation options

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software can be used with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP in the following configurations:

- A computer is directly connected to the product through a USB port and the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system software is loaded on the computer.
- The product is networked by using on-board networking through Bonjour (Rendezvous) (HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP only).

### Installation instructions for all Macintosh OSs — Animated Getting Started Guide

Use the following instructions to set up your HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP in Mac OS X V10.3.9 higher.

1. Insert the product software CD into your CD-ROM hard drive.
2. Double-click the CD icon.

3. Double-click the **HP LaserJet MFP Installer** icon.



**Figure 6-5** HP LaserJet MFP Installer icon

The HP LaserJet MFP Installer folder opens. Double-click the **Start Here** icon for your language.



**Figure 6-6** Start Here icon

The Animated Getting Started Guide opens.



**NOTE** The following graphic shows the Mac OS X version 10.4 of the Animated Getting Started Guide Screen.



**Figure 6-7** Macintosh install – Animated Getting Started Guide

4. If you have not set up your HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, click **Begin Setup** and follow the setup sequence to the end. The following screen appears when setup is complete.



**Figure 6-8** Install Software screen

5. Click **Install Software**.

## Macintosh installation instructions for direct and network connections

Use the following instructions to install the software on a Macintosh computer running Mac OS X.

1. Follow the instructions in the [Installation instructions for all Macintosh OSs — Animated Getting Started Guide](#) section of this guide.
2. If prompted to do so, enter a user name and password that have administrator privileges.
3. The software license agreement appears. Click **Accept**. The installation begins. During the installation, you might be prompted again to provide a user name and password that have administrator privileges.
4. When the installation is completed, a message appears stating that the installation was successful. Click **Restart**.
5. The HP Setup Assistant starts automatically. Follow the onscreen instructions.



**NOTE** If the HP Setup Assistant does not start automatically, click **Macintosh HD**, click **Applications**, click **HP**, and then double-click **HP Setup Assistant**.

## Installation dialog-box options for Macintosh

The following sequence describes the dialog-box options that appear during the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software installation on Macintosh systems.



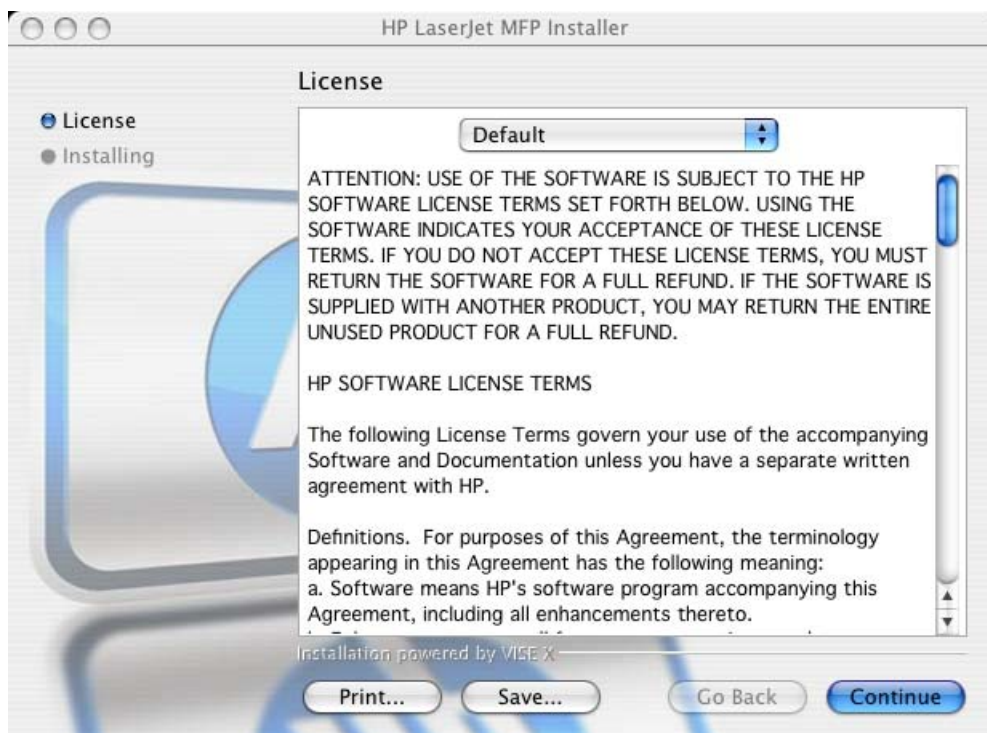
**NOTE** In the following installation sequence, the product name HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP represents the specific HP MFP that you are installing.



**Figure 6-9** Authenticate dialog box

Type your user name and password, and then click **OK** to continue.

Click **Cancel** to close the installer.



**Figure 6-10** License dialog box – HP Software License Agreement

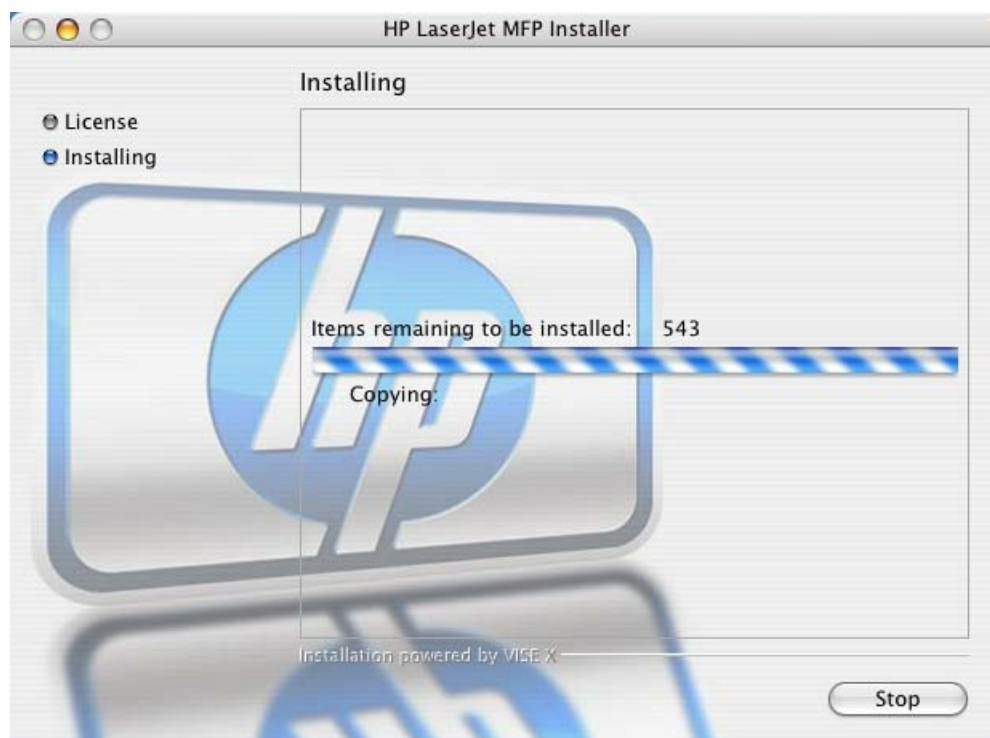
Click **Continue** to initiate the installation process.

Click **Print** to print a copy of the license agreement.

Click the language list to change the language of the **License Agreement** and the user interface.

Click **Save** to save the text of the software license agreement to disk.

Click **Go Back** to exit the installer.



**Figure 6-11** Installing dialog box – progress indicator

The **Installing** dialog shows the number of items that remain to be installed.

If you are installing the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP over a USB connection, the following dialog box appears, instructing you to connect your USB cable.



**Figure 6-12** If you are using a USB cable... dialog box

After you have connected the USB cable, click **OK**.

When software installation is complete, the **Restart** alert appears.



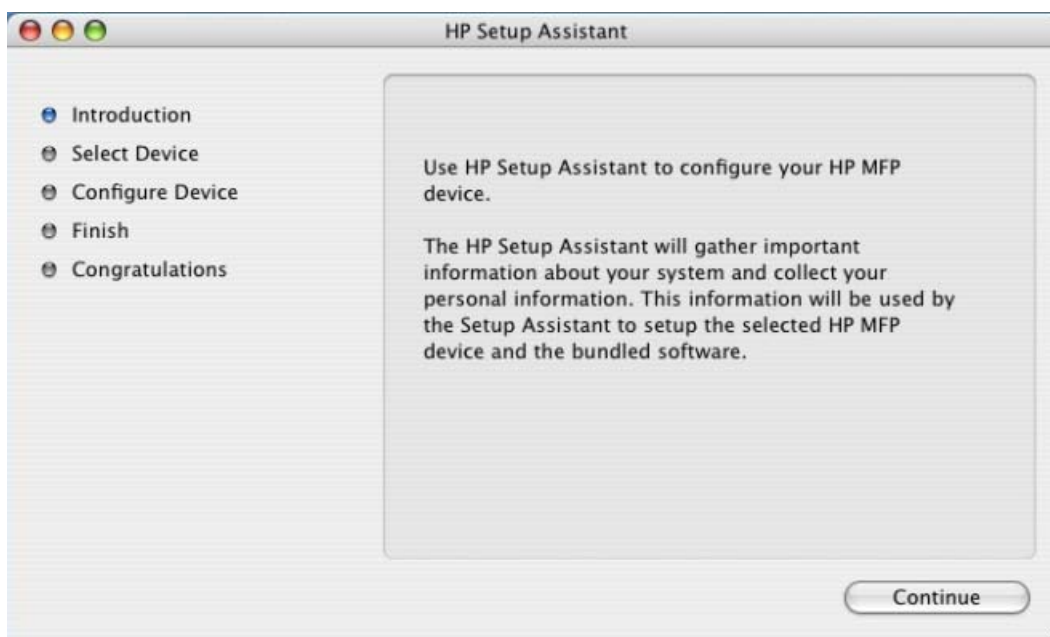
**Figure 6-13 Restart alert**

Click **Restart** to close the installer and restart the computer. After the computer restarts, you must log in to the computer, and then the **HP Setup Assistant** starts automatically.



**NOTE** If the HP Setup Assistant does not start automatically, follow these steps:

1. Click **Macintosh Hard Drive**.
2. Click **Applications**.
3. Click **HP**.
4. Double-click **HP Setup Assistant**.



**Figure 6-14 HP Setup Assistant – Introduction**

Click **Next** to go to the **Select Device** dialog box.



**Figure 6-15** HP Setup Assistant – Select Device



**NOTE** If you have not yet connected the product to your computer, the **No devices found** message appears instead of a list of HP MFPs. Connect the product to the computer with the USB cable, turn on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, and then click **Rescan USB**. The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP appears in the list box.

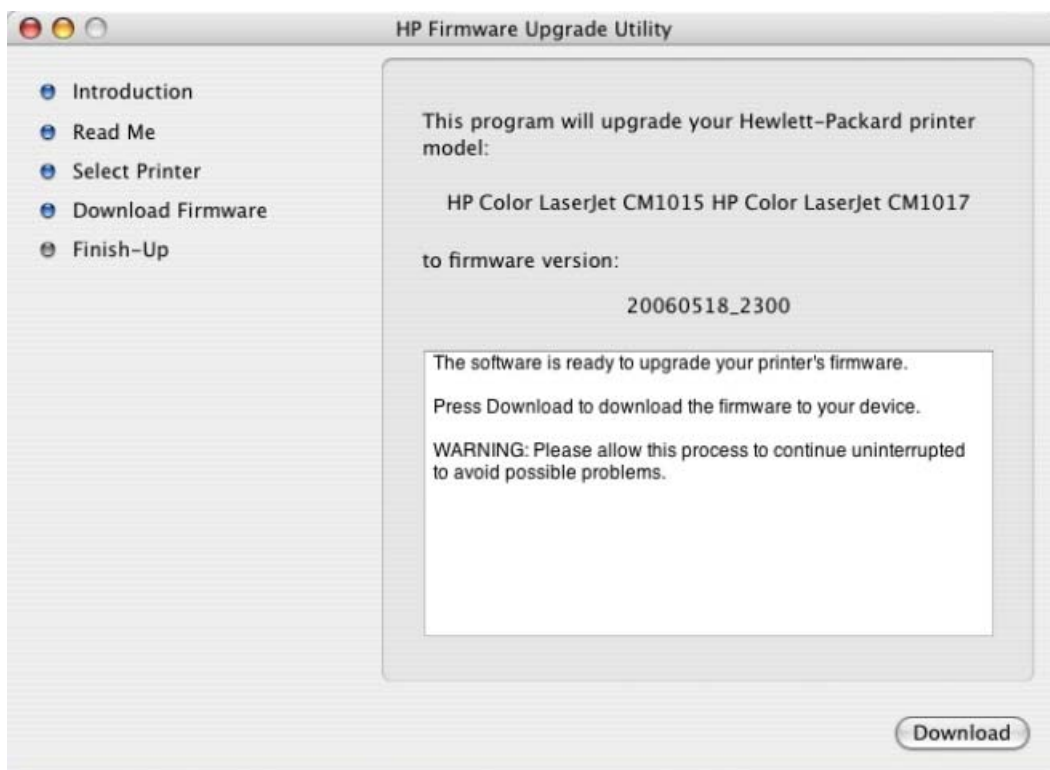
When you click **USB**, the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP or HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP name appears in the list box. Click the product name, and then click **Next** to open the **User Identification** dialog box.

When you click **TCP/IP** and then click, **Create**, a text-entry dialog box opens and you can type the network address or name for the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP.

Click **Back** to return to the **Introduction** dialog box.

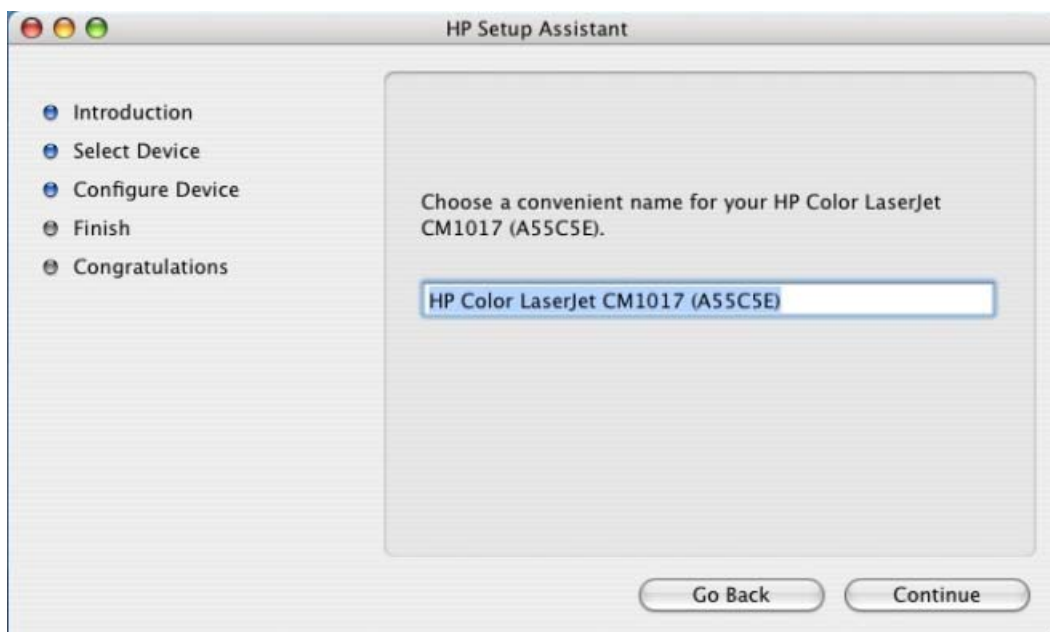
Click the **Rescan** button to scan the system again and locate the designated product connection.





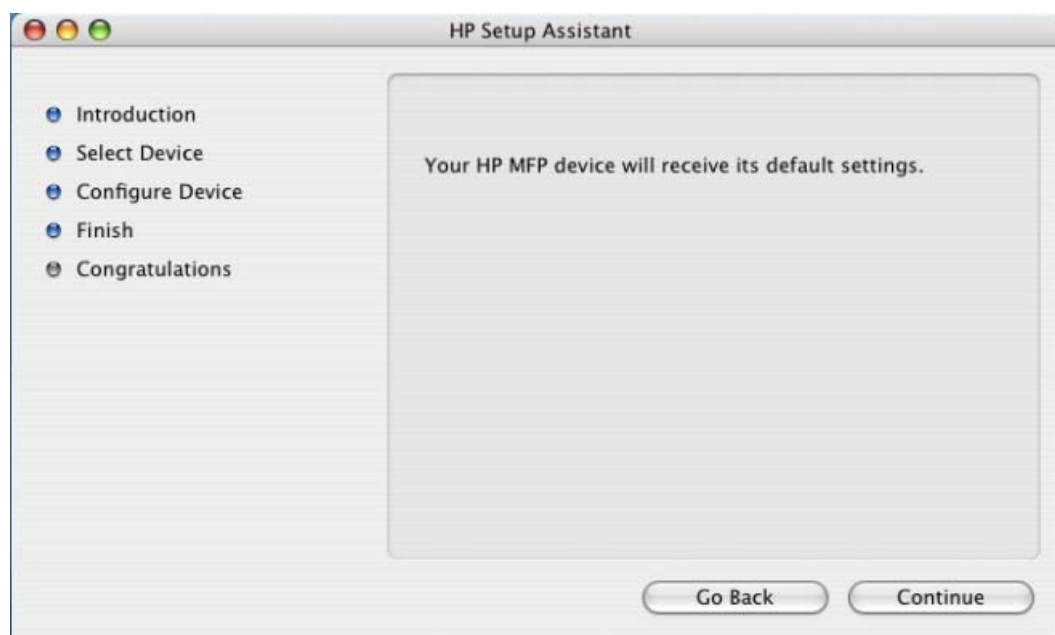
**Figure 6-16 HP Setup Assistant – Firmware Upgrade Utility**

The **Firmware Upgrade Utility** appears. Click **Download** to upgrade to the current firmware. When the update is complete, click **Quit** to close the **Firmware Upgrade Utility** and continue the installation setup.



**Figure 6-17 HP Setup Assistant – Name the MFP**

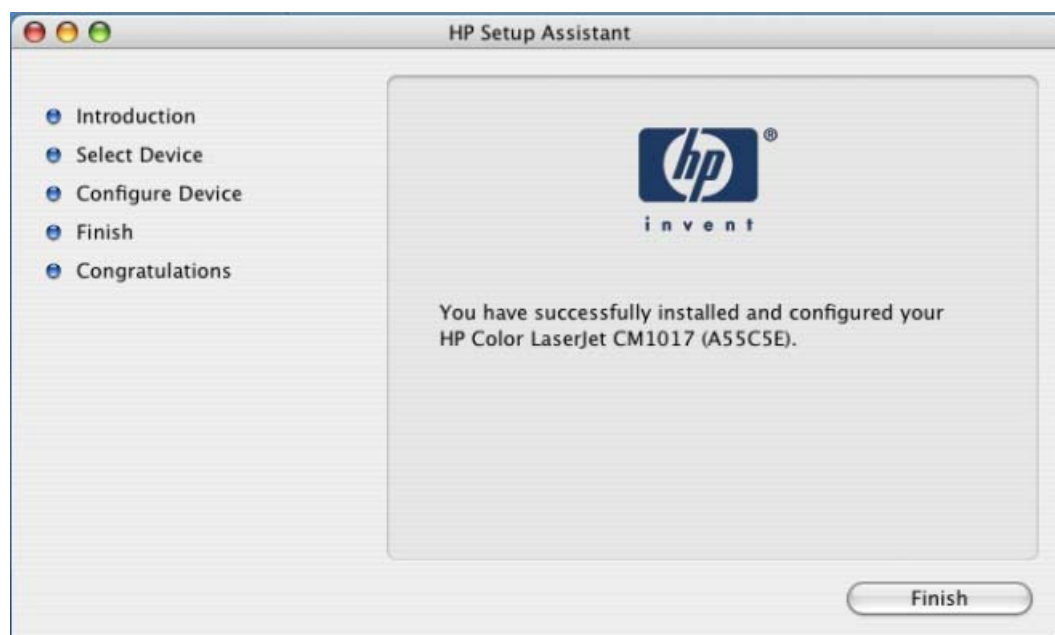
Type a name for the MFP and click **Continue**.



**Figure 6-18** HP Setup Assistant – Finish

The information you typed in previous dialog boxes appears in the **Finish** dialog box. If any items need to be changed, click the **Back** button to return to the dialog boxes that you need to change.

Click **Finish** to go to the **Congratulations** dialog box.



**Figure 6-19** HP Setup Assistant – Congratulations

Click **Finish** to close the HP Setup Assistant.

## Macintosh uninstall instructions

Use the following instructions to uninstall the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software from the computer:

1. Locate the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Uninstaller utility icon in the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Software folder by using the following path:

<system drive>/Applications/hplaserjetaio/HP Uninstaller

Double-click the **HP Uninstaller** icon to start the utility.

2. Specify whether you want to perform an uninstall for all HP devices, or only for a specific device. If you select **Uninstall selected**, you must then specify the devices you want to uninstall from the list.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Select the appropriate check boxes to uninstall any additional items.
5. Click **Uninstall**.
6. When the uninstall process is complete, click **Restart**.



# 7 Engineering Details

## Introduction

Topics:

- [Troubleshooting](#)
- [IP discovery and rediscovery](#)
- [PCL font ID list](#)
- [Media attributes](#)
- [HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Install Notes](#)

# Troubleshooting

The following topics are described in this section:

- [Port communication](#)
- [E-mail](#)
- [HP LaserJet Scan](#)
- [Troubleshooting tools](#)
- [Known Issues for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP](#)

## Port communication

This section provides information on the following topics:

- [Overview](#)
- [USB port connections](#)
- [Device conflicts in Windows](#)

### Overview

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP includes a USB port. The HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP includes both a 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port and a USB port and can be connected using either port.



**NOTE** Do not connect both the 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port and the USB port at the same time.

### USB port connections

Hi-speed USB is an input/output mode that both PC and Macintosh computers support. A wide variety of consumer devices, such as digital cameras and scanners, also support USB. Hi-speed USB is the current standard. The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP products are compatible with Hi-speed USB specifications.

A USB host is distinct from a USB device. The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP products are USB devices. They can connect only to a USB host or a USB hub.

### Device conflicts in Windows

When two-way communication cannot be established with the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP, the Windows Device Manager might show a conflict. Conflicts should be resolved immediately, before continuing to troubleshoot two-way communication issues. The following sections contain a few guidelines for identifying and resolving these conflicts.



**NOTE** USB connections for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP are supported only in Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, and Microsoft Windows Server 2003.

## Opening the Windows Device Manager

Follow these steps to open the Windows Device Manager.

1. In Microsoft Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**.  
In Microsoft Windows XP or Microsoft Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, and then click **Control Panel**.
2. Double-click the **System** icon.
3. On the **Hardware** tab, click **Device Manager**.

## Check for device conflicts

Follow these steps to check for device conflicts.

1. Look for devices that appear on the list with a yellow exclamation mark (!) or a red X .
2. Identify port conflicts by double-clicking **Port** or by clicking the plus sign (+). Conflicts here usually interfere with two-way communication.
3. To check the status of a device, click the device name, and then click **Properties**. The **Device Status** appears in the middle of the dialog box.
4. To check the **Conflicting Device** list, click the device name, and then click **Properties**. Click the **Resources** tab, and look at the **Conflicting Device** list at the bottom of the dialog box.
5. Click the plus sign (+) to the left of **Open the Other Devices**. Misidentified or noncategorized devices are placed here.

## Guidelines for troubleshooting and resolving device conflicts

Follow these steps for resolving device conflicts.

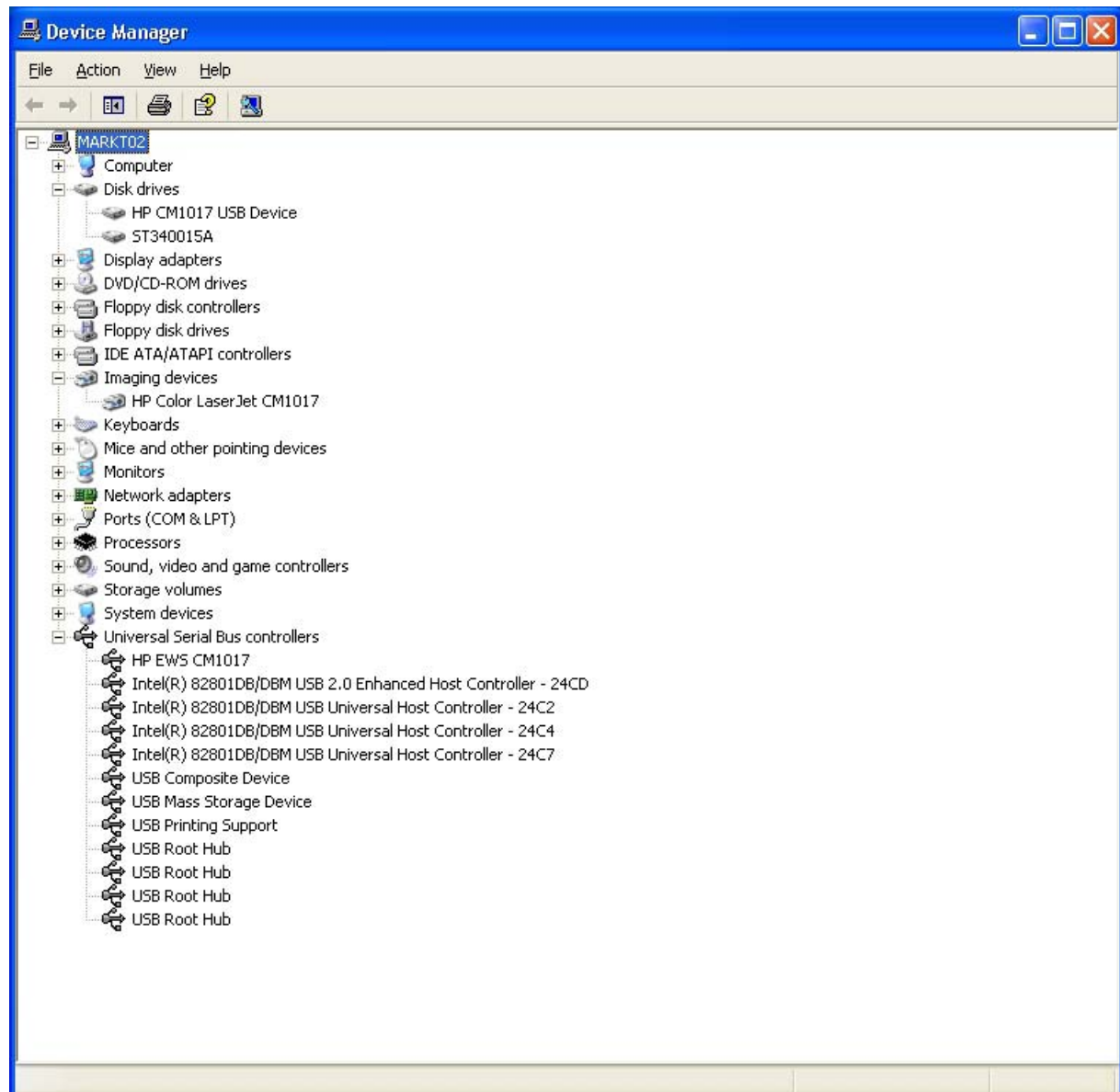
1. If the conflicting device is no longer present in the list of devices, click the device name, click **Remove**, and then click **Yes**. Click **Yes** to restart Windows.
2. If the conflicting device is a duplicate (and one of the duplicate listings does not show a conflict), click the name(s) of the device(s) that have a conflict, click **Remove**, and then click **Yes**. Click **Yes** to restart Windows.



**NOTE** You might not need to restart the computer, depending on the type of port conflict you are resolving.

3. If a device has a conflict and you have the driver for that device, remove the device and then reinstall it. After removing the device, restart the computer. When Windows reinstalls devices, it usually finds nonconflicting resources.

## Installed Devices



**Figure 7-1** Sample **Device Manager** window

Click the **View** menu to see further options:

- Devices by Type
- Devices by Connection
- Resources by Type
- Resources by connection
- Hidden Devices

The following table shows devices that are installed by the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software in Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP.



**Table 7-1** Devices installed by the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software in Microsoft Windows 2000 and Microsoft Windows XP

Device by type	Device
Disk drives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP USB Device</li></ul>
IEEE 1284.4 compatible printers (Microsoft Windows XP)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP</li></ul>
IEEE 1284.4 devices	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP</li></ul>
Imaging devices	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP</li></ul>
Universal Serial Bus controllers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Series</li><li>• HP EWS</li><li>• USB Printing Support</li><li>• USB Composite Device</li><li>• USB Mass Storage Device</li></ul>

## E-mail

If e-mail messages fail to be sent, try following these steps:

1. Open Windows Microsoft Explorer or Internet Explorer and navigate to the file.
2. Right-click the file, select **Send To**, and then click **Mail Recipient**.

If this method fails, check the MAPI mail setup. The MAPI setup is a third-party issue.

## HP LaserJet Scan

The following are a few simple steps you can take to improve copy and scan quality.

- Use high-quality originals.
- Load the media correctly. If the media is loaded incorrectly, the resulting scan might appear skewed.
- Adjust the software settings according to how you plan to use the scanned page.

For more detailed information about troubleshooting HP LaserJet Scan problems, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP User Guide*.

## Troubleshooting tools

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system CD contains the following troubleshooting tools in the Utilities folder on the root directory. This section contains the following topics:

- [File to E-mail utility](#)
- [AccessDeniedUtility.exe](#)
- [FixErr1714 utility](#)

## File to E-mail utility

The File to E-mail utility collects the data specified in an .INI file and then attaches the data files to an e-mail that can be sent to HP Customer Support to assist troubleshooting. The utility runs on your computer, but does not interact with your HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

The tool is included on the installer CD, but is *not* copied to your computer during the software installation. HP Customer Support can also send the utility to you by e-mail or by posting it to an HP Web page.

The tool is compatible with Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, and Microsoft Windows XP x64.

The File to E-mail utility runs with any MAPI-compliant e-mail applications. It does not run with Web-based e-mail services such as Yahoo, Hotmail, or AOL.

Depending on the speed of your computer, it might take a few minutes for the utility to gather the log files and attach them to an e-mail message.

The File to E-mail utility consists of two files that are located in the util folder on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software CD:

- <CD-ROM drive>\util\CCC\FiletoEmail\FileToEmail.exe
- <CD-ROM drive>\util\CCC\FiletoEmail\FileToEmail.ini

To use the File to E-mail utility, copy these files to your desktop, navigate to them in Explorer, and double-click **FileToEmail.exe** to open the utility. The utility generates files, opens an e-mail message, and attaches the files so that you can send them to your IT administrator, as shown in the following figure shows some of the attachments.

If the File to E-mail utility is not successful for any reason (for instance, if you cancel the new message or you are using Web-based e-mail software), all the files are copied to a folder on the desktop that is named HpCCC, possibly with strings of 0's attached to the end. You can zip these files and e-mail them separately.



**NOTE** The File to E-mail utility now gathers collect.bat information, so it is no longer necessary to run collect.bat and File to e-mail.

## AccessDeniedUtility.exe

This utility is used by CCC agents when customers call in with registry “access denied” problems.

- Fixes the registry access-denied issues
- Should not be necessary to run because the installer runs this executable at the time of installation.
- No command line options exist, just double-click.
- No logging takes place

## FixErr1714 utility

This utility is used by CCC agents when customers call in with MSI error 1714, which is an occasional problem that occurs when a different user than the installing user attempts to uninstall the product.

- This utility might fix the 1714 problem; some evidence exists that this utility might not work in all cases.
- No command line options exist, just double-click.
- No logging takes place.
- No user interface exists.

## Known Issues for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP

The following issues are known issues for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

- [Software](#)
- [Device Communication](#)
- [Hardware/Firmware](#)
- [Miscellaneous](#)

### Software



**Cause:** The HP ToolboxFX uses .NET technologies, and thus requires that the Microsoft .NET Framework be installed on the users system. When the HP ToolboxFX software installer runs, it will silently install Microsoft .NET Framework 1.1 (no service pack). This will allow HP ToolboxFX to run, but there are some known issues with .NET Framework 1.1 (no service pack) that might impact our customers.



**NOTE** If the .NET Framework 1.1 is already installed on the users system at the time of the HP ToolboxFX software installation, the framework will not be installed.

- **Location:** [www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx](http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx)
- **Location:** [www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx](http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx)

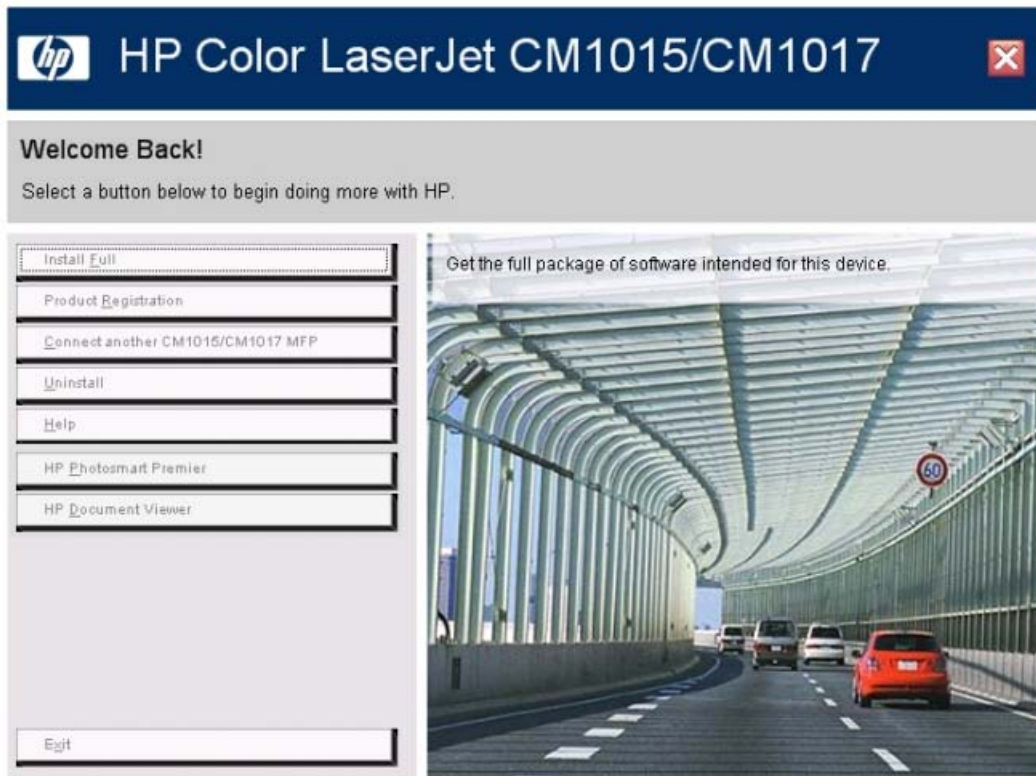
## Device Communication

The majority of problems observed with HP ToolboxFX involve a lack of communication with the device. In these cases, you should always check to see if the cables are plugged in, and the device is turned on. Also, please see the above section regarding .NET Framework dependencies. If communication problems are observed, particularly over a USB connection, the .NET Framework and Windows configuration should be checked and updated if necessary.

Communication with the device can also be impacted if you change the IP address or hostname on a network connected device. The HP ToolboxFX uses the properties stored by the print driver in order to determine the device address. If communication errors are observed, you should attempt to print a test page to the device from the computer. If a page cannot be printed, it might be that the address or port for the print driver needs to be configured correctly. In these cases, it is often necessary for you to reboot the computer after re-configuring the print driver in order for HP ToolboxFX to resume communication with the device.

- **Cause:** HP Photosmart Premier attempts to use the highest printer resolution (dpi) setting when printing. With the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP the highest resolution is 600 dpi which is used only for black and white printing.

**Solution:** Update HP Image Zone to HP Photosmart Premier 6.0. HP Photosmart Premier 6.0 can be found on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software CD. Choose the “Install More Software” either immediately after the installation of the full software or when the HP Color LaserJet software CD is inserted into the CD ROM drive if the printing software has been installed.



- **Cause:** The hppusg.exe is the HP Customer Participation Program software that the user has opted to install. It does not affect printing or HP Toolbox FX functionality.

**Solution:** None.

- **Issue:** HP Marketing Assistant will not open from within HP Solution Center.

**Solution:** Open HP Marketing Assistant from the desktop icon or Start>All Programs>HP>HP Marketing Assistant and then click Start HP Marketing Assistant.

- **Issue:** HP Solution Center might not show second MFP when two HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFPs are installed on the same system.

**Solution:** Both MFPs are accessible through HP ToolboxFX.

- **Cause:** HP ToolboxFX is slow at startup because the application must communicate and collect information from the device before constructing and displaying a page with this information.

**Solution:** None.

- **Cause:** This is as designed. The check for determining if the PC has USB support is done before we display the dialog to select USB or a Network install. If it isn't done a user would be able to still select USB and the install would fail.

**Solution:** There are two workarounds.

1. Hold down Ctrl+Shift and click the Cancel button bypasses the results. The installer will continue as normal allowing you to select the Network install option.
2. If the CD is copied to a local drive, the autorun.inf can be modified as follows: Change the entries below:

```
[SystemRequirements]
```

```
MinUsbReady=0
```

```
RecUsbReady=0RecUsbReady=3
```

```
[SystemRequirements.Min]
```

```
MinUsbReady=0
```

```
RecUsbReady=0
```

Modify as follows to not fail on USB being disabled.

```
[SystemRequirements]
```

```
MinUsbReady=3
```

```
RecUsbReady=3
```

```
[SystemRequirements.Min]
```

```
MinUsbReady=3
```

```
RecUsbReady=3
```

## Hardware/Firmware

- **Cause:** CPR occurs when several color planes are misaligned. For example, if green text is printed, green is the combination of cyan and yellow toner. When the two color planes, cyan and yellow, are slightly misaligned it looks as if the print is fuzzy or ghosted.

**Solution:** Verify media type is set to represent correct media used. This is particularly important with envelopes, and small and thick media. Improper settings will reduce the Electro-photographic (EP) process current and fuser temperatures. Improper EP current can allow media to shift slightly on the Electrostatic Transfer Belt, inducing CPR issues.

- **Issue:** “Printing Document...” appears on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP series display just prior to “Calibrating...” This is normal behavior. For approximately 4 seconds prior to a calibration “Printing Document...” will appear on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP display then switch to “Calibrating...”. This occurs again at about 1 minute 15 seconds into the calibration. At the end of the calibration sequence “Printing Document...” is displayed one last time at approximately 2 minutes and 28 seconds.

**Solution:** None.

- **Solution:** Power cycle the MFP and manually start the calibration if necessary. MFP automatically calibrates after 15 minutes from power on.
- **Cause:** The HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP engine does not detect the difference between A4 and Letter sizes. The engine reports size errors when the size is 20 mm or more shorter than the expected size. The difference between A4 and Letter is only 17.6 mm.

**Solution:** None.

- **Solution:** On the Configuration page or Service Page the number value for Append CR to LF is used as 0=Yes and 2=No.
- **Cause:** This is a mechanical limitation of the engine. Since there is no tray presence sensor, the engine does not have a way to detect whether or not the tray is completely inserted. If the user has the tray fully loaded without the lift plate in the tray being pressed down, the height of the stack of media is enough to trigger the paper presence sensor in the tray, even if the tray isn't completely inserted.

**Solution:** Verify that tray 2 is installed or inserted completely into the MFP.

- ERROR: limitcheck

OFFENDING COMMAND: showpage

STACK:

(r)

(Sys/Start)

(Sys/Start)

If the PCL6 job is allowed to continue to finish then the PS job will complete normally. The size does not seem to matter here. However, if a PCL 6 job is canceled and a PS job is run afterwards, no matter how big the document, this error occurs. If a print job is run immediately after this error occurs it prints correctly.

**Solution:** None.

- **Cause:** Supplies Status values for cartridges that have reached the out state are no longer valid when "Override out" is in use.

**Solution:** Do not enable "Override out". Override out can only be enabled from the MFP control panel (System Setup>Print Quality>Replace Supplies>Override out).

- **Cause:** This could only occur if two yellow or two magenta cartridges were installed in the MFP and one of them were installed in the cyan slot.

**Solution:** Verify that the correct cartridges are installed in the correct locations. From top to bottom the cartridge order is black (K), yellow (Y), cyan (C), and magenta (M).

## Miscellaneous

- **Issue:** When printing on special media or paper, print quality issues can arise if the correct paper type is not configured in the printer driver.

**Solution:** When printing on special media or paper (e.g. glossy paper), it is necessary to configure the print driver for the type of media or paper that is loaded into the MFP's tray(s) in order to optimize print quality. Configuring the printer driver with the correct paper type signals the MFP to use more or less heat and adjust print speed for a particular paper type. Use the following steps to print on special media:



**NOTE** The instructions below outline the steps for printing glossy paper with a weight of 120 g/m<sup>2</sup> from Microsoft Word 2003.

1. Choose File, Print from the Menu bar in Microsoft Word.
  2. Verify that the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP is the selected MFP.
  3. Click the Properties button (in some applications this might be the Preferences button).
  4. Click the Paper/Quality tab and locate the "Type is" setting under the Paper Options section.
  5. In the "Type is" box, click the drop-down arrow at the right and select "Glossy (106 - 120 g/m<sup>2</sup>)" (or the appropriate type for the media or paper on which you are printing).
  6. Click OK to save and close the settings.
  7. Click OK to print.
- **Issue:** .PDF files might take a long time to print.

**Solution:** Select the "Print as Image" checkbox inside of Adobe application. The "Print as Image" selection is typically found by clicking the "Advanced" button in the Print dialog that appears after clicking File>Print.



## IP discovery and rediscovery

This document discusses the features that function correctly and those that don't through the IP discovery and rediscovery process for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP. Topics:

- [Print and HP ToolboxFX](#)
- [Scan driver](#)
- [ScanTo application](#)

### Print and HP ToolboxFX

When the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP is installed, the HP Port Monitor is installed and the device's IP address is entered in the following registry key: HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Print\Monitors\HP Standard TCP/IP Port\Ports\<port\_name>\IPAddress, where <port\_name> is the name of the port that the printer driver was installed to. This port monitor periodically checks for changes to the device's IP address by using the Rediscovery library, hpzjrd01.dll. If a change is detected the registry entry is updated with the correct IP address. Both the Printer Driver and HP ToolboxFX use the IP address in this registry key to establish communication to the device.



**NOTE** Print and HP ToolboxFX rediscovery occurs only if the computer and the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP are on the same subnet mask.

### Scan driver

When the HP Color LaserJet CM1017 MFP is installed, the Scan co-installer determines what the IP address or hostname of the device is and writes this information to the following registry key: HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Class\{6BDD1FC6-810F-11D0-BEC7-08002BE2092F}\0000\DeviceData\PortID. If the hostname can be obtained, it is written to this location; otherwise the IP address is written. The scan driver uses this value to establish a connection to the device.

- **Installed using hostname.** If the hostname is written to the PortID registry key, when the device's IP address changes, this registry value does not change. It may take quite a bit of time for the network routing tables to update the DNS servers with the new IP address for this hostname. Scanning is rendered inoperable while the DNS servers are being updated.
- **Installed using IP address.** If the IP address is written to the PortID registry key, when the device's IP address changes, the registry value will only update if a scan had previously been performed. Otherwise the user must either edit this value manually or run the FixScan utility to update this value. Once a scan has been successfully completed, a registry key under the path listed above, named PortData, will appear. This is a binary value which contains the MAC address as well as some other data. If this key is present and the device's IP address does change, the time the user attempts a scan, the scan driver will initially use the PortID value to communicate with the device. This will fail, but PortData value will be passed to the Rediscovery library, hpzjrd01.dll, to obtain the new IP address. Once the new IP address is obtained, it is written to the PortID registry key.

The FixScan utility can be found on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP software CD in the following location.

```
<CD Drive>:\util\CCC
```



## ScanTo application

When the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP is installed, the following registry key is written for the ScanTo application: HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Hewlett-Packard\DigitalImaging\HP Color LaserJet CM1017 PCL 6\DeviceInstances\<dev\_instance\_id>\Functions\Device\IP Address, where <dev\_instance\_id> is a numeric value representing a unique device. The value of this key is the IP address of the device. The ScanTo application uses this value to establish communication with the device for purposes of retrieving and setting the ScanTo destination list. If the device's IP address changes, the value of this registry is never updated. Using the ScanFixIt utility, available on the web at time of product introduction will update this value.



**NOTE** The ScanFixIt utility that shipped on the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP printing-system CD will NOT update this value.

## PCL font ID list

The following table lists the PCL font IDs for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.

**Table 7-2** PCL font ID list

Font	HP LaserJet 3015, 3020/3030, 3380 Font ID number	HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/ CM1017 MFP Font ID number
Courier	0	23
CG Times	1	0
CG Times Bd	2	2
CG Times It	3	1
CG Times BdlT	4	3
CG Omega	5	15
CG Omega Bd	6	17
CG Omega It	7	16
CG Omega BdlT	8	18
Coronet	9	33
Clarendon CdBd	10	32
Univers Md	11	4
Univers Bd	12	6
Univers MdIt	13	5
Univers BdlT	14	7
Univers CdMd	15	8
Univers CdBd	16	10
Univers CdMdIt	17	9
Univers CdBdlT	18	11
AntiqOlive	19	12
AntiqOlive Bd	20	14
AntiqOlive It	24	13
Garamond Antiqua	22	19
Garamond Hlb	23	21
Garamond Krsv	24	20
Garamond KrsvHlb	25	22
Marigold	26	34
Albertus Md	27	30
Albertus Xb	28	31
Arial	29	35

**Table 7-2** PCL font ID list (continued)

Arial Bd	30	37
Arial It	31	36
Arial BdlIt	32	38
Arial It	31	36
Arial BdlIt	32	38
TimesNewRmn	33	39
TimesNewRmn Bd	34	41
TimesNewRmn IT	35	40
TimesNewRmn BdlIt	36	42
Helvetica	37	57
Helvetica Bd	38	59
Helvetica Ob	39	58
Helvetica BdOb	40	60
Helvetica Nr	41	61
Helvetica NrBd	42	63
Helvetica NrOb	43	62
Helvetica NrBdOb	44	64
Palatino Rmn	45	69
Palatino Bd	46	71
Palatino It	47	70
Palatino BdlIt	48	72
ITCAvantGard Bk	49	45
ITCAvantGard Db	50	47
ITCAvantGardBKOb	51	46
ITCAvantGardDbOb	52	48
ITCBookman Lt	53	49
ITCBookman Db	54	51
ITCBookman LtIt	55	50
ITCBookman DbIt	56	52
NewCentSchlBk Rman	61	74
NewCentSchlBk Bd	58	67
NewCentSchlBk It	59	66
NewCentSchlBk BdlIt	60	68
Times Rmn	61	74
Times Bd	62	76

**Table 7-2** PCL font ID list (continued)

Times It	63	75
Times BdlT	64	77
ZapfChancery MdIt	65	78
Symbol	66	43
SymbolPS	67	73
WingDings	68	44
ZapfDingbats	69	79
Courier Bd	70	25
Courier It	71	24
Courier BdlT	72	26
LetterGothic	73	27
LetterGothic Bd	74	28
LetterGothic It	75	29
CourierPS	76	53
CourierPS Bd	77	55
CourierPS Ob	78	54
CourierPS BdOb	79	56
Line Printer	80	84
Line Printer	81	84
Line Printer	82	84
Line Printer	83	84
Line Printer	84	84
Line Printer	85	84
Line Printer	86	
Line Printer	87	
Line Printer	88	
Line Printer	89	
<b>Not included in BFI:</b>		
Naskh		80
Naskh Bd		81
Koufi		82
Koufi Bd		83

## Media attributes

This section includes the following information about media attributes:

- [Media types and sizes](#)
- [Custom paper sizes](#)

### Media types and sizes

The tables in this section provide information about media features, media attributes, and paper-handling constraints for the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP.



**NOTE** The following table lists the features and attributes of various media listed under the **Size Is** drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The list order can vary, depending on the operating system. The list will contain all the sizes shown here, and might contain sizes from other drivers.

**Table 7-3** Supported media attributes

Paper sizes	Width	Height
Letter	216 mm (8.5 inches)	279 mm (11.0 inches)
Legal	216 mm (8.5 inches)	355 mm (14.0 inches)
A4	210 mm (8.27 inches)	297 mm (11.69 inches)
Executive	185 mm (7.25 inches)	266 mm (10.5 inches)
B5 (ISO)	176 mm (6.93 inches)	250 mm (9.84 inches)
Envelope #10	105 mm (4.13 inches)	241 mm (9.5 inches)
Envelope Monarch	99 mm (3.88 inches)	190 mm (7.5 inches)
Envelope C5 (ISO)	162 mm (6.38 inches)	229 mm (9.02 inches)
Envelope DL (ISO)	110 mm (4.33 inches)	220 mm (8.66 inches)
Envelope B5 (ISO)	176 mm (6.93 inches)	250 mm (9.84 inches)
Custom	Minimum: 76 mm	Minimum: 127 mm


**Table 7-3** Supported media attributes (continued)

Paper sizes	Width	Height
	(3.0 inches)	(5.00 inches)
	Maximum:	Maximum:
	216 mm	356 mm
	(8.5 inches)	(14.0 inches)
B5 (JIS)	182 mm	257 mm
	(7.16 inches)	(10.12 inches)
Postcard (JIS)	100 mm	148 mm
	(3.94 inches)	(5.83 inches)
Double Postcard (JIS)	148 mm	200 mm
	(5.83 inches)	(7.87 inches)
A5	148 mm	210 mm
	(5.83 inches)	(8.27 inches)
8.5 x 13 (Foolscap)	216 mm	330 mm
	(8.5 inches)	(13 inches)
16K 7.75 x 10.75	197 mm	273 mm
	(7.75 inches)	(10.75 inches)
16K 184x260mm	184 mm	260 mm
	7.2 inches	10.2 inches
16K 195x270mm	195 mm	270 mm
	7.67 inches	10.6 inches

## Custom paper sizes

The following table identifies the media types the HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP supports in trays 1, 2, and 3.

**Table 7-4** Tray specifications

Media Type	Dimensions <sup>1</sup>	Weight	Capacity <sup>2</sup>
Paper	Minimum: 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 inches)  Maximum: 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches)	60 to 163 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 43 lb)  Up to 176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (47 lb) for postcards	Tray 1: Single sheet of paper  Tray 2: Up to 250 sheets  Optional tray 3: Up to 250 sheets
<div>  <b>NOTE</b> Tray 3 does not accept postcards, envelopes, or other special media.         </div>			
HP LaserJet glossy paper and HP LaserJet Photo paper <sup>4</sup>	Identical to Paper	75 to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 to 58 lb)	Tray 1: Single sheet of HP LaserJet glossy paper or HP LaserJet Photo paper  Tray 2: Up to 25 mm (0.99 inch) stack height
HP Premium Cover paper <sup>4</sup>	Identical to Paper	200 g/m <sup>2</sup> (53 lb) cover	Tray 1: Single sheet of HP Cover paper  Tray 2: Up to 25 mm (0.99 inch) stack height
Transparencies and opaque film	Identical to Paper	Thickness: 0.10 to 0.13 mm (3.9 to 5.1 mils)	Tray 1: Single sheet of transparency or opaque film  Tray 2: Up to 50 sheets
Labels <sup>3</sup>	Identical to Paper	Thickness: up to 0.23 mm (up to 9 mils)	Tray 1: Single sheet of labels  Tray 2: Up to 25 mm (0.99 inch) stack height
Envelopes		Up to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (up to 24 lb)	Tray 1: Single envelope  Tray 2: Up to ten envelopes

<sup>1</sup> The MFP supports a wide range of standard and custom sizes of print media. Check the printer driver for supported sizes.

<sup>2</sup> Capacity can vary depending on media weight and thickness, and environmental conditions.

<sup>3</sup> Smoothness: 100 to 250 (Sheffield).

<sup>4</sup> Hewlett-Packard does not guarantee results when printing with other types of heavy paper.

# HP Color LaserJet CM1015 MFP/CM1017 MFP Install Notes

- [I. Introduction](#)
- [II. LATE-BREAKING INFORMATION](#)
- [III. INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS](#)
- [IV. TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE](#)
- [V. LEGAL STATEMENTS](#)

## I. Introduction

### PURPOSE OF THIS DOCUMENT

This document provides specific installation instructions and other information you should know before you install and use the printing system. Installation instructions are provided in this document for the following operating systems:

- Windows® 2000
- Windows® XP
- Windows Server 2003

For information and printer drivers for Linux, go to the following Web site: [www.hp.com/go/linux](http://www.hp.com/go/linux)

For information and printer drivers for UNIX®, go to the following Web site: [www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix\\_software](http://www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix_software)

For installation instructions for OS/2 printer drivers, Macintosh OS components, or other systems, see the associated installation notes, readme files, or other product information for that particular system.

The HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 MFP has the following features:

#### HP Color LaserJet CM1015

- 96 MB of SDRAM
- Full-color laser printing using CMYK
- Hi-Speed USB 2.0 port
- 600 x 600 dpi text and graphics
- Single-sheet priority-feed slot (tray 1) and a 250-sheet universal tray (tray 2)
- Optional additional 250-sheet tray (tray 3)
- Prints 8 ppm in color
- HP PCL 6 and HP postscript level 3 emulation
- Meets ENERGY STAR® guidelines for energy efficiency



- Full-color copying from letter/A4-sized scanner glass
- 1200-ppi 24-bit full-color scanning from letter/A4-size scanner glass

### HP Color LaserJet CM1017

Offers all of the CM1015 features plus the following:

- Four memory-card slots
- Tilt-screen graphical display
- Built-in internal print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-T network

This file provides specific installation, compatibility, and troubleshooting information. For additional information about device features and driver features, see the device user guide and the online help that is included with each software component.

## WHO NEEDS THIS SOFTWARE?

All users need this printing system software in order to operate the HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 MFP.

## OVERVIEW OF THE PRINTING-SYSTEM COMPONENTS

The Windows CD-ROM has software for IBM-compatible computer systems. For more information about a particular driver or software component, see its associated online help.

### End-user software components in a Recommended install



**NOTE** A Recommended install is either a Full or Minimum install, depending on whether you meet the system requirements.

### Drivers

A driver is software that allows software applications to access device features. Typically, you should install drivers for each device. The printing-system software CD-ROM that came with your device includes the following Windows drivers:

- HP PCL 6 print driver for Windows 2000 and Windows XP, both with similar graphical user interfaces
- HP TWAIN Scan driver for Windows 2000 and Windows XP
- HP WIA Scan driver for Windows XP
- HP postscript level 3 emulation driver (only installable in the Add Printer Wizard)

### Software Applications

- HP ToolboxFX
- HP Software Update
- HP Photosmart Express
- HP Photosmart Transfer

- HP Product Assistant
- HP Solution Center

### End-user software components available for a Custom install

#### Drivers

A driver is software that allows software applications to access device features. Typically, you should install drivers for each device. The printing-system software CD-ROM that came with your device includes the following Windows drivers:

- HP PCL 6 print driver for Windows 2000 and Windows XP, both with similar graphical user interfaces
- HP TWAIN Scan driver for Windows 2000 and Windows XP
- HP WIA Scan driver for Windows XP
- HP postscript level 3 emulation driver (only installable in the Add Printer Wizard)

#### Software Applications

- HP ToolboxFX
- HP Software Update
- HP Document Viewer
- User guide (Windows Help format)
- HP Photosmart Premier
- HP Photosmart Transfer
- HP Product Assistant
- HP Software Tour
- HP Solution Center
- HP Photosmart Express



**NOTE** ScanTo functionality is only available after a Recommended (Full) or Custom install.

PostScript® (PS) print drivers for Windows 2000 and Windows XP are available on the CD. To install this driver, you must use the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard after the installation from the software CD-ROM is completed. The .INF files for these drivers are available in the following location:

<CD-ROM Drive>:\DRIVERS\<Operating System>\

Install the driver to the printer port that was created for the PCL driver during installation.

Additional drivers might be available from your Hewlett-Packard distributor or from online sources. See the "Technical Assistance" section of this document or the device user guide for more information about obtaining drivers and other HP software.

## HP ToolboxFX

The printing system software includes HP ToolboxFX software for end-users. HP ToolboxFX provides device status information such as toner and paper levels, and it also provides pop-up alert messages when attention is needed at the device. HP ToolboxFX is also used to configure the device settings.

## Adobe Acrobat Reader

Use Acrobat Reader to view the online manuals. A version is available on the CD-ROM in the following location:

<CD-ROM Drive>:\apps\Adobe\Acrobat5.0\Reader\AcroRd32.exe

The latest version of Acrobat Reader is available on the Adobe Web site at [www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com).

## Device documentation

The following documents are available on the printing-system software CD-ROM:

### HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 MFP

- Document: HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 User Guide  
 File name: LJCM101X\_use\_<language code>.pdf  
 File name: LJCM101X \_use\_<language code>.chm  
 Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJCM101X\_use\_<language code>.pdf  
 Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJCM101X\_use\_<language code>.chm
- Document: HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 Install Notes  
 File name: LJCM101X\_installnotes\_<language code>.htm  
 Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\LJCM101X\_installnotes\_<language code>.htm

## Uninstall

The uninstall utility allows you to remove the Windows HP printing system components. See the "Uninstaller" section for more instructions.

## II. LATE-BREAKING INFORMATION

### KNOWN ISSUES AND WORKAROUNDS

For an updated listing of known issues for the HP LaserJet printing system software, see the HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 MFP support pages at the following URL:

[www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)

## General

- The SNMP Community Name can be set in HP ToolboxFX or the embedded Web server. If the Community Name is changed to something other than "public", network scanning stops working.
- Firewall software can interfere with the HP software installer. Disable the firewall before starting a network installation or the device might not be detected.
- Certain high-speed USB 2.0 cards ship with unsigned host controller drivers. If you have purchased a USB 2.0 add-in card and have an unsigned driver, you might experience driver installation problems or communication problems between the device and HP software. It is recommended that you always use a Microsoft WHQL Certified host controller driver with your USB hardware.
- Plug and Play Print/Scan driver packages are available on the Web at: [www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)
- Functionality is limited on systems that only meet minimum system requirements. Many images and videos require a system that meets the recommended system requirements for acceptable performance and reliability.
- If your device is not recognized:
  - Verify that your cable is USB 2.0 high-speed compliant.
  - Ensure that your cable is connected correctly. Remove the USB cable, look at the end of the cable, and then match it to the pattern on the USB port. Make sure that it is not upside down. Insert one end of the USB cable completely into the USB port on the HP device, and insert the other end into the back of the computer.
  - Verify that the peripheral is powered on. Peripherals will not be recognized if the power is off.
  - Ensure that your USB cable is no more than 5 meters ( ~ 16.4 feet) in length.
  - Verify that the USB port is enabled. Some PCs ship with disabled USB ports.
- On a Thai system, some components may show English text.
- Simultaneous printing and scanning is not supported. If the device is scanning, the print job will be held until the scan completes. If the device is printing, an attempt to scan will result in a "Device Busy" error.

## HP ToolboxFX

- HP ToolboxFX utilizes Microsoft .Net Framework version 1.1. Depending on the configuration of your PC, you might need to update your system configuration after installation by using Windows Update. If you encounter problems with HP ToolboxFX, install all available critical updates from Windows Update.
- HP ToolboxFX might not function in Windows 2000 if Service Pack 4 (SP4) and critical updates are not currently installed. If you encounter problems with HP ToolboxFX, install all available critical updates for Windows 2000 from Windows Update.
- Your network settings can be password protected by setting a password within HP ToolboxFX. If you forget your password, you must restore the factory defaults on your device.

## Scanning

- Scanning at higher resolutions can take a long time, and the process will create large files. The best compromise between quality, time, and size is provided by the default resolution.
- The default file type for the HP LaserJet Scan software is JPEG when scanning to a file, and the default file type is PDF when scanning to e-mail. A JPEG file supports 256 gray shades (8-bit) output type. If you select an output type of black-and-white (1-bit), the file produced will still be in the JPEG format. To get a true black-and-white output type, change the setting for the default file type to either TIFF or BMP in the Settings menu in the HP LaserJet Scan software.
- For the best autcrop results, make sure the lid is correctly centered on the scanner to prevent stray light from entering into the scan. Some images may not autcrop well even when the lid is on properly. In these instances you will need to manually draw the crop area.
- OCR recommendations for input files:
  - 300 dpi, 8-bit grayscale or 24-bit image data
  - 400 dpi, 8-bit grayscale or 24-bit image data for Asian languages (Traditional and Simplified Chinese, Japanese, and Korean)
  - Do not use 1-bit files for OCR.
- Putting a few sheets of paper on top of flatbed-scanned originals can help eliminate bleed-through of the second side image or foam mat.
- Scanned originals that are bent, creased, or scored can cause shadows to appear on the image.
- Scan buttons on the device control panel will not function unless you have done a Recommended (Full) or Custom install and set up Scan-To in the HP LaserJet Scan software.

## Upgrading Windows

- HP recommends that you uninstall HP devices before upgrading to a newer supported version of Windows. For example, when upgrading from Windows 2000 to Windows XP, uninstall your HP device using Add/Remove Programs and then upgrade to the new operating system. After the operating system upgrade is complete, re-install your HP device using the latest software available at the following URL: [www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)

## Other Applications

- Microsoft WordPad does not display compressed JPEG files contained in an RTF file. To display these files, use a different application such as Microsoft Word.

## ISSUES FIXED

For an updated listing of issues fixed for the HP LaserJet printing system software, see the HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 MFP support pages at the following URL:

[www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)

## III. INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

When operating in a Windows environment, the CD-ROM setup or installation software detects the version and language of the operating system that you are running.

## INSTALLING SOFTWARE ON WINDOWS 2000, XP, AND SERVER 2003



**NOTE** Administrator privileges are required to install the printing system.

**NOTE** Do not plug the USB cable into the computer or printer until instructed to do so by the software.

1. Quit all programs.
2. Insert the CD-ROM.
3. If the HP printing system installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete steps 4 through 6.
4. Select Run from the Start menu on your taskbar.
5. Browse to the root directory on the CD-ROM drive.
6. Select the AUTORUN.EXE file, click Open, and then click OK. When the animated installation guide appears, click Begin Setup for help setting up the device.
7. After watching the animated installation guide, click Install Software to start the software installation.
8. Follow the onscreen instructions.

### UNINSTALLER

The uninstaller removes all of the HP printing system components.

1. From the Start menu, in the HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 program group, click the HP Color LaserJet CM1015/CM1017 uninstall icon.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

If you have performed a Custom install and you do not have any other HP devices installed, perform the following additional steps:

3. Open the Microsoft® Windows Control Panel.
4. Double-click Add/Remove Programs. You will see entries for HP Extended Capabilities, HP Software Update, and any additional HP applications that have been installed.
5. For each HP item, click Change/Remove and follow the prompts.

## IV. TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE

For customer support information, see the user guide or the in-box support flyer, or call your local authorized HP dealer.

You can also browse to the following URL for online technical support:

[www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015\\_CM1017](http://www.hp.com/support/cljCM1015_CM1017)

## V. LEGAL STATEMENTS

## TRADEMARK NOTICES

Adobe®, Acrobat®, and Adobe® PostScript® 3™ are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Energy Star® and the Energy Star mark® are US registered marks of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Microsoft®, Windows®, and Windows® XP are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corp.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of the Open Group.

## WARRANTY AND COPYRIGHT

### Warranty

See the device user guide for complete warranty and support information.

### Copyright

© 2006 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.





# Index

## Symbols/Numerics

% of Normal Size setting  
    unidrivers 227

## A

About tab  
    HP ToolboxFX 96  
    unidrivers 256  
AccessDeniedUtility.exe 280  
accessibility 6  
Add Printer Wizard  
    installation 129  
addendum 2  
Adobe Acrobat Reader 10  
Advanced network settings 92  
Advanced page, HP EWS 113  
Advanced Printing Features setting,  
    unidrivers 209  
Advanced tab, unidrivers 205  
alerts  
    e-mail 61, 71  
    pop-up 60  
    Receive Alert messages for  
        device events 60  
    Setup Status Alerts screen, HP  
        ToolboxFX 68  
    system-tray icons 60  
Alerts folder, HP ToolboxFX 68  
Animated Demonstrations screen,  
    HP ToolboxFX 75  
Animated Getting Started  
    Guide 134  
Apple Macintosh. *See* Macintosh  
ASCII protocol, PS Emulation  
    Unidriver settings 254  
Auto continue settings 83  
Auto Firmware Downloader  
    (Windows network  
        installation) 153

Auto Firmware Downloader  
    (Windows USB installation) 143  
Automatically check for updates  
    dialog box (Windows network  
        installation) 149  
Automatically check for updates  
    dialog box (Windows USB  
        installation) 137  
availability, Windows software  
    components 14

## B

Back Cover settings  
    unidrivers 218  
Back to Front printing,  
    unidrivers 211  
binary protocol, PS Emulation  
    Unidriver settings 254  
binding settings  
    PCL 6 unidriver 236  
bitmaps, sending TrueType fonts as  
    PS Emulation Unidriver 210  
black, printing all text as  
    unidrivers 211  
Bonjour (Rendezvous) page, HP  
    EWS 114  
booklets  
    PCL 6 unidriver settings 237  
    unidriver settings 237  
both sides, printing on  
    unidriver settings 252  
browsers supported, HP  
    ToolboxFX 59

## C

cartridges  
    low threshold settings 83  
CD-ROM  
    directory structure,  
        Windows 17

languages, Windows 17  
localized versions,  
    Macintosh 263  
    ordering 263  
    ordering localized 16  
Change TCP/IP Settings dialog box  
    (Windows network  
        installation) 158  
Citrix support 13  
cleaning mode 83  
Color tab  
    unidrivers 241  
colors  
    unidriver settings 208, 241  
components, software  
    availability 14  
    Macintosh 258  
    Windows 9  
Configure Device utility 258  
Confirm Changing Setting dialog  
    box (Windows network  
        installation) 157  
Confirm Settings dialog box  
    (Windows network  
        installation) 157  
conflicts, device 276  
Congratulations! Software  
    installation complete dialog box  
    (Microsoft Windows Server 2003  
        installation) 165  
Congratulations! Software  
    installation complete dialog box  
    (USB Windows installation) 144  
Congratulations! Software  
    installation complete dialog box  
    (Windows network  
        installation) 158  
Connect Your Device Now dialog  
    box

- (Microsoft Windows Server 2003 installation) 163
- Connect Your Device Now dialog box (USB Windows installation) 141
- Connection time-out (I/O) settings 83
- Connection Type dialog box (Microsoft Windows Server 2003 installation) 162
- Connection Type dialog box (USB Windows installation) 141
- Connection Type dialog box (Windows network installation) 153
- connection types
  - installation options, Windows 128
- constraint messages
  - unidrivers 202
- Control area, HP Solution Center 30
- copies, number of
  - unidriver settings 207
- copying
  - features available 7
  - multitasking 8
- cover settings
  - unidrivers 217, 218
- Create area, HP Solution Center 52
- CTRL-D settings, PS Emulation Unidriver 254
- Current Progress dialog box (Windows Network installation) 148
- Current Progress dialog box (Windows USB installation) 136
- Custom installation, Windows
  - components 126
  - dialog box (network) 151
  - dialog box (USB) 139
  - selecting (network) 150
  - selecting (USB) 138
  - system requirements 11
- custom paper sizes
  - unidrivers 217
- Customer Participation Program
  - about 28

- installation components, Windows 126
- uninstalling 176
- customer support 96
- D**
- density screen, HP
  - ToolboxFX 79
- density, HP EWS page 107
- Destination Folder dialog box (Network Windows installation) 152
- Destination Folder dialog box (USB Windows installation) 140
- Device Configuration page, HP EWS 100
- Device Configuration screen, HP
  - ToolboxFX 63
- device conflicts 276
- Device has been detected dialog box (Microsoft Windows Server 2003 installation) 163, 164
- Device has been detected dialog box (USB Windows installation) 142
- Device Information page, HP EWS 106
- Device Information screen, HP
  - ToolboxFX 77
- Device Settings tab 248
- Device Status page, HP EWS 98
- Device Status screen, HP
  - ToolboxFX 62
- dialog boxes, Macintosh installation 267
- dialog boxes, Microsoft Windows Server 2003 installation
  - Congratulations Software installation complete 165
  - Connect Your Device Now 163
  - Connection Type 162
  - Device has been detected 163, 164
  - Test Page 164
- dialog boxes, Windows network installation
  - about 147

- Auto Firmware
  - Downloader 153
- Automatically check for updates 149
- Change TCP/IP Settings 158
- Confirm Changing Setting 157
- Confirm Settings 157
- Congratulations Software
  - installation complete 158
- Connection Type 153
- Current Progress 148
- Custom Installation 151
- Destination Folder 152
- Do Not Block HP Install Wizard
  - Processes 149
- Firewall Detected 155
- HP Registration 160
- HP Software License
  - Agreement 151
- Identify Printer 154
- Installation options 150
- Other options 161
- Printer Found 156
- Ready to Install 152
- Searching 155
- Sign Up Now 159
- Specify Printer 156
- Test Page 159
- Welcome 148
- Welcome Back 167
- dialog boxes, Windows USB installation
  - Auto Firmware
    - Downloader 143
  - Automatically check for updates 137
  - Congratulations Software
    - installation complete 144
  - Connect Your Device
    - Now 141
  - Connection Type 141
  - Current Progress 136
  - Custom Installation 139
  - Destination Folder 140
  - Device has been detected 142
  - Do Not Block HP Install Wizard
    - Processes 137
  - HP Registration 146

- HP Software License Agreement 139
- Installation options 138
- Other options 147
- Ready to Install 140
- Restart 144
- Sign Up Now 145
- Test Page 145
- Welcome 136
- Welcome Back 167
- DIMMs, included 4
- direct connections
  - features available 7, 8
  - Macintosh installation 266
  - Windows installation 128
- Director, HP LaserJet 258, 259
- directory structure, software CD-ROM
  - Windows 17
- disk space requirements
  - Macintosh 262
  - Windows 11
- Do Not Block HP Install Wizard
  - Processes dialog box (Windows network installation) 149
- Do Not Block HP Install Wizard
  - Processes dialog box (Windows USB installation) 137
- Document Options
  - unidrivers 209, 234
- document preview image
  - unidrivers 222
- Document Viewer
  - about 117
  - installation components, Windows 127
  - installing 172
- documentation
  - addendum 2
  - localized versions 23
  - operating systems supported 15
  - Print Task Quick Set for use guide, unidriver 215
  - Readme 294
  - uninstalling 176
- double-sided printing
  - unidriver settings 235, 252
- downloading
  - printing-system software 16

- drivers
  - availability by operating system 14
  - direct connections, Microsoft Windows installation 128
  - HP Postscript level 3 emulation support 204
  - installation components, Windows 126
  - installation only, Windows 133
  - localized versions 263
  - Macintosh 258
  - Plug and Play installation 129
  - scan 194
  - standalone 13
  - troubleshooting
    - installation 281
    - Windows 9
- Drum low threshold settings 83
- duplexing, manual
  - unidriver settings 252

## E

- e-mail
  - alerts 61
  - File to E-mail utility 280
  - Macintosh software 259
  - troubleshooting 279
- e-mail alerts 71
- e-mail, scanning to
  - features available 7, 8
  - Macintosh software 258
  - operating systems supported 16
  - Windows programs supported 192
- Edge Control
  - unidrivers 244
- Effects tab
  - unidrivers 225
- Embedded Web Server (EWS)
  - installation components, Windows 127
- energy use 6
- error messages
  - Auto continue settings 83
  - constraint, unidrivers 202
  - e-mail alerts 61

- pop-up alerts 60
- Receive Alerts for device events 60
- Euro symbol 255
- Event Log page, HP EWS 105
- Event Log screen, HP ToolboxFX 67
- EWS (HP Embedded Web Server)
  - Advanced page 113
  - Bonjour (Rendezvous) page 114
  - Device Configuration page 100
  - Device Information page 106
  - Device Status page 98
  - Event Log page 105
  - IP Configuration page 113
  - Memory Card page 112
  - Network Configuration page 103
  - Network Summary page 115
  - Networking tab 112
  - Paper Handling page 106
  - Paper Types page 108
  - Password page 110
  - PCL5c page 111
  - PostScript page 111
  - Print Density page 107
  - Print Info Pages 104
  - Print Quality page 107
  - Printing page 110
  - Settings 105
  - SNMP page 114
  - Status tab 98
  - Supplies Status page 99
  - System Setup page 109
- EWS Device Configuration utility, Macintosh 259
- Extended Capabilities
  - about 28
  - installation components, Windows 126
  - uninstalling 176
- External Fonts settings, PCL 6 unidriver 250

## F

- features
  - connection types 7, 8
  - HP ToolboxFX 57

- multitasking 8
- product 4
- File to E-mail utility 280
- Finishing tab
  - unidrivers 209, 233
- Firewall Detected dialog box (Windows network installation) 155
- firewalls
  - network Windows installation 149
  - USB Windows installation 137
- firmware upgrades 143, 153
- First Page paper settings, unidrivers 221
- FixErr1714 utility 281
- Flip Pages Up settings
  - PCL 6 unidriver 236
- fonts
  - Euro symbol 255
  - External, PCL 6 unidriver 250
  - HP Postscript level 3 emulation support 204
  - included 5
  - installation components, Windows 126
  - lists, printing 104
  - Send TrueType as Bitmap, PCL 6 unidriver 211
  - Send TrueType as bitmap, PS Emulation Unidriver 210
  - substitution table, unidrivers 250
  - TrueType settings, unidrivers 209
  - watermark settings, unidrivers 230, 232
  - Windows operating systems supported 15
- Form to Tray Assignment, unidrivers 249
- formatter
  - number 63
- Front Cover settings
  - unidrivers 218
- Front to Back printing, unidrivers 211
- fulfillment centers 16, 263
- Full installation, Windows components 126
- selecting 138, 150
- system requirements 11
- fuser modes 81
- G**
- grayscale settings
  - PS Emulation Unidriver 254
  - unidrivers 243, 245
- H**
- halftone settings
  - unidrivers 245
- help
  - HP Solution Center 46
  - localized versions 19
  - Macintosh 258
  - operating systems supported 15
  - unidrivers 202
  - Windows 10
- Help folder, HP ToolboxFX 73
- How do I? folder, HP ToolboxFX 74
- HP Customer Participation Program
  - about 28
  - installation components, Windows 126
  - uninstalling 176
- HP Digital Imaging 222
- HP Document Viewer
  - about 117
  - installation components, Windows 127
  - installing 172
- HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)
  - Advanced page 113
  - Bonjour (Rendezvous) page 114
  - Device Configuration page 100
  - Device Information page 106
  - Device Status page 98
  - Event Log page 105
  - installation components, Windows 127
  - IP Configuration page 113
  - Memory Card page 112
  - Network Configuration page 103
- Network Summary page 115
- Networking tab 112
- Paper Handling page 106
- Paper Types page 108
- Password page 110
- PCL5c page 111
- PostScript page 111
- Print Density page 107
- Print Info Pages 104
- Print Quality page 107
- Printing page 110
- Settings 105
- SNMP page 114
- Status tab 98
- Supplies Status page 99
- System Setup page 109
- HP EWS Device Configuration utility, Macintosh 259
- HP Instant Support 96
- HP LaserJet Director 258, 259
- HP LaserJet Scan software
  - about 185
  - dialog boxes 185
  - e-mail 191
  - scanning 185
  - settings 192
- HP Marketing Assistant
  - installation components, Windows 127
  - localized versions 19
  - opening 123
  - operating systems supported 15
  - troubleshooting 282
  - uninstalling 176
- HP Photosmart Premier
  - about 117
  - Backup tab 123
  - Create tab 121
  - Edit tab 119
  - installation components, Windows 127
  - installing 168
  - opening 117
  - operating systems supported 15
  - Print tab 120
  - Share tab 122
  - transfer settings 40

- uninstalling 176
- View tab 118
- HP PhotoSmart Studio
  - (Macintosh) 258, 260
- HP Postscript level 3 emulation support 204
- HP Product Assistant 10
- HP Software License Agreement
  - dialog box
    - Macintosh installation 267
    - network Windows installation 151
    - USB Windows installation 139
- HP Software Tour 10
- HP Software Update 10
- HP Solution Center
  - Control area 30
  - Create area 52
  - features 29
  - Help and Support area 46
  - Idea window 56
  - installation components, Windows 127
  - opening 29
  - operating systems supported 15
  - Order HP Prints Online 46
  - Product Information area 30
  - Scan document area 31
  - Scan picture area 30
  - Settings 34
  - Shopping Center 43
  - Software area 55
  - Support 34
  - Transfer Images 32
  - troubleshooting 283
  - uninstalling 176
  - Utilities 33
- HP ToolboxFX
  - About 96
  - Advanced network settings 92
  - Alerts folder 68
  - Animated Demonstrations screen 75
  - Auto continue settings 83
  - browsers supported 59
  - Device Configuration screen 63
  - Device Information screen 77
  - Device Status screen 62

- e-mail alerts 61
- Event Log screen 67
- features 9, 57
- Help folder 73
- How do I? folder 74
- HP Instant Support 96
- installation components, Windows 127
- IP Configuration settings 91
- Jam recovery settings 83
- localized versions 19
- Memory Card screen 89
- Network Configuration screen 65
- Network Settings folder 90
- Network Summary screen 94
- opening page 58
- operating systems supported 15
- Order Supplies screen 97
- Paper Handling screen 77
- Paper Types screen 81
- Password settings 85
- PCL5c screen 87
- pop-up alert messages 60
- PostScript screen 88
- Print Density screen 79
- Print Info Pages screen 66
- Print Quality screen 78
- Printing screen 87
- Product Registration screen 97
- Product Support screen 97
- Receive Alert messages for device events 60
- Save/Restore settings screen 84
- sections 58
- Service screen 83
- Set up E-mail Alerts screen 71
- Setup Status Alerts screen 68
- SNMP Configuration settings 93
- starting 57
- Status folder 61
- Supplies Status screen 62
- system requirements 59
- System Settings tab 76
- System Setup screen 82

- troubleshooting 282
- Troubleshooting folder 73
- uninstalling 176
- User Guide screen 76
- HP Web Jetadmin
  - downloading 16
  - operating systems supported 15
- I
  - ICM (Image Color Management) settings 208
  - Idea window, HP Solution Center 56
  - Identify Printer dialog box (Windows network installation) 154
  - Image Color Management (ICM) settings 208
  - information pages, print from HP EWS 104
  - information pages, printing 66
  - Installable Options, PS Emulation Unidriver 252
  - installation
    - Animated Getting Started Guide 134
    - dialog boxes, Macintosh 267
    - dialog boxes, Windows 135
    - driver-only, Windows 133
    - File to E-mail utility 280
    - HP Document Viewer 172
    - HP Photosmart Premier 168
    - Macintosh product software 266
    - Macintosh software 264
    - networks, Windows 129
    - Plug and Play 129
    - system requirements for Macintosh 262
    - system requirements for Windows 11
    - troubleshooting 281
    - Windows software 126, 128
  - Installation options dialog box (Windows network installation) 150
  - Installation options dialog box (Windows USB installation) 138



- installers
  - included 14
  - Macintosh 258
- Instant Support, HP 96
- IP Configuration page, HP EWS 113
- IP Configuration settings 91
- IPX/SPX protocols 128
- Itanium Architecture (IA-64) 12

**J**

- jams
  - recovery settings 83
- Job Timeout, PS Emulation Unidriver 255

**K**

- known issues 281

**L**

- landscape orientation
  - Flip Pages Up, PCL 6 unidriver 236
  - unidrivers 239
- languages, localized versions
  - CD-ROMs, Windows 17
  - documentation 23
  - Macintosh software 263
  - ordering CDs 16
- LaserJet Scan software
  - about 185
  - dialog boxes 185
  - e-mail 191
  - scanning 185
  - settings 192
- Layout Options, unidrivers 211
- license agreement
  - Macintosh installation 267
  - network Windows installation 151
  - USB Windows installation 139
- Linux drivers 12, 14
- localized versions
  - documentation 23
  - Macintosh software 263
  - ordering CDs 16
  - Windows 17
- Lotus Notes 192

**M**

- Macintosh
  - components, software 258
  - dialog boxes, installation 267
  - HP EWS Device Configuration utility 259
  - HP LaserJet Director 258, 259
  - HP PhotoSmart Studio 258, 260
  - installers 258
  - installing product software 266
  - installing software 264
  - memory cards, accessing 261
  - operating systems
    - supported 60, 262
  - ReadIris 258
  - software components 258
  - system requirements 262
  - uninstalling software 273
- manuals
  - localized versions 23
  - operating systems supported 15
- Marketing Assistant
  - installation components, Windows 127
  - localized versions 19
  - opening 123
  - operating systems supported 15
  - troubleshooting 282
  - uninstalling 176
- mas storage
  - installation components, Windows 126
- mass storage driver 9, 14
- matching, color 208
- media. *See* paper
- memory
  - Device Configuration screen, HP ToolboxFX 63
  - installation requirements for Macintosh 262
  - installation requirements for Windows 11
  - product, included 4

- PS Emulation Unidriver settings 254
- unidriver settings 252

- Memory Card page, HP EWS 112
- Memory Card screen, HP ToolboxFX 89

- memory cards
  - drivers 9, 14
  - features available 7
  - HP Embedded Web Server settings 112
  - HP ToolboxFX settings 90
  - inserting 6
  - Macintosh, accessing 261

- messages
  - alerts, receiving 60
  - Auto continue settings 83
  - constraint, unidrivers 202
  - e-mail alerts 61
  - pop-up alerts 60
- Microsoft Outlook 192
- Microsoft Windows. *See* Windows
- Microsoft Windows Terminal Server 13
- Minimum installation, Windows
  - components 126
  - selecting 138, 150
  - system requirements 11
- Mirror Image, PS Emulation Unidriver 240
- models, features 4
- Mopier Mode, unidrivers 253
- MSI error 1714 utility 281
- multitasking 8

**N**

- Network Configuration page, HP EWS 103
- Network Configuration screen, HP ToolboxFX 65
- Network Settings folder, HP ToolboxFX 90
- Network Summary page, HP EWS 115
- Network Summary screen 94
- Networking tab, HP EWS 112
- networks
  - Advanced settings 92
  - features available 7, 8

- HP Embedded Web Server settings 112
- HP ToolboxFX settings 65
- installation dialog boxes, Windows 147
- installation options, Windows 128
- IP Configuration settings 91
- Password settings 85
- peer-to-peer, setting up 131
- settings 41
- settings summary 94
- SNMP settings 93
- Windows software installation 129
- Neutral Grays settings, unidrivers 243
- number of copies unidriver settings 207

## O

- O/S2 support 12
- OCR
  - accuracy 124
  - installation components, Windows 127
  - languages supported 21
  - Macintosh 258
  - operating systems supported 16
  - software programs supported 124
- online help
  - HP Solution Center 46
  - HP ToolboxFX 73
  - Macintosh 258
  - unidrivers 202
  - Windows 10
- operating systems
  - availability of software components 14
  - Macintosh 262
  - standalone drivers 13
  - supported 13
- optical character recognition. See OCR
- Optimizations option, PCL 6 unidriver 209
- Order HP Prints Online 46

- Order Supplies screen, HP ToolboxFX 97
- ordering software 16, 263
- orientation, page
  - Flip Pages Up, PCL 6 unidriver 236
  - unidrivers 239
- Other options dialog box (Windows network installation) 161
- Other options dialog box (Windows USB installation) 147
- Outlook 192
- Output Protocol, PS Emulation Unidriver 254

## P

- Page Order, unidrivers 211
- page orientation
  - Flip Pages Up, PCL 6 unidriver 236
  - unidrivers 239
- pages per minute 4
- Pages per Sheet settings unidrivers 238
- paper
  - cover settings, unidrivers 217, 218
  - custom sizes supported 293
  - Form to Tray Assignment, unidrivers 249
  - fuser modes 81
  - Pages per Sheet settings, unidrivers 238
  - Paper Handling screen 77
  - Print Document On settings, unidrivers 226
  - Print on Both Sides, unidriver 235
  - Size is settings, unidrivers 216
  - sizes supported 291
  - Source is settings, unidrivers 217
  - tray capacities 5
  - troubleshooting 285
  - Type is settings, unidrivers 217
  - types supported 291
  - unidriver settings 215

- Paper Handling page, HP EWS 106
- Paper Handling screen, HP ToolboxFX 77
- Paper Options unidrivers 215
- Paper Types page, HP EWS 108
- Paper Types screen, HP ToolboxFX 81
- Paper/Output settings, unidrivers 207
- Paper/Quality tab, unidrivers 212
- parallel port, not supported 276
- part numbers
  - documentation 23
  - software CDs 16
- Password page, HP EWS 110
- Password settings, HP ToolboxFX 85
- PCL 6 unidriver
  - About tab 256
  - Advanced Printing Features, enabling 209
  - Advanced tab 205
  - booklet printing 237
  - Color tab 241
  - constraint messages 202
  - Copy Count 207
  - Device Settings tab 248
  - Document Options 209, 234
  - document preview image 222
  - Effects tab 225
  - External Fonts settings 250
  - Finishing tab 233
  - font substitution table 250
  - Form to Tray Assignment 249
  - Graphic settings 208
  - help 202
  - HP Digital Imaging 222
  - Image Color Management (ICM) 208
  - Installable Options 252
  - installation components, Windows 126
  - Layout Options 211
  - localized versions 18
  - memory settings 252
  - Mopier Mode 253
  - orientation settings 239
  - Page Order 211

- Paper Options 215
- Paper/Output settings 207
- Paper/Quality tab 212
- Print All Text as Black 211
- Print on Both Sides 235
- Print Optimizations option 209
- Print Quality group box 222
- Print Task Quick Sets 214
- Printer Features tab 210
- Printing Preferences tab 200
- Properties tab 201
- Raster Compression 211
- Resizing Options 226
- Send TrueType as
  - Bitmap 211
- Services tab 246
- settings, changing 200
- TrueType font settings 209
- Watermarks settings 228
- PCL5c page, HP EWS 111
- PCL5c screen, HP ToolboxFX 87
- PDF files, online help 10
- peer-to-peer networking. *See* sharing
- Percent of Normal Size setting
  - unidrivers 227
- photo memory cards. *See* memory cards
- photos
  - Order HP Prints Online 46
- Photosmart Premier
  - about 117
  - Backup tab 123
  - Create tab 121
  - Edit tab 119
  - installation components, Windows 127
  - installing 168
  - opening 117
  - operating systems supported 15
  - Print tab 120
  - Share tab 122
  - transfer settings 40
  - uninstalling 176
  - View tab 118
- PhotoSmart Studio
  - (Macintosh) 258, 260
- Plug and Play installation 129
- pop-up alerts 60
- portrait orientation
  - Flip Pages Up, PCL 6 unidriver 236
  - unidrivers 239
- ports
  - connecting 276
  - device conflicts 276
  - specifications 4
- PostScript Options, PS Emulation Unidriver 209
- PostScript page, HP EWS 111
- PostScript screen, HP ToolboxFX 88
- power consumption 6
- PPDs, Macintosh
  - included 258
  - localized versions 263
- preview image
  - unidrivers 222
- Print all Text as Black
  - unidrivers 211
- print cartridges
  - low threshold settings 83
- Print Density page, HP EWS 107
- Print Density screen, HP ToolboxFX 79
- Print Document On settings
  - unidrivers 226
- Print in Grayscale 245
- Print Info Pages screen, HP ToolboxFX 66
- Print Info Pages, HP EWS 104
- Print on Both Sides
  - unidriver settings 235
- Print Optimizations option, PCL 6 unidriver 209
- Print Quality group box, unidrivers 222
- Print Quality page, HP EWS 107
- Print Quality screen, HP ToolboxFX 78
- Print Task Quick Sets
  - unidrivers 214
- Printer Features, unidrivers 210
- Printer Found dialog box (Windows network installation) 156
- printing
  - default settings 38
  - features available 7
  - fuser modes 81
  - multitasking 8
  - settings 87
- Printing page, HP EWS 110
- Printing Preferences tabs, unidrivers 200
- Printing screen, HP ToolboxFX 87
- Product Assistant 10
- Product Information area, HP Solution Center 30
- Product Registration screen, HP ToolboxFX 97
- Product Support screen, HP ToolboxFX 97
- Properties tabs, unidrivers 201
- protocols, network 128
- PS Emulation Unidriver
  - About tab 256
  - Add Printer Wizard installation 129
  - Advanced Printing Features, enabling 209
  - Advanced tab 205
  - booklet printing 237
  - Color tab 241
  - constraint messages 202
  - Copy Count 207
  - CTRL-D settings 254
  - Device Settings tab 248
  - Document Options 209, 234
  - document preview image 222
  - Effects tab 225
  - Euro symbol 255
  - Finishing tab 233
  - font substitution table 250
  - Form to Tray Assignment 249
  - Graphic settings 208
  - gray settings 254
  - help 202
  - Image Color Management (ICM) 208
  - Installable Options 252
  - Layout Options 211
  - localized versions 18
  - memory settings 252, 254
  - Mirror Image 240
  - Mopier Mode 253
  - operating systems supported 14
  - orientation settings 239



- Output Protocol 254
- Page Order 211
- Paper Options 215
- Paper/Output settings 207
- Paper/Quality tab 212
- PostScript Options 209
- Print All Text as Black 211
- Print on Both Sides 235
- Print Quality group box 222
- Print Task Quick Sets 214
- Printer Features tab 210
- Printing Preferences tab 200
- Properties tab 201
- Resizing Options 226
- Services tab 246
- settings, changing 200
- timeout settings 255
- TrueType font settings 209
- Watermarks settings 228

## Q

- quality settings
  - HPToolboxFX 78
  - unidrivers 222
- quick sets
  - unidrivers 214

## R

- Raster Compression
  - PCL 6 unidriver 211
- ReadIris
  - installation components,
    - Windows 127
  - languages supported 21
  - Macintosh 258
  - OCR features 124
  - operating systems
    - supported 16
- Readme file 294
- Ready to Install dialog box (Network
  - Windows installation) 152
- Ready to Install dialog box (USB
  - Windows installation) 140
- Receive Alert messages for device
  - events 60
- Recommended installation,
  - Windows
    - components 126
    - selecting 138, 150
    - system requirements 11

- regional versions, CD-ROMs
  - Windows 17
- Registration dialog box (Windows
  - network installation) 160
- Registration dialog box (Windows
  - USB installation) 146
- registration, HP ToolboxFX
  - screen 97
- release notes 15
- removing software
  - component list 176
  - Macintosh 273
  - methods 177
  - Windows 2000 or XP 177
- reports, printing 66
- Resizing Options, unidrivers 226
- resolution
  - HP ToolboxFX settings 78
  - Print Quality page, HP
    - EWS 107
  - printing 5
  - scanning 5, 192
  - unidriver settings 222
- Restart dialog box (Windows USB
  - installation) 144
- Restore Settings screen 84
- RGB settings
  - unidrivers 244

## S

- Save/Restore Settings screen 84
- saving settings
  - unidrivers 214
- Scale to Fit setting
  - unidrivers 226
- Scan Preferences dialog box 196
- scanning
  - default settings 34
  - e-mail programs
    - supported 191
  - features available 7, 8
  - HP LaserJet Scan
    - software 185
  - HP Solution Center 30
  - Macintosh software 258, 259
  - methods 184
  - multitasking 8
  - preferences 196
  - resolution 192
  - settings 192

- TWAIN driver features 194
- WIA driver features 196
- Searching dialog box (Windows
  - network installation) 155
- security, password settings
  - HP Embedded Web
    - Server 110
  - HP ToolboxFX 85
- Send CTRL-D settings, PS
  - Emulation Unidriver 254
- Send TrueType as Bitmap
  - PS Emulation Unidriver 210
- serial number 63
- Service ID 63
- Service screen, HP
  - ToolboxFX 83
- Services tab, unidrivers 246
- Set up E-mail Alerts screen, HP
  - ToolboxFX 71
- settings
  - Device Configuration
    - screen 63
  - Print Task Quick Sets,
    - unidrivers 214
  - Save/Restore screen 84
- Settings tab, HP EWS 105
- Settings, HP Solution Center 34
- setup. See installation
- Setup Status Alerts screen, HP
  - ToolboxFX 68
- shading, watermark settings
  - unidrivers 231
- sharing
  - features available 7
  - installation options,
    - Windows 128
  - setting up 131
- Shopping area, HP Solution
  - Center 43
- Sign Up Now dialog box 145
- Sign Up Now dialog box (Windows
  - network installation) 159
- sizes, paper
  - Form to Tray Assignment,
    - unidrivers 249
  - HP ToolboxFX settings 77
  - supported 291
  - unidriver settings 216
- SNMP page, HP EWS 114
- SNMP settings 93

- Software area, HP Solution Center 55
- software license agreement
  - Macintosh installation 267
  - network Windows installation 151
  - USB Windows installation 139
- Software Tour 10
- Software Update 10
- software, ordering 16, 263
- Solution Center
  - Control area 30
  - Create area 52
  - features 29
  - Help and Support area 46
  - Idea window 56
  - installation components, Windows 127
  - opening 29
  - Order HP Prints Online 46
  - Product Information area 30
  - Scan document area 31
  - Scan picture area 30
  - Settings 34
  - Shopping Center 43
  - Software area 55
  - Support 34
  - Transfer Images 32
  - troubleshooting 283
  - uninstalling 176
  - Utilities 33
- Source is settings 217
- Specify Printer dialog box (Windows network installation) 156
- speed, printing 4
- standalone copier features 7
- standalone drivers 13
- status
  - device, HP ToolboxFX 62
  - HP Solution Center 42
- status alerts screen, HP ToolboxFX 68
- Status folder, HP ToolboxFX 61
- status screen, HP ToolboxFX 62
- Status tab, HP EWS 98
- supplies
  - HP Solution Center 44
  - low threshold settings 83
- Supplies Status page, HP EWS 99
- Supplies Status screen, HP ToolboxFX 62
- supplies, ordering 97
- support, product 34, 96, 97
- system requirements
  - HP ToolboxFX 59
  - Macintosh 262
  - Windows 11
- System Settings tab, HP ToolboxFX 76
- System Setup page, HP EWS 109
- System Setup screen, HP ToolboxFX 82
- System tab, HP EWS Device Configuration utility 105
- system-tray icon alerts 60
- T**
  - TBCP protocol, PS Emulation Unidriver settings 254
  - TCP/IP protocols 128
  - Terminal Server 13
  - Test Page dialog box (Microsoft Windows Server 2003 installation) 164
  - Test Page dialog box (Windows network installation) 159
  - Test Page dialog box (Windows USB installation) 145
  - text, printing all as black unidrivers 211
  - timeout settings, PS Emulation Unidriver 255
  - ToolboxFX. See HP ToolboxFX
  - Transfer images area, HP Solution Center 32
  - trapping settings, unidrivers 244
  - trays
    - capacities 5
    - custom paper sizes supported 293
  - Form to Tray Assignment, unidrivers 249
  - HP ToolboxFX settings 77
- Installable Options, unidrivers 252
- Source is settings, unidrivers 217
- troubleshooting
  - AccessDeniedUtility.exe 280
  - alerts, receiving for device events 60
  - Animated Demonstrations screen 75
  - communication 282
  - constraint messages, unidrivers 202
  - device conflicts 276
  - driver installation 281
  - e-mail 279
  - e-mail alerts 61
  - File to E-mail utility 280
  - FixErr1714 utility 281
  - HP Marketing Assistant 282
  - HP Solution Center 283
  - HP ToolboxFX 282
  - known issues 281
  - paper 285
  - pop-up alerts 60
  - tools 279
  - TWAIN 194
- Troubleshooting folder, HP ToolboxFX 73
- TrueType fonts
  - Send as Bitmaps, PCL 6 unidriver 211
  - Send as Bitmaps, PS Emulation Unidriver 210
  - unidriver settings 209
- TWAIN
  - drivers supported 9
  - features 194
  - installation components, Windows 126
  - operating systems supported 14
  - scanning methods 184
  - settings 195
  - troubleshooting 194
- two-sided printing
  - unidriver settings 235, 252
- types, paper
  - fuser modes 81
  - HP ToolboxFX settings 77

- supported 291
- unidriver settings 217

## U

### unidrivers

- About tab 256
- Add Printer Wizard
  - installation 129
- Advanced Printing Features,
  - enabling 209
- Advanced tab 205
- booklet printing 237
- Color tab 241
- constraint messages 202
- Copy Count 207
- Device Settings tab 248
- Document Options 209, 234
- document preview image 222
- Effects tab 225
- Finishing tab 233
- font substitution table 250
- Form to Tray Assignment 249
- Graphic settings 208
- help 202
- HP Digital Imaging 222
- Image Color Management (ICM) 208
- Installable Options 252
- installation components,
  - Windows 126
- Layout Options 211
- localized versions 18
- memory settings 252
- Mirror Image 240
- Mopier Mode 253
- operating systems
  - supported 14
- orientation settings 239
- Page Order 211
- Paper Options 215
- Paper/Output settings 207
- Paper/Quality tab 212
- Print All Text as Black 211
- Print on Both Sides 235
- Print Quality group box 222
- Print Task Quick Sets 214
- Printer Features tab 210
- Printing Preferences tab 200
- Properties tab 201
- Resizing Options 226

- Services tab 246
- settings, changing 200
- TrueType font settings 209
- Watermarks settings 228

### uninstalling software

- component list 176
- Macintosh 273
- methods for 177
- Windows 2000 and XP 177

### UNIX drivers

- 12, 14

### Update, HP Software

- 10

### upgrading firmware

- 143, 153

### USB port

- connecting 276
- device conflicts 276
- devices vs. hubs 276
- specifications 4
- Windows installation dialog
  - boxes 136

### Use Different Paper/Covers

- unidrivers 217, 218

### User Guide screen, HP

- ToolboxFX 76

### user guides

- localized versions 19, 23
- operating systems
  - supported 15
- Print Task Quick Sets 215

### Utilities, HP Solution Center

- 33

## W

### Wait Timeout, PS Emulation

- Unidriver 255

### watermarks

- unidrivers 228

### Web sites

- Adobe 204
- downloading software 16
- HP Web Jetadmin 16
- Linux product support 12
- Linux support 12, 14
- software CDs 16
- support 34
- TWAIN 194
- UNIX support 12, 14

### Welcome Back dialog box

- 167

### Welcome dialog box (USB

- Windows installation) 136

### Welcome dialog box (Windows

- network installation) 148

## WIA

- drivers supported 9
- installation components,
  - Windows 126
- operating systems
  - supported 14
- scanning from 196
- scanning methods 184

## Windows

### Animated Getting Started

- Guide 134

### availability of software

- components 14

### components, software

- 9

### device conflicts

- 276

### dialog boxes, installation

- 135

### directory structure, software CD-ROM

- 17

### driver-only installation

- 133

### drivers supported

- 9

### installation options

- 126

### installers

- 14

### installing software

- 128

### network software

- installation 129

### operating systems support

- 13

### Plug and Play installation

- 129

### sharing, setting up

- 131

### system requirements

- 11

### uninstallation component

- list 176

### uninstallation methods

- 177

### uninstalling software from 2000

- or XP 177

### Windows Terminal Server

- 13





© 2006 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

[www.hp.com](http://www.hp.com)

